4.4 Take of Central Valley Spring-run Chinook Salmon

4.4.1 Introduction

The potential effects of the proposed project (PP) on Central Valley spring-run Chinook salmon are evaluated in this section. The species is evaluated with regard to the deconstructed effects of the PP, i.e., water facility construction, water facility maintenance, water facility operations, mitigation, monitoring activities, and cumulative effects.

Take estimation for the purposes of the direct effects, cumulative effects, and climate change assessments is based upon the likelihood of physical injury or mortality to individuals of spring-run Chinook salmon. It is not possible to predict the number of individuals that would be subject to such take; in general, that would be a density-dependent phenomenon, e.g., with more fish subject to take in years when a relatively large run passes through the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta. Instead, the risk of take is assessed through proxies such as the area of habitat affected, the duration of impact pile driving, or the probability of a contaminant release. Each section of the take analysis identifies the mechanisms by which take could occur and the probability that take would occur. If that probability is substantial, so that some individuals are likely to suffer mortality, then factors influencing the magnitude of take are detailed or qualitatively assessed; typically these include take minimization measures (detailed in Chapter 5 *Mitigation*), as well as the take proxies mentioned above. Mitigation is described (in Chapter 5 *Mitigation*) that is proportionate to the take, so as to show full mitigation for the take. The take analysis considers mechanisms of take for which authorization is needed (such as, conveyance facility construction and operations), as well as mechanisms of take for which authorization is not here requested (such as, maintenance activities or construction of mitigation sites) or is not needed (such as, CVP operations, cumulative effects, or climate change), because all such mechanisms are considered in determining whether the PP is likely to jeopardize spring-run Chinook salmon.

Scientific uncertainty exists with respect to the potential effects of the PP on spring-run Chinook salmon. As described in Section 6.2 *Collaborative Science and Adaptive Management Program*, the Collaborative Science and Adaptive Management Program will help to address scientific uncertainty by guiding the development and implementation of scientific investigations and monitoring for both permit compliance and adaptive management, and applying new information and insights to management decisions and actions.

4.4.2 Effects of Water Facility Construction

4.4.2.1 Preconstruction Studies (Geotechnical Exploration)

Geotechnical investigations in open water at the proposed locations for the water conveyance facilities and alignments have the potential to affect spring-run Chinook salmon. Approximately 100 over-water borings are currently proposed to collect geotechnical data at the NDDs, barge landings, tunnel alignment crossings, HOR gate, and CCF facilities (Table 3.2-4). Site-specific studies will investigate several geotechnical properties of these sites, including the stability of canal embankments and levees, liquefaction of soils, seepage through coarse-grained soils, settlement of embankments and structures, subsidence, and soil-bearing capacity. Specific field activities will include drilling of sample soil borings, cone penetration, and other *in situ* tests (slug tests, aquifer/pumping tests, and test pits) to evaluate subsurface conditions. In-water borings will be conducted using a mud rotary method in which a conductor casing will be pushed into the sediment to isolate the drilling area, drilling fluids (bentonite), and cuttings from the surrounding water. Drilling fluids and cuttings will be contained within the conductor casing and returned to a recirculation tank on the drill ship or barge where they will be transferred to drums for storage and disposal.

DWR plans to restrict in-water drilling to the approved in-water work window (August 1 to October 31) between the hours of sunrise and sunset. The duration of drilling at each location will vary depending on the number and depth of the holes, drill rate, and weather conditions, but activities are not expected to exceed 60 days at any one location[1]. Overwater borings for the NDDs and river crossings for tunnels will be carried out by a drill ship and barge-mounted drill rigs. A number of take minimization measures (described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*) are proposed to avoid or minimize potential turbidity, suspended sediment, and other water quality impacts (e.g., bentonite or contaminant spills) on spring-run Chinook salmon and aquatic habitat during geotechnical activities: *Worker Awareness Training; Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring; Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP); Erosion and Sediment Control Plan; Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan (SPCCP); Hazardous Material Management Plan (HMMP);* and *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material; and Barge Operations Plan*.

Restricting in-water geotechnical activities at the NDD and at barge landings to August 1 to October 31 will avoid the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. Adult spring-run Chinook salmon have been reported to enter the system through the summer although water temperatures in the lower Sacramento River frequently exceed suitable ranges by late June or early July. With containment of all in-water drilling activities to closed systems and implementation of the take minimization measures identified above, potential water quality effects of geotechnical drilling activities would be limited to temporary, localized increases in turbidity, suspended sediment, and noise during barge operations (e.g., anchoring of barges) and drilling activities (e.g., installation and removal of conductor casings). If present, any spring-run Chinook salmon that may be present during the in-water work period would likely be large, migrating adults that are capable of avoiding such disturbances with minimal harassment or risk of injury. Therefore, no incidental take of spring-run Chinook salmon is anticipated.

Geotechnical activities may affect habitat of spring-run Chinook salmon through suspension and deposition of sediment or direct disturbance of channel sediments and benthic food resources at the drilling sites[2]. However, these effects are expected to be negligible based on the low intensity, brief duration, and small areas affected; avoidance of vegetation and other potential sources of cover and food for fish (e.g., instream woody debris); and the general low quality of rearing habitat for juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon at the proposed facilities and tunnel alignment crossings (see Section 4.4.2.2.7 *North Delta Intakes*, Section 4.4.2.3.7 *Barge*

---

[1] See Permit Resolution Log item #26 for further information on this point.

[2] See Permit Resolution Log item #29 for further information on this point.

Landings, Section 4.4.2.4.7 *Head of Old River Gate*, and Section 4.4.2.5.7 *Clifton Court Forebay*). Consequently, with implementation of the proposed in-water work window and take minimization measures, geotechnical exploration is not likely to result in incidental take of spring-run Chinook salmon.

4.4.2.2 North Delta Diversions

4.4.2.2.1 Overview

Three intakes will be constructed on the east bank of the Sacramento River between Clarksburg and Courtland at river miles (RMs) 41.1, 39.4, and 36.8 (Intakes 2, 3, and 5) (Appendix 3.A, *Map Book for the Proposed Project*). Each intake will divert a maximum of 3,000 cfs and consist of an intake structure fitted with on-bank fish screens; gravity collector box conduits extending through the levee to convey flow to the sedimentation system; a sedimentation system consisting of sedimentation basins to capture sand-sized sediment and drying lagoons for sediment drying and consolidation; a sedimentation afterbay providing the transition from the sedimentation basins to a shaft that will discharge into a tunnel leading to an intermediate forebay; and an access road, parking area, electrical service, and fencing (as shown in Appendix 3.C, *Conceptual Engineering Report*, Volume 2, Sheets 11, 12, and 13). Additional details on the intake design, construction methods, and proposed construction schedule are described in Chapter 3.

Construction of each intake is projected to take approximately 4 to 5 years[3]. All in-water activities will be restricted to the approved in-water work window[4] to minimize exposure of listed fish species to construction-related impacts on water quality and other hazards. Constructing each intake will involve installing a sheet pile cofferdam in the river during the first construction season, which will isolate the in-water work area during the remaining years of construction and become permanent components of the intake structure. Following closure of the cofferdam, fish rescue and salvage activities will be performed to collect any stranded fish and return them to the river. Dewatering of the cofferdam will be performed using a screened intake to prevent entrainment of fish. Water pumped from within the cofferdams will be treated (removing all sediment), using settling basins or Baker tanks, and returned to the river. After the cofferdams are dewatered, dredging, foundation pile driving, and other construction activities will proceed within the confines of the cofferdams.

Clearing and grading of the waterside slope of the levee will be required prior to installing the sheetpile cofferdam and rock slope protection (riprap), depending on site conditions (e.g., presence of vegetation). Following cofferdam installation, an excavator operated from a barge and/or the top of the levee would be used to install riprap on the adjacent levee slope to provide permanent erosion protection to the levee, cofferdam, and intake facility.

---

[3] See Permit Resolution Log item #30 for further information on this point.

[4] Proposed in-water work windows vary within the Delta: June 1 to October 31 at the NDDs, July 1 to November 30 at the CCF, and August 1 to October 31 at both the HOR Gate and the barge landings

After the intakes are completed, the area in front of each intake will be dredged to provide appropriate flow conditions at the intake entrance[5]. Dredging will only occur during the approved in-water work window and will be minimized to the extent practicable.

Construction of the NDDs will result in permanent and temporary impacts on aquatic habitat in the Sacramento River. Approximately 6.6 acres of tidal perennial habitat and 1.02 linear miles of channel margin habitat will be permanently replaced by the intake structures (including foundation piles), transition walls, and riprap (Table 3.4-1). Temporary impacts, including water quality impacts and disturbance of benthic habitat associated with dredging and other in-water construction activities, will affect approximately 20.1 acres of tidal perennial habitat. Temporary impacts on channel margin habitat will occur within the same footprint as permanent impacts.

Construction activities that could potentially affect spring-run Chinook salmon include cofferdam installation, levee clearing and grading[6], riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations. All other construction activities, including construction of the sedimentation basins, intermediate forebay, and associated facilities, will be isolated from the Sacramento River and not result in effects to listed fish species or aquatic habitat in the Sacramento River.

4.4.2.2.2 Turbidity and Suspended Sediment

Construction activities that disturb the riverbed and banks within the footprints of the NDDs may temporarily increase turbidity and suspended sediment levels in the Sacramento River. These activities include cofferdam installation and removal, levee clearing and grading[7], riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations. Potential turbidity and sediment impacts on spring-run Chinook salmon and aquatic habitat will be minimized by restricting in-water construction activities to an in-water work window from June 1 to October 31. In addition, DWR will implement a number of take minimization measures to avoid or minimize potential turbidity, suspended sediment, and other water quality impacts on spring-run Chinook salmon and aquatic habitat: AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training; Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring;* AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP);* AMM4 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan;* and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*).

Construction-related turbidity and suspended sediment may occur during winter and spring due to increased erosion and mobilization of sediment in runoff from disturbed levee surfaces. However, with implementation of the proposed erosion and sediment control measures (AMM4) and other BMPs to ensure the effectiveness of these measures (AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring*), the potential for adverse water quality effects outside the in-water work window will be minimal.

---

[5] See Permit Resolution Log item #31 for further information on this point.
[6] See Permit Resolution Log item #32 for further information on this point.
[7] See Permit Resolution Log item #32 for further information on this point.

4.4.2.2.2.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restricting all in-water construction activities to June 1 to October 31 avoids the primary adult migration and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the project area. In some years, a small proportion of the total number of adults and juveniles that migrate through the project area may migrate through this area as late as June or July.

4.4.2.2.2.2 Assess Species Response

Depending on the level of exposure, suspended sediment can cause lethal, sublethal, and behavioral effects in fish (Newcombe and Jensen 1996). For salmonids, elevated suspended sediment has been linked to a number of behavioral and physiological responses indicative of stress: gill flaring, coughing, avoidance, and increase in blood sugar levels (Bisson and Bilby 1982; Sigler et al. 1984; Berg and Northcote 1985; Servizi and Martens 1992). High suspended sediment levels can clog gill tissues, interfering with respiration and increasing physiological stress. Very high levels can directly damage gill tissues, resulting in physical injury and even death.

Migrating adults have been reported to avoid high silt loads or cease migration when avoidance is not possible (Cordone and Kelley 1961, as cited in Bjornn and Reiser 1991). Bell (1991) cited a study in which adult salmon did not move in streams where the sediment concentration exceeded 4,000 milligrams per liter (mg/L) (because of a landslide). Juveniles tend to avoid streams that are chronically turbid (Bisson and Bilby 1982; Lloyd 1987) or move laterally or downstream to avoid turbidity plumes (Sigler et al. 1984; Lloyd 1987; Servizi and Martens 1992). Juvenile coho salmon have been reported to avoid turbidities exceeding 70 NTU (Bisson and Bilby 1982) and cease territorial behavior when exposed to a pulse of turbidity of 60 NTU (Berg 1982). Such behavior could result in displacement of juveniles from preferred habitat or protective cover, which may reduce growth and survival by affecting foraging success or increasing their susceptibility to predation.

Laboratory studies have demonstrated that chronic or prolonged exposure to high turbidity and suspended sediment levels can lead to reduced growth rates. For example, Sigler et al. (1984) found that juvenile coho salmon and steelhead trout exhibited reduced growth rates and higher emigration rates in turbid water (25–50 NTU) compared to clear water. Reduced growth rates generally have been attributed to an inability of fish to feed effectively in turbid water (Waters 1995). Chronic exposure to high turbidity and suspended sediment also may affect growth and survival by impairing respiratory function, reducing tolerance to disease and contaminants, and causing physiological stress (Waters 1995).

During cofferdam installation, levee clearing and grading[8], riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations, turbidity and suspended sediment levels in the river are anticipated to exceed ambient river levels in the immediate vicinity of these activities, creating turbidity plumes that may extend several hundred feet downstream of construction activities. NMFS (2008a) reviewed observations of turbidity plumes during installation of riprap for bank protection projects along the Sacramento River and concluded that visible plumes are expected to be limited to only a portion of the channel width, extend no more than 1,000 feet downstream, and dissipate within

---

[8] See Permit Resolution Log item #32 for further information on this point.

hours of cessation of in-water activities. Based on these observations, NMFS concluded that such activities could result in turbidity levels exceeding 25–75 NTUs and potentially result in disruption of normal feeding and sheltering behavior of salmonids (National Marine Fisheries Service 2008a).

Although specific thresholds associated with behavioral, sublethal, and lethal effects are not available, it can be reasonably assumed that the effects of proposed in-water construction activities on listed fish species will be limited to brief exposures and likely avoidance of channel areas subjected to elevated turbidity and suspended sediment levels during active in-water work. Dredging will likely generate the most continuous sources of elevated turbidity and suspended sediment but will affect a relatively small portion of the channel during daylight hours only, resulting in only minor disruptions in migration, holding, and rearing behavior. Adult salmonids would be expected to readily avoid high turbidity and suspended sediment and move to adjacent holding areas or continue their migration in deeper, offshore portions of the channel. Because of their small size and reliance on shallower, nearshore waters and associated cover, displacement of juvenile salmonids from these areas could increase their vulnerability to predators, potentially increasing mortality. However, utilization of nearshore areas by juvenile salmon is generally reduced by June and July because most juveniles are large, actively migrating smolts that are known to move rapidly through the Delta and estuary during their seaward migration (Williams 2006)[9].

In addition to temporary water quality impacts discussed above, increases in sediment loads in the Sacramento River can bury river substrates that support important food organisms (benthic invertebrates) for juvenile salmonids. The natural channel substrate in this portion of the Sacramento River is dominated by fine sediment (sand and silt) that is frequently disturbed by high flows and human activities (e.g., boat wakes). Although suspended sediment generated by construction activities would be expected to cause some sedimentation of the channel downstream of the construction sites, potential reductions in abundance or production of benthic invertebrates would not be expected to affect the availability of food or foraging habitat for spring-run Chinook salmon because of the localized, temporary nature of the disturbance, and adaptations of the local invertebrate fauna to sediment disturbance.

4.4.2.2.2.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Increases in turbidity and suspended sediment levels during in-water construction activities will be temporary and localized, and unlikely to reach levels causing incidental take of spring-run Chinook salmon. Direct effects will be likely be limited to behavioral effects only (i.e., harassment). Juveniles, if holding or rearing in the affected areas, are likely to respond by avoiding or moving away from affected shoreline areas, disrupting normal activities and increasing their exposure to predators. Such disruptions are expected to be brief and unlikely to adversely affect the growth of individual salmonids. However, there could be minor losses due to increased predation mortality.

---

[9] See Permit Resolution Log item #43 for further information on this point.

4.4.2.2.3 Contaminants

Construction of the north Delta intakes poses an exposure risk to listed fish species from potential spills of hazardous materials from construction equipment, barges and towing vessels, and other machinery, and from potential mobilization of contaminated sediment.

4.4.2.2.3.1 Accidental Spills

Construction at the NDDs could result in accidental spills of contaminants, including oil, fuel, hydraulic fluids, concrete, paint, and other construction-related materials, resulting in localized water quality degradation and potential adverse effects on listed fish species. Potential effects of contaminants on fish include direct injury and mortality (e.g., damage to gill tissue causing asphyxiation) or delayed effects on growth and survival (e.g., increased stress or reduced feeding), depending on the type of contaminant, extent of the spill, and exposure concentrations. The risk of such effects is highest during in-water construction activities, including cofferdam installation, levee grading and armoring, and barge operations, because of the proximity of construction equipment to the Sacramento River. Other construction activities that occur in upland areas or are isolated from fish-bearing waters have little or no risk of contaminant effects on aquatic habitat or listed fish species.

Implementation of Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan* and AMM14 *Hazardous Materials Management* will minimize the potential for contaminant spills and guide rapid and effective response in the case of inadvertent spills of hazardous materials. With implementation of these and other required construction BMPs (e.g., AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan*), the risk of contaminant spills or discharges to the Sacramento River from in-water or upland sources is effectively minimized.

4.4.2.2.3.2 Disturbance of Contaminated Sediments

Contaminants may also enter the aquatic environment through disturbance, resuspension, or discharge of contaminated soil and sediments from construction sites. Sediments act as a sink or source of contaminant exposure depending on local hydrologic conditions, habitat type, and frequency of disturbance. Sediment is a major sink for more persistent chemicals that have been introduced into the aquatic environment, with most organic and inorganic anthropogenic chemicals and waste materials accumulating in sediment (Ingersoll et al. 1995). Thus, resuspension of contaminated sediments may have adverse effects on fish that encounter sediment plumes or come into contact with deposited or newly exposed sediment. Suspended sediment can also cause physiological stress in fish by causing localized increases in chemical oxygen demand in waters in or near plumes.

The proposed NDD sites are downstream of the City of Sacramento where sediments have been affected by historical and current urban discharges from the city. No information on sediment contaminants at these sites is currently available. Metals, PCBs, and hydrocarbons (typically oil and grease) are common urban contaminants that are introduced to aquatic systems via nonpoint-source stormwater drainage, industrial discharges, and municipal wastewater discharges. Many of these contaminants readily adhere to sediment particles and tend to settle out of solution relatively close to the primary source of contaminants. PCBs are persistent, adsorb to soil and organic matter, and accumulate in the food web. Lead and other metals also will adhere to particulates and can bioaccumulate to levels sufficient to cause adverse biological effects. Mercury is also present in the Sacramento River system and could be sequestered in riverbed sediments. Hydrocarbons biodegrade over time in an aqueous environment and do not tend to bioaccumulate or persist in aquatic systems.

Dredging has the potential to release contaminants from disturbed sediments during proposed construction and maintenance dredging at the proposed NDDs. Current estimates indicate the total dredging and channel disturbance will affect 12.1 acres of the riverbed adjacent to the intake structures. Measured sediment plumes from hydraulic dredging operations (Hayes et al. 2000) suggest that less than 0.1% of disturbed sediments and associated contaminants will likely be re-suspended during cutterhead dredging operations. In sediments, only a small fraction of the total amount of heavy metals and organic contaminants is dissolved. In the case of heavy metals, releases during dredging may be largely due to the resuspension of fine particles from which the contaminants may be desorbed, and in the case of organic contaminants, most of the chemicals released into the dissolved phase would be expected to be bound to dissolved organic matter. Therefore, the potential release of contaminants from suspended sediment is expected to be limited because many of the chemical constituents preferentially adsorb or attach to organically enriched or fine particles of sediment.

The potential for introduction of contaminants from disturbed sediments will be addressed through the implementation of specific measures addressing containment, handling, storage, and disposal of contaminated sediments, as described under AMM6 *Disposal of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material* in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*. These measures include the preparation and implementation of a pre-construction sampling and analysis plan (SAP) to characterize contaminants and determine appropriate BMPs to minimize or avoid mobilization of contaminated sediments during in-water construction activities. Because potential mobilization of contaminants is closely linked to sediment disturbance and associated increases in turbidity and suspended sediment, turbidity monitoring and control measures (e.g., silt curtains) to achieve compliance with existing Basin Plan objectives (Central Valley Water Board 1998) will be an important measures for limiting dispersal of contaminated sediments during dredging and other in-water construction activities.

4.4.2.2.3.3 Assess Species Exposure

The risk of accidental spills of contaminants will exist throughout the construction period but will be highest during in-water construction activities due to the proximity of construction activities to the Sacramento River. Exposure to contaminants may occur at other times of the year through other mechanisms, including resuspension of newly exposed sediment by high flows or contaminant uptake in food organisms (e.g., benthic invertebrates). Based on the general timing of spring-run Chinook salmon adults and juveniles in the project area, the risk of exposure to potential spills will be limited primarily to small numbers of adults and juvenile that may migrate through the project area as late as June or July in some years. However, potential exposure of adults and juveniles to contaminants in newly exposed sediment may persist throughout the construction period.

4.4.2.2.3.4 Assess Species Response

The potential effects of contaminants on fish range from physiological stress, potentially resulting in delayed effects on growth, survival, and reproductive success, to direct mortality (acute toxicity) depending on the concentration, toxicity, solubility, bioavailability, and duration of exposure, as well as the sensitivity of the species and life stage. Studies have shown that dredging contaminated sediments increases particulate-bound contaminants in waters next to or near to the dredge, producing deleterious effects on species that occupy those areas. (Bellas et al. 2007; Bocchetti et al. 2008; Engwall et al. 1998; Sundberg et al. 2007; Sturve et al. 2005; Yeager et al. 2010). Heavy metals (Cd, Cu, Hg, Ni, Pb, Zn, Ag, Cr, As) and organic contaminants (PAHs, PCBs, pesticides) are of most concern. Generally, toxic metal and pesticide contamination can cause acute toxicity in aquatic organisms (as seen in some first flush events in urban creeks and streams) which may result in death from high concentrations, or chronic (sublethal) effects which reduces the organism's health and may lessen survival over time. Increased levels of heavy metals are detrimental because they interfere with metabolic functions through inhibition of enzyme activity, decrease neurological function, degrade cardiovascular output, and can act as mutagens, teratogens, or carcinogens to organisms that are exposed to them (Rand et al. 1995; Goyer and Clarkson 1996). Charged particles (metals like copper) can also interfere with ion exchange channels in sensitive membranes or structures like gills or olfactory rosettes. Lipophilic compounds in fine sediment, such as toxic polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) can be absorbed through lipid membranes of gill tissue, providing a pathway for exposure if fish swim through a sediment plume. Exposure to PAHs and other aromatic compounds typical of petroleum hydrocarbon contamination from industry, spills, and engine exhausts was shown to suppress immune responses in Chinook salmon (Varanasi et al. 1993; Arkoosh et al. 1998, 2001). Dredge plumes may also cause short lived changes in dissolved oxygen (DO), pH, hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), and ammonia (NH_3).

Toxic substances used at construction sites, including gasoline, lubricants, and other petroleum-based products could enter the Sacramento River as a result of accidental spills or leakage from machinery or storage containers. These substances can kill aquatic organisms through exposure to lethal concentrations or exposure to non-lethal levels that cause physiological stress and increased susceptibility to other sources of mortality. In addition to the direct effects of exposure described above, contaminants can enter the aquatic food web and accumulate in fish through their diet, leading to lethal and sublethal effects, including effects on behavior, tissues and organs, reproduction, growth, and immune system (Connon et al. 2009).

4.4.2.2.3.5 Assess Risk to Individuals

Implementation of the proposed AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan,* AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan*, and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management,* are expected to minimize the potential for spills or discharges of contaminants into the Sacramento River during construction of the proposed intakes. Adherence to all preventative, response, and disposal measures in the approved plans are expected to reduce the potential effects to listed fish species to discountable levels. No information is available on potential contaminant risks associated with disturbance and exposure of sediments resulting from dredging and other construction activities at the intake construction sites. However, this risk is expected to be minimized by developing and implementing a SAP to characterize contaminants and determine appropriate BMPs to minimize or avoid mobilization of contaminated sediments during in-water construction activities. While some exposure of spring-run salmon to sediment-borne contaminants may be unavoidable, these exposures are expected to be brief because of the limited aerial extent of in-water construction areas (pile driving, dredging, and barge operations), implementation of BMPs to limit the extent of sediment plumes originating from these areas, and the relatively short periods of time that juveniles and adults are likely to spend in the affected areas.

4.4.2.2.4 Underwater Noise

During construction of the NDDs, activities likely to generate underwater noise include in-water pile driving, riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations. Of these, pile driving poses the greatest risk to fish because the levels of underwater noise produced by impulsive types of sounds can reach levels of sufficient intensity to injure or kill fish within a certain radius of the source piles (Popper and Hastings 2009). Other activities such as riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations generally produce more continuous, lower energy sounds below the thresholds associated with direct injury, but may cause avoidance behavior or temporary hearing loss or physiological stress if avoidance is not possible or exposure is prolonged (Popper and Hastings 2009).

During construction of each intake, underwater noise levels of sufficient intensity to cause direct injury or mortality of fish could occur over a period of 42 days during the first in-water construction season (June 1-October 31) and 14-19 days during the second in-water construction season. Restriction of pile driving activities to June 1-October 31 will avoid the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon migration seasons. However, because of the potential presence of listed salmonids and other listed species during the in-water window, DWR will develop and implement an underwater sound control and abatement plan outlining specific measures that will be implemented to avoid and minimize the effects of underwater construction noise on spring-run Chinook salmon and other listed fish species (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM9 *Underwater Sound Control and Abatement Plan*). These measures include the use of vibratory methods or other non-impact driving methods (e.g., drill-shaft methods) to install the cofferdam sheet piles and foundation piles. The degree to which vibratory and non-impact driving methods can be performed is uncertain at this time (due to uncertain geologic conditions at the proposed intake sites) although reasonable assumptions are applied to sheet pile installation in the following analysis. If impact pile driving is required, DWR, in coordination with the USFWS, NMFS, and CDFW, will evaluate the feasibility of other protective measures including dewatering, physical devices (e.g., bubble curtains), and operational measures (e.g., restricting pile driving to specific times of the day) to limit the intensity and duration of underwater noise levels when listed fish species may be present. Coordination, implementation, and monitoring of these measures will be performed in accordance with the underwater sound control and abatement plan, which includes hydroacoustic monitoring to determine compliance with established objectives (e.g., distances to cumulative noise thresholds) and corrective actions to be taken should the thresholds be exceeded[10]. These measures may include additional physical or operational measures to further limit the magnitude and/or duration of underwater noise levels.

4.4.2.2.4.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of pile driving activities to June 1-October 31 avoids the primary adult migration and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the project area. In

---

[10] See Permit Resolution Log item #33 for further information on this point.

some years, a small proportion of the total number of adults and juveniles that migrate through the project area may migrate through this area as late as June or July. Adult spring-run Chinook salmon have been reported to enter the system through the summer although water temperatures in the lower Sacramento River frequently exceed suitable ranges by late June or early July.

4.4.2.2.4.2 Assess Species Response

Pile driving and other sources of anthropogenic noise have the potential to disrupt fish hearing and adversely affect fish through a broad range of behavioral, physiological, or physical effects (McCauley et al. 2003, Popper and Hastings 2009). These effects may include behavioral responses, physiological stress, temporary and permanent hearing loss, tissue damage (auditory and non-auditory), and direct mortality depending on the intensity and duration of exposure. In salmonids and most other teleost fish, the presence of a swim bladder to maintain buoyancy increases their vulnerability to direct physical injury (i.e., tissue and organ damage) from underwater noise (Hastings and Popper 2005). Underwater noise may also damage hearing organs that may temporarily affect hearing sensitivity, communication, and ability to detect predators or prey (Popper and Hastings 2009). Underwater noise may also cause behavioral effects (e.g., startle or avoidance responses) that can disrupt or alter normal activities (e.g., migration, holding, or feeding) or expose individuals to increased predation risk.

Pile driving noise has received increasing attention in recent years because of its potential to cause direct injury or mortality of fish and other aquatic animals. Factors that may influence the magnitude of effects include species, life stage, and size of fish; type and size of pile and hammer; frequency and duration of pile driving; site characteristics (e.g., depth); and distance of fish from the source. Dual interim criteria have been established to provide guidance for assessing the potential for injury of fish resulting from pile driving noise (Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group 2008) (Table 4.4-1). The dual criteria for impact pile driving are (1) 206 decibels (dB) for peak sound pressure level (SPL); and (2) 187 dB for cumulative sound exposure level (SEL) for fish larger than 2 grams, and 183 dB SEL for fish smaller than 2 grams. Peak SPL is considered the maximum sound pressure level a fish can receive from a single strike without injury. Cumulative SEL is considered the total amount of acoustic energy that a fish can receive from single or multiple strikes without injury. The cumulative SEL threshold is based on the total daily exposure of a fish to noise from sources that are discontinuous (in this case, noise that occurs up to 12 hours a day, with 12 hours between exposures). This assumes that the fish is able to recover from any effects during this 12-hour period. These criteria relate to impact pile driving only. Vibratory pile driving is generally accepted as an effective measure for minimizing or eliminating the potential for injury of fish from pile driving operations.

Table 4.4-1. Interim Criteria for Injury to Fish from Pile Driving Activities.

Interim Criteria	Agreement in Principle
Peak Sound Pressure Level (SPL)	206 dB re: 1µPa (for all sizes of fish)
Cumulative Sound Exposure Level (SEL)	187 dB re: 1µPa^2-sec—for fish size ≥ 2 grams 183 dB re: 1µPa^2-sec—for fish size < 2 grams

In the following analysis, the potential for physical injury to fish from exposure to pile driving sounds was evaluated using a spreadsheet model developed by NMFS to calculate the distances from the pile that sound attenuates to the peak or cumulative criteria. These distances define the area in which the criteria are expected to be exceeded as a result of impact pile driving. The

NMFS spreadsheet calculates these distances based on estimates of the single-strike sound levels for each pile type (measured at 10 meters from the pile) and the rate at which sound attenuates with distance. In the following analysis, the standard sound attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance was used in the absence of other data. To account for the exposure of fish to multiple pile driving strikes, the model computes a cumulative SEL for multiple strikes based on the single-strike SEL and the number of strikes per day or pile driving event. The NMFS spreadsheet also employs the concept of “effective quiet”. This assumes that cumulative exposure of fish to pile driving sounds of less than 150 dB SEL does not result in injury.

Insufficient data are currently available to support the establishment of a noise threshold for behavioral effects (Popper et al. 2006). NMFS generally assumes that a noise level of 150 dB root mean square (RMS) is an appropriate threshold for identifying the potential for behavioral effects until new information indicates otherwise (e.g., National Marine Fisheries Service 2015).

Table 4.4-2**Error! Reference source not found.** presents the extent, timing, and duration of pile driving noise levels predicted to exceed the interim injury and behavioral thresholds at the north Delta intake sites based on application of the NMFS spreadsheet model and the assumptions in Appendix 3.E *Pile Driving Assumptions for the Proposed Project*. This analysis considers only those pile driving activities that could generate noise levels sufficient to exceed the interim injury thresholds in the Sacramento River or other waters potentially supporting listed fish species. These activities include impact pile driving in open water, in cofferdams adjacent to open water, or on land within 200 feet of open water. For cofferdam sheet piles, it is assumed that approximately 70% of the length of each pile can be driven using vibratory pile driving, with impact driving used to finalize pile placement. For the intake structure foundation piles, the current design assumes the use of impact pile driving only. However, some degree of attenuation is expected assuming that the cofferdams can be fully dewatered. Therefore, predictions are shown for two scenarios, one in which dewatering results in a 5 dB reduction in reference noise levels, and one in which no attenuation is possible (no dewatering or other forms of attenuation). All computed distances over which pile driving sounds are expected to exceed the injury and behavioral thresholds assume an unimpeded sound propagation path. However, site conditions such as major channel bends and other in-water structures can reduce these distances by impeding the propagation of underwater sound waves.

Table 4.4-2. Extent, Timing, and Duration of Pile Driving Noise Levels Predicted to Exceed the Interim Injury and Behavioral Thresholds at the North Delta Intake Sites

Facility or Structure	Distance to 206 dB SPL Injury Threshold (feet)	Distance to Cumulative 187 dB and 183 dB SEL Injury Thresholds or Effective Quiet (150 dB SEL)[1, 2] (feet)	Distance to 150 dB RMS Behavioral Threshold[2] (feet)	Construction Season	Timing of Pile Driving	Duration of Pile Driving (days)
Intake 2						
Cofferdam	30	2,814	13,058	Year 8	Jun–Oct	42
Foundation (no attenuation)	46	3,280	32,800	Year 9	Jun–Oct	19
Foundation (with attenuation)	20	1,522	15,226	Year 9	June-Oct	19
Intake 3						
Cofferdam	30	2,814	13,058	Year 7	Jun–Oct	42
Foundation (no attenuation)	46	3,280	32,800	Year 8	Jun–Oct	14
Foundation (with attenuation)	20	1,522	15,226	Year 8	June-Oct	14
Intake 5						
Cofferdam	30	2,814	13,058	Year 5	Jun–Oct	42
Foundation (no attenuation)	46	3,280	32,800	Year 6	Jun–Oct	19
Foundation (with attenuation)	20	1,522	15,226	Year 6	June-Oct	19

[1] Computed distances to injury thresholds are governed by the distance to “effective quiet” (150 dB SEL) rather than 187 dB or 183 dB cumulative SEL injury thresholds. Computed distances assume that cumulative exposure to single strike SELs <150 dB does not cause injury. Accordingly, once the distance to the cumulative injury threshold exceeds the distance to effective quiet, increasing the number of strikes does not increase the presumed injury distance.

[2] Distance to injury and behavioral thresholds assume an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance and an unimpeded propagation path; on-land pile driving, non-impact driving methods, dewatering of cofferdams, and the presence of major river bends or other channel features can impede sound propagation and limit the extent of underwater sounds exceeding the injury and behavioral thresholds.

Sound monitoring data collected during similar types of pile driving operations indicate that single-strike peak SPLs exceeding the interim injury thresholds will be limited to areas within 30 feet of the cofferdam sheet piles and 20-46 feet of the intake foundation piles, depending on whether cofferdams can be dewatered**Error! Reference source not found.**. Based on the distance to effective quiet (150 dB SEL), the risk of injury will extend up to 5,628 feet (2,814 x 2) during installation of the cofferdams and 6,560 feet (3,280 x 2) during installation of the foundation piles (3,044 feet if the cofferdams can be dewatered) assuming an unimpeded propagation path. The predictions in Table 4.4-2 apply to one intake location; the current construction schedule indicates that pile driving in a given year would occur at one intake only with the exception of Year 8 in which cofferdam installation at Intake 2 may coincide with foundation pile installation at intake 3 (Appendix 3.D *Construction Schedule for the Proposed Project*). In this case, there would be no overlap in the potential noise impact areas although fish migrating through the project area could be potentially exposed to pile driving noise over two reaches totaling 12,188 feet. Based on the duration of pile driving activities, such conditions could occur for up to 14 days based on the duration of foundation pile installation.

The potential for behavioral effects would extend beyond the distances associated with potential injury. Based on a threshold of 150 dB RMS, the potential for behavioral effects will extend up to 13,058 feet away during cofferdam sheet pile installation, and 32,800 feet away during intake foundation pile installation (15,226 feet away if the cofferdams can be dewatered) assuming an unimpeded propagation path. However, the extent of noise levels exceeding the injury and behavioral thresholds will be constrained to varying degrees by major channel bends that range from approximately 1,500 to 12,000 feet away from each intake facility.

For each intake facility, cofferdam sheet piles will be installed over a period of 42 days at each intake location, within the in-water construction season (June 1-October 31; curtailed to August 1-September 30 if feasible) followed by installation of the intake foundation piles over a period of 14-19 days during the following season.

4.4.2.2.4.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Pile driving noise may cause injury or mortality of adult and juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon that are holding, migrating, or rearing near the intake sites. During pile driving activities, underwater noise levels sufficient to cause injury or mortality will extend across the entire width of the river and up to 3,280 feet away from the source piles[11]. As previously discussed, exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to pile driving noise during the in-water construction period will be limited to a small proportion of adults and juveniles that may be migrating through the action area in June and July. Peak SPLs exceeding the injury criteria will be limited to small areas immediately adjacent to source piles (20–46 feet) and thus would affect 3-10% of the total channel width available for adults and juvenile to pass (see Appendix 3.E *Pile Driving Assumptions for the Proposed Project*). However, the potential for injury still exists because migrating adults and juveniles will be faced with passing through channel reaches of up to 6,560 feet long in which noise levels are predicted to exceed the cumulative injury thresholds. During the in-water construction period, most adults and juveniles that are likely to encounter pile driving noise would be actively migrating through the affected reaches, thus minimizing the duration of their exposure to underwater noise levels sufficient in intensity to cause injury or mortality. At the maximum cruising speeds reported for adult Chinook salmon (up to 4 feet per second [Bell 1986]), adults are capable of swimming through reaches up to 6,560 feet long in less than one hour and thus avoid cumulative exposures associated with potential injury. Published and unpublished data from telemetry studies of acoustic-tagged young-of-year and yearling smolts (80-170 mm fork length) also indicate rapid downstream migration rates, ranging from approximately 9 to 29 miles per day for fish released at upstream locations and detected leaving the Delta (Michel et al. 2012; Jason Hassrick, personal communication).

As noted above, pile-driving noise can disrupt or alter the behavior of fish, resulting in adverse effects on survival, growth, and reproductive success. For migrating salmonids, pile driving noise can potentially delay or block migrations or result in avoidance responses that could increase their exposure to other stressors such as elevated water temperatures, predators, or

---

[11] See Permit Resolution Log item #34 for further information on this point.

increased metabolic demands associated with prolonged delays. Based on a threshold of 150 dB RMS, the potential for behavioral effects is predicted to extend up to 13,058 feet away during cofferdam sheet pile installation and 32,800 feet away during intake foundation pile installation (15,226 feet away if the cofferdams can be dewatered) assuming an unimpeded propagation path. While evidence suggests that pile-driving operations may disrupt normal migratory behavior in salmonids (Feist et al. 1996), the risk of adverse effects associated with such delays is expected to be low because of the rapid migration rates of adults and juveniles, and daily opportunities to pass the affected areas at night (dusk to dawn) when pile driving activities will cease. Nevertheless, juvenile salmonids that may be holding, sheltering, or feeding in these areas following initiation of pile driving activities each day may be forced to leave protective cover or exhibit alarm responses that could make them more vulnerable to predators.

Although the potential exists for some injury of spring-run Chinook salmon to occur at the NDD sites due to pile driving noise, several actions are proposed to minimize this risk. Restriction of pile driving activities to June 1 through October 31 will avoid the primary rearing period for spring-run Chinook salmon in the lower Sacramento River, which is considered the most sensitive life stage to pile driving noise. The extent to which vibratory and other non-impact pile driving methods will be used is unknown at this time but is expected to substantially reduce the extent, intensity, and duration of pile driving noise encountered by spring-run Chinook salmon. Furthermore, implementation of AMM9 *Underwater Sound Control and Abatement Plan* includes the use of a number of coordination, mitigation, and monitoring measures to avoid and minimize potential impacts on listed fish species, including 1) coordination with NMFS, USFWS, and CDFW during the design process to communicate any changes in proposed pile driving methods as updated design and geotechnical information becomes available; 2) potential use of a number of physical attenuation devices, including pile caps, bubble curtains, air-filled fabric barriers, and isolation piles; 3) implementation of hydroacoustic monitoring and operational protocols to maintain pile driving noise levels within specified limits; 4) monitoring the in-water work area for stressed or injured fish and temporarily stopping work to determine appropriate actions if stressed or injured fish are observed; 5) initiating impact pile driving with a “soft-start” to provide fish an opportunity to move away from the area before the standard force is applied; and 6) managing the timing and duration of daily pile driving operations, including operation of multiple pile drivers, to provide opportunities for fish to pass or leave the affected areas with minimal exposure to potentially harmful noise levels.

4.4.2.2.5 Fish Stranding

Installation of cofferdams in the Sacramento River has the potential to strand and subject fish to direct exposure to dewatering and other construction activities within the enclosed cofferdams. Sheet pile installation will be limited to the proposed in-water construction period (June 1 to October 31) to avoid the peak abundance of listed fish species in the project area. When listed fish species may be present, DWR will minimize potential stranding losses by implementing a fish rescue and salvage plan (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM8 *Fish Rescue and Salvage Plan*). This plan will be submitted to the fish and wildlife agencies (NMFS, USFWS, CDFW) for review and approval prior to implementation. The plan will include detailed procedures for fish rescue and salvage, including collection, holding, handling, and release, that would apply to all in-water activities with the potential to strand fish. All fish rescue and salvage operations will be conducted under the guidance of a qualified fish biologist. The biologist, in consultation with a designated agency biologist, will determine the appropriate fish collection and relocation methods based on site-specific conditions and construction methods. For example, collection methods will likely vary depending on whether or to what extent (water depth) dewatering can be achieved.

4.4.2.2.5.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of pile driving activities to June 1-October 31 avoids the primary adult migration and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the project area. In some years, a small proportion of the total number of adults and juveniles that migrate through the project area may migrate through this area as late as June or July.

4.4.2.2.5.2 Assess Species Response

Spring-run Chinook salmon that may be present in the project area in June and July will be large, migrating adults and juveniles that are capable of readily avoiding or moving away from active construction areas, minimizing their risk of being stranded. Any stranded fish may experience stress and potential mortality in response to poor water quality (e.g., low dissolved oxygen) and would ultimately die as a result of dewatering or injuries caused by construction activities within the enclosed cofferdam.

4.4.2.2.5.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

With the implementation of a fish rescue and salvage plan (AMM8), the likelihood of stranding and subsequent injury or mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon would be low. Although proposed fish rescue and salvage activities are expected to minimize stranding losses, some injury or mortality may still occur because of varying degrees of effectiveness of the collection methods and potential injury or mortality associated with capture, handling, and relocation of fish (Kelsch and Shields 1996, Reynolds 1996).

4.4.2.2.6 Direct Physical Injury

During construction of the NDDs, fish could be injured or killed by direct contact with equipment or materials that enter or operate within the open waters of the Sacramento River. Potential mechanisms include fish being crushed by falling rock (riprap), impinged by sheetpiles, entrained by dredges, or struck by propellers. In addition to the proposed work window (June 1-October 31), the potential for injury of listed fish species will be minimized by limiting the duration of in-water construction activities and implementing the take minimization measures described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*. Applicable take minimization measures include AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM4 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan;* and AMM8 *Fish Rescue and Salvage Plan*.

4.4.2.2.6.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of pile driving activities to June 1-October 31 avoids the primary adult migration and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the project area. In some years, a small proportion of the total number of adults and juveniles that migrate through the project area may migrate through this area as late as June or July.

4.4.2.2.6.2 Assess Species Response

Spring-run Chinook salmon that may be present in the project area in June and July will be large, migrating adults and juveniles that are capable of readily avoiding or moving away from active construction areas, minimizing their risk of being injured.

4.4.2.2.6.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

There is a low risk of injury or mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon adults and juveniles based on the timing of in-water work and ability of adults and juveniles to avoid active construction areas.

4.4.2.2.7 Loss/Alteration of Habitat

Construction of the proposed intake facilities will result in temporary and permanent losses or alteration of aquatic habitat on the Sacramento River. Temporary effects of construction activities on water quality, including turbidity and suspended sediment, underwater noise, and contaminants, were previously discussed. The following analysis focuses on longer-term to permanent losses or alteration of habitat associated with construction activities. These impacts total approximately 20.1 acres of tidal perennial habitat that encompass the in-water work areas and permanent footprints of intake structures. The footprint of each intake structure, including cofferdams, transition wall structures, and bank protection (riprap), will result in the permanent loss of approximately 6.6 acres of tidal perennial habitat and 1.02 linear miles of shoreline and associated riparian vegetation. At each intake location, these structures will encompass 1,600-2,000 linear feet of shoreline and 35 feet (5-7%) of the total channel width.

During construction activities, DWR will implement AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring*, to protect listed fish, wildlife, and plant species, and other sensitive natural communities (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*). These BMPs include a number of measures to limit the extent of disturbance of aquatic and riparian habitat during construction, and, following construction, to restore temporarily disturbed areas to pre-construction conditions. All construction and site restoration BMPs will be subject to an approved construction and post-construction monitoring plan to ensure their effectiveness.

DWR proposes to offset unavoidable impacts to spring-run Chinook salmon habitat through restoration of tidal marsh and channel margin habitat at an approved restoration site or the purchase of conservation credits at an approved conservation bank.

4.4.2.2.7.1 Assess Species Exposure

Virtually all of the of the spring-run Chinook salmon adults and juveniles that migrate annually in the Sacramento River will pass the three north Delta intake sites during the construction period, and thus will be potentially exposed to the physical changes in aquatic and channel margin habitat (i.e., changes in water depths, velocities, substrate, and bank structure) within the footprints of the intake structures.

4.4.2.2.7.2 Assess Species Response

The leveed, channelized reaches of the Sacramento River near the NDDs primarily function as a migration corridor for adult and juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon. Rearing habitat at the proposed intake sites has been degraded from historical conditions, and is unlikely to support high densities of rearing juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon, based on the observed lower density with higher substrate hardness (i.e., lowest density with rip-rap), lower density with steeper slope, and lower density with less riparian-woody debris (McLain and Castillo 2009). The temporary and permanent footprints of each NDD are characterized by steep, riprap-armored levee slopes with low quantities of overhanging and instream woody cover. Vegetation densities are low and much of the levee slope is unshaded. About 98% of the shoreline has less than 25% overhead cover (primarily from overhanging vegetation), and about 23% of the shoreline has less than 5% overhead cover. Shallow water is limited to a narrow band along the steep levee slope and there is no off-channel or floodplain habitat.

During and following construction, no significant changes in passage conditions (water depths and velocities) for adults are expected because they use deeper, offshore portions of the channel for holding and migration. However, permanent loss and alteration of shoreline and nearshore areas resulting from the installation of cofferdams and riprap, removal of vegetation, and construction and maintenance dredging will permanently reduce the quality of channel margin and nearshore habitat for rearing and migrating juveniles within the footprint of each intake.

4.4.2.2.7.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Permanent losses or alteration of habitat at the proposed intake sites will have insignificant effects on adult spring-run Chinook salmon; passage conditions for adults will remain unobstructed (apart from short-term effects from turbidity or underwater noise during construction, discussed above) during and following the construction of the intake facilities. Although the intake locations currently provide low quality rearing habitat for juvenile salmonids, construction of the intakes will further degrade this habitat by eliminating shallow water habitat and associated rearing and refuge functions, including protection from predatory fish that occupy deeper offshore waters of the Sacramento River. In addition, cofferdams, riprap, and other artificial structures provide physical and hydraulic conditions that may attract certain predatory fish species (e.g., striped bass, largemouth bass, Sacramento pikeminnow) and potentially increase their opportunities to ambush juvenile salmonids and other fishes.

4.4.2.3 Barge Landings

4.4.2.3.1 Overview

Barge landings will be constructed at each of the TBM launch shaft sites for the loading and unloading of construction equipment, materials, fill, and tunnel spoils. A total of seven barge landings are currently proposed (Appendix 3.A, *Map Book for the Proposed Project*) at the following locations:

- Snodgrass Slough north of Twin Cities Road (adjacent to proposed intermediate forebay)
- Little Potato Slough (Bouldin Island south)
- San Joaquin River (Venice Island south)
- San Joaquin River (Mandeville Island east at junction with Middle River)

- Middle River (Bacon Island north)
- Middle River (Victoria Island northwest)
- Old River (junction with West Canal at Clifton Court Forebay)

Barge docks are also proposed at the Intake 3 and Intake 5 construction sites, Staten Island TBM retrieval shaft, and at the Banks and Jones Connections construction sites. Additional details on the design, construction methods, and proposed construction schedule for the barge landings are described in Section 3.2.10.9 *Barge Landing Construction and Operations*.

Major construction elements of this action include barge landing construction, levee clearing and armoring (as necessary), and barge operations. The barge landings will be constructed over a period of 2 years. Each barge landing will have a dock supported by steel piles. Each dock will occupy an overwater area of approximately 300 by 50 feet (0.34 acre) spanning 5-9% of the total channel widths at the proposed locations. Some clearing and armoring of the levee may be necessary to provide access and protect the levee from wave erosion; all such effects are included within the footprint estimate (30 acres total) for barge landings.

Following construction, these facilities will operate for 5-6 years. During construction of the tunnels and other water conveyance facilities, up to 15,000 barge trips may occur in addition to the daily vessel traffic in the project area. If these trips are divided evenly among the 7 proposed barge landings and spread over the number of days for 5.5 years, this corresponds to an average of 7.5 barge trips per day (1.1 per landing). To protect aquatic habitat and listed fish species, the barge operations plan (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan*) will require barges and towing vessels to comply with standard navigation and operating rules to avoid or minimize physical disturbances and water quality impacts in the navigable waterways of the Delta. Where avoidance is not possible, the plan will include provisions to minimize effects as described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, Section 3.F.2.7.4 *Environmental Training* and Section 3.F.2.7.5 *Dock Approach and Departure Protocol*

Construction of the barge landings will result in temporary impacts on water quality and permanent impacts on physical habitat within the footprints of the barge landings. The barge landings will affect a total of approximately 22.4 acres of tidal perennial habitat that includes the in-water work areas and docks, piers, and mooring structures. Each dock will be in use for the duration of construction activities (5-6 years) at the TBM shaft sites and other construction sites (e.g., north Delta intakes) as needed, and will be removed at the completion of construction.

4.4.2.3.2 Turbidity and Sedimentation

Pile driving, riprap placement, and barge operations will be the principal sources of turbidity and suspended sediment during construction of the barge landings. These activities will result in disturbance of the channel bed and banks, resulting in periodic increases in turbidity and suspended sediment in the adjacent waterways. Barge operations will also result in temporary increases in turbidity and suspended sediment along the routes that will be used to transport construction equipment and materials between the barge loading and unloading facilities.

Potential turbidity and sediment impacts on spring-run Chinook salmon will be minimized by restricting in-water construction activities to August 1-October 31 at most locations[12]. In addition, DWR proposes to develop and implement a *Barge Operations Plan* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures,* AMM7), which includes specific measures to minimize bed scour, bank erosion, loss of submerged and emergent vegetation, and disturbance of benthic communities. Other AMMs that will serve to avoid or minimize potential turbidity, suspended sediment, and other water quality impacts include AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training; Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring;* AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan;* AMM4 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*)[13].

Some potential exists for construction-related turbidity and suspended sediment to occur during winter and spring due to increased erosion and mobilization of sediment in runoff from disturbed levee surfaces. However, with implementation of the proposed erosion and sediment control measures (AMM4) and other BMPs to ensure the effectiveness of these measures (*AMM2, Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring*), no adverse water quality effects are anticipated outside of the in-water construction season.

4.4.2.3.2.1 Assess Species Exposure

The proposed timing of in-water construction activities at the barge landings (August 1 to October 31) avoids the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. However, following construction, year-round barge operations could result in exposure of juveniles and adults to elevated turbidity and suspended sediment levels at the barge landings and along the barge transport routes throughout the rearing and migration seasons.

4.4.2.3.2.2 Assess Species Response

As described in Section 4.4.2.2.2.2 *Assess Species Response*, turbidity and suspended sediment levels generated by pile driving, riprap placement, and barge operations will not reach levels that would cause direct injury to listed salmonids. Increases in nearshore turbidity and suspended sediment levels from waves generated by passing barges and towing vessels will be short lived and infrequent based on the average increase of 7.5 trips per day throughout the entire project area. With implementation of the proposed erosion and sediment control AMMs and other measures to limit turbidity and suspended sediment levels generated by active barges and towing vessels (AMM7), these activities are expected to result in temporary, localized increases in turbidity and suspended sediment levels that dissipate rapidly and return to baseline levels following cessation of activities. The direct effects on spring-run Chinook salmon will likely be limited to harassment of individuals that encounter turbidity plumes. Juveniles, if holding or rearing in the affected areas, are likely to respond by avoiding or moving away from affected areas, disrupting normal activities and increasing their exposure to predators. Such disruptions

---

[12] In-water construction activities at the north Delta intakes (Intake 3 and 5) and CCF, which may include barge landings, will be conducted June 1-October 31 and July 1-November 30, respectively.

[13] See Permit Resolution Log item #37 for further information of controls of resuspended sediments.

are expected to be brief and unlikely to adversely affect the growth of individual salmonids. However, there could be minor losses due to increased predation mortality.

Increases in suspended sediment during in-water construction activities may result in localized sediment deposition in the vicinity of the barge landings, potentially degrading food-producing areas by burying benthic substrates that support food organisms (benthic invertebrates) for juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon. However, the amount of habitat potentially affected by the deposition of suspended sediment generated at the barge landings represents a small proportion of the available foraging habitat in the project area, and thus is unlikely to affect salmonid feeding success or growth.

4.4.2.3.2.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Increases in turbidity and suspended sediment levels during in-water construction activities at the barge landings and along the barge transport routes will be temporary and localized, and unlikely to reach levels causing direct injury to spring-run Chinook salmon. Because of the temporary, localized nature of elevated turbidity and suspended sediment, any disruptions of the normal behavior are expected to be brief and unlikely to cause incidental take of spring-run Chinook salmon.

4.4.2.3.3 Contaminants

Construction of the barge landings poses an exposure risk to spring-run Chinook salmon from potential spills of hazardous materials from construction equipment, barges and towing vessels, and other machinery, and from potential mobilization of contaminated sediment. The risk of accidental spills of contaminants and other hazardous materials during construction of the barge landings would be similar to that described for the NDDs (Section 4.4.2.2.3 *Contaminants*) due to the proximity of construction activities to the waters of the Delta. As described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures,* AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan* and AMM14 *Hazardous Materials Management* are expected to minimize the potential for introduction of contaminants into surface waters and guide rapid and effective response in the case of inadvertent spills of hazardous materials. These AMMs include the use of watertight forms and other containment structures to prevent spills or discharge of raw concrete, wash water, and other contaminants from entering surface waters and other sensitive habitats during casting of the barge decks and other overwater activities. With implementation of these and other required construction BMPs (e.g., AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan*), the risk of contaminant spills or discharges to Delta waters from in-water and overwater sources will be effectively minimized.

Contaminants may also enter the aquatic environment through disturbance, resuspension, or discharge of contaminated soil and sediments from construction sites. Because the barge landings will be constructed on Delta waterways adjacent to major agricultural islands, these sites are more likely to contain agricultural-related toxins such as copper and organochlorine pesticides. As described in Section 4.4.2.2.3 *Contaminants*, sediments act as a sink or source of contaminant exposure, and disturbance or resuspension of contaminated sediments may have adverse effects on fish through direct contact with sediment plumes or newly exposed sediment, or consumption of contaminated food organisms.

The potential for introduction of contaminants from disturbed sediments will be addressed through the implementation of specific measures addressing containment, handling, storage, and disposal of contaminated sediments (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM6 *Disposal of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material*). These measures include the preparation and implementation of a pre-construction SAP to characterize contaminants and determine appropriate BMPs to minimize or avoid mobilization of contaminated sediments during in-water construction. Because potential mobilization of contaminants is closely linked to sediment disturbance and associated increases in turbidity and suspended sediment, turbidity monitoring and control measures (e.g., silt curtains) to achieve compliance with existing Basin Plan objectives (Central Valley Water Board 1998) will be an important measures for limiting dispersal of contaminated sediments during dredging and other in-water construction activities.

4.4.2.3.3.1 Assess Species Exposure

The risk of accidental spills of contaminants will exist throughout the construction period but will be highest during in-water construction activities due to the proximity of construction activities to the Sacramento River. Exposure to contaminants may occur at other times of the year through other mechanisms, including resuspension of newly exposed sediment by high flows or contaminant uptake in food organisms (e.g., benthic invertebrates). Based on the general timing of spring-run Chinook salmon adults and juveniles in the project area, the risk of exposure to potential spills will be very low. However, potential exposure of adults and juveniles to contaminants in newly exposed sediment may persist throughout the construction period.

4.4.2.3.3.2 Assess Species Response

As described in 4.4.2.2.3.4 *Assess Species Response*, the discharge of contaminants into the aquatic environment can cause direct or indirect effects on fish depending on the type, concentrations, and fate of contaminants.

4.4.2.3.3.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

As described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, implementation of AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan*, AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan*, and AMM6 *Hazardous Material Management* is expected to minimize the potential for spills or discharges of contaminants into the Delta waterways during construction of the barge landings. Adherence to all preventative, response, and disposal measures in the approved plans is expected to render incidental take of winter-run Chinook salmon extremely unlikely. No information is available on potential contaminant risks associated with disturbance and exposure of sediments resulting from pile driving and barge operations. However, this risk will be minimized by developing and implementing a SAP to characterize contaminants and determine appropriate BMPs to minimize or avoid mobilization of contaminated sediments during in-water construction activities. Some exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to sediment-borne contaminants or elevated contaminants in food organisms may be unavoidable because of the potential dispersal of contaminants during construction and continued disturbance of contaminated sediments during year-round barge operations. However, these exposures are expected to be minimized by the limited aerial extent of in-water construction areas (pile driving and barge operations), implementation of BMPs to limit the extent of sediment plumes originating from these areas, and the relatively short periods of time that juveniles and adults are likely to spend in the affected areas. It is possible that incidental take could occur due to this exposure.

4.4.2.3.4 Underwater Noise

During construction of the barge landings, activities that are likely to generate underwater noise include in-water pile driving, riprap placement, and barge operations. Pile driving conducted in or near open water poses the greatest risk to fish because the levels of underwater noise produced by impulsive types of sounds often reach levels of sufficient intensity to injure or kill fish within a certain radius of the source piles (Popper and Hastings 2009). Other activities such as riprap placement and barge operations generally produce more continuous, lower energy sounds below the thresholds associated with direct injury but may cause avoidance behavior or temporary hearing loss or physiological stress if avoidance is not possible or exposure is prolonged (Popper and Hastings 2009).

Impact pile driving at the barge landing sites will potentially produce underwater noise levels of sufficient intensity and duration to cause injury to fish. Each barge landing will require vibratory and/or impact driving of 107 steel pipe piles (24-inch diameter) to construct the dock and connecting bridge. Based on the concurrent operation of 4 impact pile drivers at each site and an estimated installation rate of 60 piles per day, pile driving noise is expected to occur over a period of 2 days at each barge landing.

DWR will minimize the potential exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to pile driving noise at barge landings by conducting all pile driving between August 1 and October 31 when spring-run Chinook salmon are unlikely to occur in the project area. In addition, DWR will implement AMM9 *Underwater Sound Control and Abatement Plan* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*) to minimize the effects of underwater construction noise on spring-run Chinook salmon. These measures include the use of vibratory and other non-impact driving methods as well as other physical and operational measures to limit the intensity and duration of underwater noise levels when listed fish species may be present. Where impact pile driving is required, hydroacoustic monitoring will be performed to determine compliance with established objectives (e.g., distances to cumulative noise thresholds) and identify corrective actions to be taken should the thresholds be exceeded[14]. These measures may include additional physical or operational measures to further limit the magnitude and/or duration of underwater noise levels.

4.4.2.3.4.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of impact pile driving to the in-water work period (August 1–October 31) will avoid the primary adult migration and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. Adult spring-run Chinook salmon have been reported to enter the system through the summer although water temperatures in the lower Sacramento River frequently exceed suitable ranges by late June or early July.

---

[14] See Permit Resolution Log item #33 for further information on this point.

4.4.2.3.4.2 Assess Species Response

As described in Section 4.4.2.2.4.2 *Assess Species Response*, the potential responses of fish to pile driving noise can range from behavioral effects to direct injury or mortality, depending on a number of biological, physical, and exposure variables. Sound exposure criteria currently in use by state and federal resource and transportation agencies in California, Oregon, and Washington to evaluate the potential for injury to pile driving activities are presented in Table 4.4-1~~Error! Reference source not found.~~. The peak SPL is considered the maximum sound pressure level a fish can receive from a single strike without injury. The cumulative SEL is considered the total amount of acoustic energy that a fish can receive from a single or multiple strikes without injury. Pile driving and other sources of construction noise may also cause behavioral responses that could disrupt or delay normal activities, potentially leading to adverse effects on survival, growth, and reproductive success. Insufficient data are currently available to support the establishment of a noise threshold for behavioral effects (Popper et al. 2006); however, it is generally assumed that 150 dB RMS is an appropriate threshold for behavioral effects. Underwater noise generated by other in-water construction activities (e.g., barge operations) generally fall within this range and therefore may alter the behavior of fish within a certain distance from the source.

Table 4.4-3~~Error! Reference source not found.~~ presents the extent, timing, and duration of pile driving noise levels predicted to exceed the interim injury and behavioral thresholds at the barge landings based on application of the NMFS spreadsheet model and the assumptions presented in Appendix 3.E *Pile Driving Assumptions for the Proposed Project*. During installation of the dock piles, it is assumed that approximately 70% of the length of each pile can be driven using vibratory pile driving, with impact driving used to finalize pile placement.

Table 4.4-3. Extent, Timing, and Duration of Pile Driving Noise Levels Predicted to Exceed the Interim Injury and Behavioral Thresholds at the Barge Landing Sites.

Facility	Distance to 206 dB SPL Injury Threshold (feet)	Distance to Cumulative 187 dB and 183 dB SEL Injury Thresholds or Effective Quiet (150 dB SEL)[1, 2] (feet)	Distance to 150 dB RMS Behavioral Threshold[2] (feet)	Number of Construction Seasons	Timing of Pile Driving	Duration of Pile Driving (days)
Barge Landings						
Dock piles	46	1,774	9,607	1 (Year 1 or 2)	Aug–Oct	2

[1] Computed distances to injury thresholds are governed by the distance to “effective quiet” (150 dB SEL) rather than 187 dB and 183 dB cumulative SEL thresholds. Computed distances assume that cumulative exposure to single strike SELs <150 dB does not cause injury. Accordingly, once the distance to the cumulative injury threshold exceeds the distance to effective quiet, increasing the number of strikes does not increase the presumed injury distance.

[2] Distance to injury and behavioral thresholds assume an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance and an unimpeded propagation path; on-land pile driving, vibratory driving or other non-impact driving methods, dewatering of cofferdams, and the presence of major river bends or other channel features can impede sound propagation and limit the extent of underwater sounds exceeding the injury and behavioral thresholds.

Sound monitoring data collected during similar types of pile driving operations indicate that single-strike peak SPLs exceeding the interim injury thresholds are expected to be limited to areas within 46 feet of the source piles (**Error! Reference source not found.**3). Based on the distance to effective quiet, the risk of injury is calculated to extend 1,774 feet away from the source piles.[15] Based on a threshold of 150 dB RMS, the potential for behavioral effects is calculated to extend 9,607 feet. However, the extent of noise levels exceeding the injury and behavioral thresholds will be constrained to varying degrees by major channel bends that typically occur within 700-8,500 feet of the barge landing sites. Pile driving activities at each site are projected to take place over a 2-day period during a single construction season. The current schedule indicates that pile driving at multiple sites would occur within the same construction season although the specific timing at individual sites is unknown (Appendix 3.D *Pile Driving*).

4.4.2.3.4.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Based on the proposed timing of in-water construction activities, there is little or no risk of exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to pile driving at the barge landings. Adults, if present, may encounter pile driving noise for a period of two days at each barge landing site. During installation of the dock piles, peak sound levels exceeding the injury threshold (206 dB) are predicted to occur within a radius of 46 feet around the source piles, affecting approximately 4-17% of the channel width available for adults to pass (Appendix 3.E *Pile Driving Assumptions for the Proposed Project*). However, cumulative SELs exceeding the 183 dB or 187 dB thresholds are predicted to extend across the entire channel width and upstream and downstream up to 1,774 feet away from the source piles, potentially resulting in injury of any fish that remain in these areas over the course of a pile driving day. During the in-water construction period, adults that may be present during impact pile driving activities would be actively migrating and capable of swimming through the affected reaches at sufficient speeds to avoid exposure to underwater noise levels sufficient in intensity and duration to cause injury or mortality (see Section 4.4.2.2.4.3 *Assess Risk to Individuals*).

During installation of the dock piles, behavioral effects could occur over distances up to 9,607 feet away from the source piles assuming an unimpeded propagation path. As discussed in Section 4.4.2.2.4.3 *Assess Risk to Individuals*, pile driving noise can potentially delay or block migrations or result in avoidance responses that could increase the exposure of adults to other stressors such as elevated water temperatures or increased metabolic demands associated with prolonged delays. However, the risk of adverse effects associated with such delays is expected to be low because of the rapid migration rates of adults, daily opportunities for adults to pass the affected areas at night (dusk to dawn), and the short duration of pile driving activities at each construction site (2 days).

To minimize the risk of injury and mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon from pile driving noise, DWR will develop and implement an underwater sound control and abatement plan outlining specific measures that will be implemented to avoid and minimize the effects of underwater construction noise on listed fish species (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM9 *Underwater Sound Control and Abatement Plan*). These measures include the use of vibratory and other non-impact driving methods as well as other physical and operational measures to limit the intensity and duration of underwater noise levels

---

[15] In this case, the distance to the injury thresholds are governed by the distance to "effective quiet" (150 dB SEL) rather than the 187 dB and 183 dB cumulative SEL thresholds.

when listed fish species may be present. Where impact pile driving is required, hydroacoustic monitoring will be performed to determine compliance with established objectives (e.g., distances to cumulative noise thresholds) and identify corrective actions to be taken should the thresholds be exceeded[16]. These measures may include additional physical or operational measures to further limit the magnitude and/or duration of underwater noise levels. In addition, DWR will work with contractors to minimize pile driving activities at barge landing facilities by using floating docks instead of pile-supported docks wherever feasible, considering the load requirements of the landings and site conditions.

4.4.2.3.5 Fish Stranding

No actions are proposed at the barge landings that could result in stranding of fish or require fish rescue and salvage activities.

4.4.2.3.6 Direct Physical Injury

During construction of barge landings, fish could be injured or killed by direct contact with equipment or materials that are operated or placed in open waters of the adjacent Delta channels. Potential mechanisms include fish being crushed by falling rock (riprap), impinged by dock or mooring piles, and struck or entrained by propellers. In addition to the proposed work window (August 1 to October 31), the potential for injury of listed fish species would be minimized by limiting the duration of in-water construction activities to the extent practicable and implementing the following take minimization measures described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*: AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM4 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan; and* AMM8 *Fish Rescue and Salvage Plan*.

Operational effects of barge operations, including effects that could take place during transits of the Delta between barge loading and unloading facilities, include propeller entrainment and wave-induced shoreline impacts (e.g., dewatering).

4.4.2.3.6.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of in-water construction activities to August 1–October 31 will avoid the primary adult migration and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. However, following construction, year-round barge operations could result in exposure of juveniles and adults to elevated turbidity and suspended sediment levels at the barge landings and along the barge transport routes throughout the adult migration period and juvenile rearing and migration periods in the Delta.

4.4.2.3.6.2 Assess Species Response

Although there are few direct observations of fish being seriously injured or killed by boat traffic (Rosen and Hales 1980; Gutreuter et al. 2003), there is general agreement that the shear stresses caused by propellers can injure or kill early life stages (eggs and larval stages of fish) and that

---

[16] See Permit Resolution Log item #33 for further information on this point.

juvenile and adult fish are much less susceptible to entrainment because of their greater swimming capability (Morgan et al. 1976; Holland 1986; Killgore et al. 2001; Wolter and Arlinghaus 2003).

Adult spring-run Chinook salmon are capable of readily avoiding active construction areas and direct encounters with operating barges because of their swimming abilities and use of deeper, offshore portions of the channel for holding and migration. Migrating and rearing juveniles may also exhibit an avoidance response but may be less able to avoid direct contact with construction equipment, materials (e.g., riprap), and vessels based on their swimming abilities and greater nearshore and surface orientation. The potential effects of barge operations also include wave-induced disturbances that can adversely affect nearshore communities, including juvenile fishes which can suffer from disorientation and stranding during vessel passage (Wolter and Arlinghaus 2003).

4.4.2.3.6.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

During construction of the barge landings, there will be little or no risk of injury of adult and juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon because of the timing of in-water construction activities and their ability to avoid direct encounters with construction equipment, materials, and vessels. Juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon are at higher risk of direct injury from subsequent barge operations during the primary juvenile migration and rearing periods in the Delta (November through May). No information exists on the characteristics of vessels that are most likely to interact with juvenile salmonids or the rates of these interactions. Although implementation of AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*) is expected to minimize potential interactions, the frequency of such interactions will likely increase and result in an elevated risk of injury or mortality (e.g., propeller strikes) of juveniles. Year-round barge traffic will also increase the frequency of wave-induced shoreline disturbances, which could affect rearing juveniles that depend on shallow nearshore areas for resting, feeding, and protection from predators. However, an average increase of 7.5 trips per day over the entire project area is small compared to existing traffic, so increases in injury or harassment of spring-run Chinook salmon will be small.

4.4.2.3.7 Alteration/Loss of Habitat

Construction and operation of the barge landings will result in temporary and permanent losses or alteration of aquatic habitat in several channels of the east, south, and north Delta. Temporary effects of construction activities on water quality, including turbidity and suspended sediment, underwater noise, and contaminants, were previously discussed. The following analysis focuses on longer-term to permanent losses or alteration of habitat associated with construction activities. These impacts encompass a total of approximately 22.4 acres of tidal perennial habitat that include the in-water work areas and permanent footprints of docks, mooring structures, and other in-water and overwater structures. The aquatic footprints of the individual barge landings will encompass as estimated 0.34 acre of overwater structures, approximately 300 linear feet of shoreline, and 5-19% of the total width of the adjacent channel or slough. These conditions will exist throughout the 7-8-year construction period.

During construction activities, DWR will implement AMM2, *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring*, to protect listed fish, wildlife, and plant species, their designated critical habitat, and other sensitive natural communities (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*). These BMPs include a number of measures to limit the extent of disturbance of aquatic and riparian habitat during construction, and, following construction, to restore temporarily disturbed areas to pre-construction conditions. All construction and site restoration BMPs will be subject to an approved construction and post-construction monitoring plan to ensure their effectiveness. To further minimize adverse effects to aquatic habitat associated with barge operations, DWR also proposes to implement a AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*), which includes specific measures to minimize bed scour, bank erosion, loss of submerged and emergent vegetation, and disturbance of benthic communities. DWR proposes to offset unavoidable impacts to spring-run Chinook salmon habitat hrough restoration of aquatic and channel margin habitat at an approved restoration site and/or the purchase of conservation credits at an approved conservation bank[17].

4.4.2.3.7.1 Assess Species Exposure

All spring-run Chinook salmon adults and juveniles that migrate annually in the Sacramento River and San Joaquin River have the potential to use migration routes through the Delta where that may encounter the barge landing sites, and thus be exposed to physical changes in aquatic and channel margin habitat (i.e., changes in water depths, velocities, substrate, and bank structure) within the footprints of the intake structures.

4.4.2.3.7.2 Assess Species Response

Habitat conditions for spring-run Chinook salmon in the vicinity of the proposed barge landings are degraded from historical conditions by altered flow patterns, levee construction, extensive riprapping, and loss of natural wetland and floodplain habitat. Because the barge landings will likely be sited in areas with steep levees, deep nearshore areas, and minimal obstructions to barge access and operations, construction and operation of the barge landings has limited potential to substantially degrade habitat conditions. During and following construction, adult spring-run Chinook salmon will be unaffected by changes in channel widths or passage conditions (water depths and velocities) because of their use of deeper, offshore portions of the channel for holding and migration. Impacts will be caused primarily by localized reductions in the quality of passage and rearing conditions for juveniles due to the removal of aquatic and riparian vegetation, the addition of riprap to the levee slope, and the installation of artificial in-water and overwater structures within the permanent footprints of the barge landings. These actions would generally result in loss of cover, benthic food resources, and changes in physical and hydraulic conditions that may increase exposure of migrating juveniles to predation.

As previously discussed, adult spring-run Chinook salmon will likely avoid the barge landing sites during active periods of construction due to increased turbidity and suspended sediment, noise, and other construction-related disturbances. Although these sites lack high-quality rearing habitat, the addition of in-water and overwater structures will further degrade the suitability of the sites for juvenile rearing and migration. Docks, piles, and barges provide shade and cover that may attract certain predatory fish species (e.g., striped bass, largemouth bass, Sacramento pikeminnow) and potentially increase their opportunities to ambush juvenile salmonids and other fishes. These structures may also improve predation opportunities for piscivorous birds (e.g.,

---

[17] See Permit Resolution Log item #42 for further information on this point.

gulls, terns, cormorants) by providing perch sites immediately adjacent to open water. In addition, the elimination or disturbance of benthic habitat and associated invertebrate communities due to pile installation and scour will result in localized reductions in benthic food production that will likely persist for the duration of barge operations.

4.4.2.3.7.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Temporary and permanent losses or alteration of habitat at the proposed barge landing sites are expected to have no effect on adult spring-run Chinook salmon; passage conditions for adults will remain unobstructed throughout the construction period. Although construction and operation of the barge landings will result in localized reductions in the quality of passage and rearing conditions for juveniles, these changes are unlikely to result in direct mortality, or to significantly affect the growth of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon because of the low quality and minimal use of this habitat by juveniles under existing conditions. However, the lack of cover for juvenile fish and presence of structural and overhead cover for predators may increase the risk of predation at the proposed barge landing sites.

4.4.2.4 Head of Old River Gate

4.4.2.4.1 Overview

An operable gate (Head of Old River [HOR] gate) will be constructed at the HOR to prevent migrating juvenile salmonids from entering Old River from the San Joaquin River, and thereby minimize their exposure to the CVP/SWP pumping facilities. The gate will be located in Old River approximately 400 feet downstream of the junction of Old River with the San Joaquin River (Appendix 3.A *Map Book for the Proposed Project*). The gate will be 210 feet long and 30 feet wide, with a top elevation of +15 feet (Appendix 3.C *Conceptual Engineering Report*, Volume 2, Sheets 11, 12, and 13), and include seven bottom-hinged gates, fish passage structure, boat lock, control building, boat lock operator's building, and communications antenna. Additional details on the design, construction methods, and proposed construction schedule for the HOR gate appear in Section 3.2.8 *Head of Old River Gate*.

Construction of the HOR gate will take 2 years. The HOR gate will be constructed in two phases using cofferdams to isolate and dewater half the channel during the first phase and the other half during the second phase. All in-water construction work, including cofferdam installation, riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations, will be restricted to August 1 to October 31 to minimize or avoid potential effects on listed fish species, including spring-run Chinook salmon. In addition, all pile driving occurring in or near open water (cofferdams and foundation piles) will be restricted to the in-water work period to avoid or minimize exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to potentially harmful underwater noise levels. Construction of the HOR gate will require dredging of approximately 500 feet of channel (150 feet upstream to 350 feet downstream from the proposed gate) and removal of up to 1,500 cubic yards of material with a barge-mounted hydraulic or a sealed clamshell dredge; dredge activity will also be restricted to the in-water work period. The need for clearing and grading of the site for construction, staging, and other support facilities is expected to be minimal because of the presence of existing access roads and staging areas that have been used in the past for installation of a temporary rock barrier.

Construction of the HOR gate will result in temporary impacts on water quality and long-term to permanent impacts on physical habitat within the footprint of the gate and channel segments that will be affected by dredging. These impacts encompass a total of approximately 2.9 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat that include the in-water work areas and the permanent footprint of the gate, fish passage structure, and boat lock.

4.4.2.4.2 Turbidity and Suspended Sediment

Construction activities will result in disturbance of the channel bed and banks, resulting in temporary increases in turbidity and suspended sediment levels in Old River and potentially the San Joaquin River. These activities include cofferdam construction (sheet pile installation), dredging, levee clearing and grading[18], riprap placement, and barge operations. All other sediment-disturbing activities will be outside or isolated from the active channel and would not result in the discharge of sediment to the river. Water pumped from the cofferdams will be treated (removing all sediment) using settling basins or Baker tanks, and returned to the river. In addition to the in-water work window, the following take minimization measures will be implemented to avoid or minimize potential impacts on water quality and listed fish species during construction of the HOR gate (described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*): AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training; Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring;* AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan;* AMM4 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management*.

4.4.2.4.2.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of in-water construction activities to August 1–October 31 avoids the primary adult migration period and primary juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. However, this period overlaps with the potential occurrence of San Joaquin River (SJR)-basin spring-run Chinook salmon (yearling smolts) that may also be present in November, assuming juveniles exhibit similar emigration patterns to Sacramento River spring-run populations. Juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon originating from the Sacramento River may enter the lower San Joaquin River in November but are unlikely to occur as far upstream as the HOR gate based on the general effects of flow, DCC gate operations, and export pumping on route selection in the Delta.

4.4.2.4.2.2 Assess Species Response

As described in Section 4.4.2.2.2.2 *Assess Species Response*, turbidity and suspended sediment levels generated by pile driving, riprap placement, and barge operations will not reach levels that would cause direct injury to salmonids. With implementation of the take minimization measures, in-water construction activities will result in temporary, localized increases in turbidity and suspended sediment that dissipate rapidly with distance from the source and return to baseline levels following cessation of activities. Direct effects will be likely be limited to behavioral effects only (i.e., harassment).

---

[18] See Permit Resolution Log item #32 for further information on this point.

4.4.2.4.2.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Based on the seasonal timing and location of in-water construction activities, any affects to spring-run Chinook salmon would be limited to brief exposures to elevated turbidity and suspended sediment levels that are unlikely to cause adverse effects. Juveniles, if holding or rearing in the affected areas, are likely to respond by avoiding or moving away from affected shoreline areas, disrupting normal activities and increasing their exposure to predators. Such disruptions are expected to be brief and unlikely to adversely affect the growth of individual salmonids. However, there could be minor losses due to increased predation mortality.

Increases in suspended sediment during in-water construction activities may result in localized sediment deposition in the vicinity of the HOR gate, potentially degrading food-producing areas by burying benthic substrates that support important food organisms (benthic invertebrates) for juvenile salmonids. However, this is unlikely to affect juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon because the affected area represents a small proportion of the available rearing habitat in the Delta.

4.4.2.4.3 Contaminants

Construction of the HOR gate poses an exposure risk to listed fish species from potential spills of hazardous materials from construction equipment, barges and towing vessels, and other machinery, and from potential mobilization of contaminated sediment. The risk of accidental spills of contaminants and other potentially hazardous materials will be similar to that described for the NDDs (see Section 4.4.2.2.3 *Contaminants*) due to the proximity of construction activities to the waters of the Delta. Implementation of AMM5, *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan,* and AMM14 *Hazardous Materials Management* (see Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*) is expected to minimize the potential for introduction of contaminants into surface waters and guide rapid and effective response in the case of inadvertent spills of hazardous materials. With implementation of these and other required construction BMPs (e.g., AMM3, *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan*), the risk of contaminant spills or discharges to Delta waters from in-water or upland sources would be effectively minimized.

Contaminants may also enter the aquatic environment through disturbance, resuspension, or discharge of contaminated soil and sediments from construction sites. As described in Section 4.4.2.2.3 *Contaminants*, sediments act as a sink or source of contaminant exposure, and disturbance or resuspension of contaminated sediments may have adverse effects on fish through direct contact with sediment plumes or newly exposed sediment, or consumption of contaminated food organisms. Contaminated sediments may be present in Old River and within the footprint of the proposed HOR gate because of the proximity of the site to major municipal, industrial, and agricultural areas. The potential for introduction of contaminants from disturbed sediments will be addressed through the implementation of specific measures addressing containment, handling, storage, and disposal of contaminated sediments, as described under AMM6 *Disposal of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material* (see Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*). These measures include the preparation and implementation of a pre-construction sampling and analysis plan (SAP) to characterize contaminants and determine appropriate BMPs to minimize or avoid mobilization of contaminated sediments during in-water construction activities. Because potential mobilization of contaminants is closely linked to sediment disturbance and associated increases in turbidity and suspended sediment, turbidity monitoring and control measures (e.g., silt curtains) to achieve compliance with existing Basin Plan objectives (Central Valley Water Board 1998) will be an important measures for limiting dispersal of contaminated sediments during dredging and other in-water construction activities.

4.4.2.4.3.1 Assess Species Exposure

The potential for contaminant spills or releases would exist throughout the construction period but the highest risk would occur during in-water construction activities. Restriction of in-water construction activities to August 1–October 31 will avoid the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta.

4.4.2.4.3.2 Assess Species Response

As described in 4.4.2.2.3.4 *Assess Species Response*, the discharge of contaminants into the aquatic environment can cause direct or indirect effects on fish depending on the type, concentrations, and fate of contaminants.

4.4.2.4.3.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

As described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures,* implementation of AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan,* AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan*, and AMM6 *Hazardous Materials Management*, is expected to minimize the potential for spills or discharges of contaminants into the Delta waterways during construction of the barge landings. Implementation of these take minimization measures is expected to minimize the potential for spills or discharges of contaminants into Old River and the lower San Joaquin River during construction of the HOR gate. Adherence to all preventative, response, and disposal measures in the approved plans will minimize potential effects to spring-run Chinook salmon to the point that incidental take is unlikely. No information is available on potential contaminant risks associated with disturbance and exposure of sediments resulting from dredging and other construction activities at the HOR gate. However, this risk will be minimized by developing and implementing a SAP to characterize contaminants and determine appropriate BMPs to minimize or avoid mobilization of contaminated sediments during in-water construction activities. While some exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to sediment-borne contaminants may be unavoidable, these exposures are expected to be brief and limited to very small numbers of individuals based on the distribution of juveniles, the limited aerial extent of in-water construction areas (pile driving, dredging, and barge operations), implementation of BMPs to limit the extent of sediment plumes originating from these areas. Thus, mortality or injury are unlikely to occur as a result of such exposure.

4.4.2.4.4 Underwater Noise

During construction of the HOR gate, activities likely to generate underwater noise include in-water pile driving, riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations. Pile driving conducted in or near open water poses the greatest risk to fish because the levels of underwater noise produced by impulsive types of sounds often reach levels of sufficient intensity to injure or kill fish within a certain radius of the source piles (Popper and Hastings 2009). Other activities such as riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations generally produce more continuous, lower energy sounds below the thresholds associated with direct injury but may cause avoidance behavior or temporary hearing loss or physiological stress if avoidance is not possible or exposure is prolonged (Popper and Hastings 2009).

Impact pile driving at the barge landing sites will potentially produce underwater noise levels of sufficient intensity and duration to cause injury to fish. Construction of the HOR gate will require installation of 550 temporary sheet piles (275 piles per season) to construct the cofferdams and 100 permanent 14-inch steel pipe or H-piles (50 piles per season) to construct the foundation. Based on an assumed installation rate of 15 piles per day, pile driving will be expected to occur for up to 19 days per season during installation of the sheet piles, and up to 4 days per season during installation of the foundation piles. DWR will minimize the potential exposure of listed fish species to pile driving noise by conducting all in-water construction activities between August 1 and October 31. In addition, DWR will minimize the risk of injury to fish by using vibratory methods or other non-impact driving and attenuation methods to the extent feasible. Sheet piles will be installed starting with a vibratory hammer, then switching to impact hammer if refusal is encountered before target depths. For the purposes of the following analysis, it is assumed that approximately 70% of the sheet piles can be driven using a vibratory hammer, followed by an estimated 210 strikes to drive the sheet piles to the final depth using an impact hammer. For the foundation piles, the current design assumes the use of impact pile driving only. Some degree of sound attenuation is expected assuming that the cofferdams can be fully dewatered. Therefore, predictions are shown for two scenarios, one in which dewatering results in a 5 dB reduction in reference noise levels, and one in which no attenuation is possible (no dewatering or other forms of attenuation). Based on the potential for injury of listed fish species, DWR may also implement other protective measures on accordance with an underwater sound control and abatement plan (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM9 *Underwater Sound Control and Abatement Plan*).

4.4.2.4.4.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of pile driving activities to August 1–October 31 avoids the primary adult migration period and primary juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta

4.4.2.4.4.2 Assess Species Response

As described in Section 4.4.2.2.4.2 *Assess Species Response,* the potential responses of fish to pile driving noise can range from behavioral effects to direct injury or mortality, depending on a number of biological, physical, and exposure variables. Sound exposure criteria currently in use by state and federal resource and transportation agencies in California, Oregon, and Washington to evaluate the potential for injury to pile driving activities are presented in **Error! Reference source not found.**. The peak SPL is considered the maximum sound pressure level a fish can receive from a single strike without injury. The cumulative SEL is considered the total amount of acoustic energy that a fish can receive from a single or multiple strikes without injury. Pile driving and other sources of construction noise may also cause behavioral responses that could disrupt or delay normal activities, potentially leading to adverse effects on survival, growth, and reproductive success. Insufficient data are currently available to support the establishment of a noise threshold for behavioral effects (Popper et al. 2006); however, it is widely assumed that 150 dB RMS is an appropriate threshold for behavioral effects. Underwater noise generated by other in-water construction activities (e.g., dredging) generally fall within this range and therefore may alter the behavior of fish within a certain distance from the source.

Table 4.4-4**Error! Reference source not found.** presents the extent, timing, and duration of pile driving noise levels predicted to exceed the interim injury and behavioral thresholds at the HOR gate based on application of the NMFS spreadsheet model and the assumptions presented in Appendix 3.E *Pile Driving Assumptions for the Proposed Project*.

Table 4.4-4. Extent, Timing, and Duration of Pile Driving Noise Levels Predicted to Exceed the Interim Injury and Behavioral Thresholds at the Head of Old River Gate.

Facility	Distance to 206 dB SPL Injury Threshold (feet)	Distance to Cumulative 187 dB and 183 dB SEL Injury Thresholds or Effective Quiet (150 dB SEL) [1,2] (feet)	Distance to 150 dB RMS Behavioral Threshold[2] (feet)	Number of Construction Seasons	Timing of Pile Driving	Duration of Pile Driving per Season (days)
Head of Old River Gate						
Cofferdams	30	2,063	13,058	2	Aug–Nov	19
Foundation (no attenuation)	46	1,774	9,607	2	Aug–Nov	4
Foundation (with attenuation)	20	823	4,458	2	Aug–Nov	4

[1] Computed distances to injury thresholds are governed by the distance to "effective quiet" (150 dB SEL) rather than 187 dB and 183 dB cumulative SEL thresholds. Computed distances assume that cumulative exposure to single strike SELs <150 dB does not cause injury. Accordingly, once the distance to the cumulative injury threshold exceeds the distance to effective quiet, increasing the number of strikes does not increase the presumed injury distance.

[2] Distance to injury and behavioral thresholds assume an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance and an unimpeded propagation path; on-land pile driving, vibratory driving or other non-impact driving methods, dewatering of cofferdams, and the presence of major river bends or other channel features can impede sound propagation and limit the extent of underwater sounds exceeding the injury and behavioral thresholds.

Sound monitoring data collected during similar types of pile driving operations indicate that single-strike peak SPLs exceeding the interim injury thresholds are likely to be limited to areas within 30 feet of the cofferdam sheet piles and 20-46 feet of the foundation piles, depending on whether cofferdams can be dewatered (Table 4.4-4). Based on the distance to effective quiet, the risk of injury is calculated to extend up to 4,126 feet (2,063 x 2) during installation of the cofferdams and 3,548 feet (1,774 x 2) during installation of the foundation piles (1,646 feet if the cofferdams can be dewatered) assuming an unimpeded propagation path. Based on a threshold of 150 dB RMS, the potential for behavioral effects is calculated to extend up to 13,058 feet away during cofferdam sheet pile installation, and 9,607 feet away during foundation pile installation (4,458 feet away if the cofferdams can be dewatered) assuming an unimpeded propagation path. However, the extent of noise levels exceeding the injury and behavioral thresholds will be constrained by major channel bends or levees located approximately 1,500 feet downstream of the proposed construction site in Old River, and approximately 700 feet upstream where levees at the junction of the San Joaquin River and Old River which would create a major impediment to sound propagation. The potential for effects could occur during two construction seasons (August 1-October 31) for up to 19 days during cofferdam installation and 4 days during foundation pile installation.

4.4.2.4.4.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

As previously discussed, the timing of pile driving avoids potential exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to pile driving noise and other in-water construction activities at the HOR gate. During cofferdam and foundation pile installation, peak SPLs exceeding the injury criteria will be limited to areas immediately adjacent to the source piles (20-46 feet), affecting approximately 27-61% of the total channel width available for adults to pass (75 feet). Any juveniles passing the construction site during active pile driving operations would be potentially subject to cumulative noise exposures exceeding injury thresholds across the entire width of Old River and upstream and downstream up to 2,063 feet away. However, the distances over which these levels would occur would likely be constrained by a major channel bend located approximately 1,500 feet downstream of the proposed construction site in Old River, and by levees at the junction of the San Joaquin River and Old River approximately 700 feet upstream of the site[19]. Based on the general migration rates of yearling smolts (see 4.4.2.2.4.3 *Assess Species Response*), juveniles are capable of swimming through the affected reaches within a few hours and thus avoid or minimize their exposure to potentially harmful levels of underwater noise.

To minimize the risk of injury or mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon, DWR will develop and implement an underwater sound control and abatement plan outlining specific measures that will be implemented to avoid and minimize the effects of underwater construction noise on listed fish species (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM9 *Underwater Sound Control and Abatement Plan*). These measures include the use of vibratory and other non-impact driving methods as well as other physical and operational measures to limit the intensity and duration of underwater noise levels when listed fish species may be present. Where impact pile driving is required, hydroacoustic monitoring will be performed to determine compliance with established objectives (e.g., distances to cumulative noise thresholds) and identify corrective actions to be taken should the thresholds be exceeded[20]. These measures may include additional physical or operational measures to further limit the magnitude and/or duration of underwater noise levels.

4.4.2.4.5 Fish Stranding

Installation of cofferdams to isolate construction areas for the HOR gate has the potential to strand and subject fish to direct exposure to dewatering and construction activities within the enclosed cofferdams. Sheet pile installation will be limited to the proposed in-water construction period (August 1–October 31) to avoid the peak abundance of listed fish species in the project area. When listed fish species may be present, DWR proposes to minimize potential stranding losses by implementing AMM8 *Fish Rescue and Salvage Plan* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*). The plan will be submitted to the fish and wildlife agencies (NMFS, USFWS, CDFW) for review and approval prior to implementation. The plan will include detailed procedures for fish rescue and salvage, including collection, holding, handling, and release, that would apply to all in-water activities with the potential to entrap fish. All fish rescue and salvage operations will be conducted under the guidance of a qualified fish biologist. The biologist, in consultation with a designated agency biologist, will determine the

---

[19] See Permit Resolution Log item #44 for further information on this point.
[20] See Permit Resolution Log item #33 for further information on this point.

appropriate fish collection and relocation methods based on site-specific conditions and construction methods. For example, collection methods will likely vary depending on whether or to what extent (water depth) dewatering can be achieved.

4.4.2.4.5.1 Assess Species Exposure

Closure of the cofferdams between August 1 and October 31 avoids the primary adult migration period and primary juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta.

4.4.2.4.5.2 Assess Species Response

Spring-run Chinook salmon that may be present in the project area during cofferdam installation will be limited to large, migrating juveniles that are capable of readily avoiding or moving away from active construction areas, minimizing their risk of being stranded. Any stranded fish may experience stress and potential mortality in response to poor water quality (e.g., low dissolved oxygen) and would ultimately die as a result of dewatering or injuries caused by construction activities within the enclosed cofferdam.

4.4.2.4.5.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

With the implementation of a fish rescue and salvage plan (AMM8), the likelihood of stranding and subsequent injury or mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon will be low. Although proposed fish rescue and salvage activities are expected to minimize stranding losses, some injury or mortality may still occur because of varying degrees of effectiveness of the collection methods and potential injury or mortality associated with capture, handling, and relocation of fish (Kelsch and Shields 1996, Reynolds 1996).

4.4.2.4.6 Direct Physical Injury

During construction of the HOR gate, fish could be injured or killed by direct contact with equipment or materials that are operated or placed in open waters of Old River. Potential mechanisms include fish being impinged by sheetpiles, entrained by dredges, or struck by propellers during barge operations. DWR proposes to minimize the potential for injury of listed fish species by conducting all in-water construction activities at the HOR gate site between August 1 and October 31. The potential for injury of listed fish species will be further minimized to the extent practicable by limiting the duration of in-water construction activities and implementing the following take minimization measures described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*: AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM4 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan; and* AMM8 *Fish Rescue and Salvage Plan*.

4.4.2.4.6.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of in-water construction activities to August 1 to October 31 will avoid the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. Based on the location and timing of in-water activities relative to the principal timing and migration routes of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta, the potential for injury of spring-run Chinook salmon will be limited to SJR-basin yearlings, assuming juveniles exhibit similar emigration patterns to Sacramento River spring-run populations.

4.4.2.4.6.2 Assess Species Response

Spring-run Chinook salmon that may be present in the project area in October will be large, migrating yearlings that are capable of readily avoiding or moving away from active construction areas, minimizing their risk of being injured.

4.4.2.4.6.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

There is a low risk of injury or mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon based on the timing of in-water work and ability of juveniles to avoid active construction areas.

4.4.2.4.7 Loss/Alteration of Habitat

Construction of the HOR gate will result in temporary and permanent losses or alteration of aquatic habitat in Old River. Temporary effects of construction activities on water quality, including turbidity and suspended sediment, underwater noise, and contaminants, were previously discussed. The following analysis focuses on longer-term to permanent impacts on physical habitat associated with construction activities. These impacts are estimated to encompass approximately 2.9 acres of tidal perennial habitat within the footprint of the cofferdams, permanent structures (gate, fish passage structure, and boat lock), and upstream and downstream channel areas that will be dredged. During the construction period (2 years), the cofferdams will affect up to 100 feet of the channel length and 75 feet (50%) of the channel width. No additional impacts associated with construction staging, access, or levee clearing/armoring are anticipated because of the presence of existing roads, staging areas, and riprap that have been used in recent years to install the temporary rock barrier.

During construction activities, DWR will implement AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring (*Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures),* to protect listed fish, wildlife, and plant species, and other sensitive natural communities. These BMPs include a number of measures to limit the extent of disturbance of aquatic and riparian habitat during construction, and, following construction, to restore temporarily disturbed areas to pre-construction conditions. All construction and site restoration BMPs will be subject to an approved construction and post-construction monitoring plan to ensure their effectiveness. DWR will offset unavoidable impacts to spring-run Chinook salmon habitat through restoration of aquatic and channel margin habitat at an approved restoration site and/or the purchase of conservation credits at an approved conservation bank.

4.4.2.4.7.1 Assess Species Exposure

All spring-run Chinook salmon adults and juveniles that use Old River as a migration route during construction of the HOR gate will encounter physical changes in aquatic and channel margin habitat (i.e., changes in water depths, velocities, substrate, and bank structure) within the footprint of the HOR gate.

4.4.2.4.7.2 Assess Species Response

Habitat conditions for anadromous salmonids in Old River in the vicinity of the HOR gate are degraded from historical conditions by altered flow patterns, levee construction, extensive riprapping, and loss of natural wetland and floodplain habitat. Because of these conditions and past disturbance associated with the annual installation of a temporary rock barrier at the site, it is unlikely that the construction of the HOR gate will substantially degrade habitat conditions.

During construction, fish passage past the construction site will be maintained by constructing half the structure in one year and the remaining half in the following year. Any spring-run Chinook salmon adults that attempt to pass the site during construction may be temporarily delayed and experience increased energy expenditure but these effects are not expected to significantly affect migration timing or the condition of migrating adults based on the strong swimming abilities of adults and the distances over which potentially higher velocities would be encountered (up to 100 feet).

Some reductions is expected in the quality of passage and rearing conditions for juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon due to changes in hydraulic conditions associated with the cofferdams, potential bed scour adjacent to the cofferdams, and dredging both upstream and downstream of the proposed barrier. These changes will generally result in loss of shallow water habitat, instream cover, benthic food resources, and altered hydraulic conditions that may increase exposure of migrating juveniles to predation. The installation of cofferdams in Old River may attract predator fish species (e.g., striped bass) and potentially increase their opportunities to ambush juvenile salmonids and other fishes. In addition, the constriction of flow and increases in water velocities and turbulence at the interface of the cofferdams and the river may concentrate and disorient juveniles, further enhancing the risk of predation. In addition, the elimination or disturbance of benthic habitat and associated invertebrate communities due to pile installation, scour, and dredging would result in localized reductions in benthic substrates that support important food organisms (benthic invertebrates) for juvenile salmonids.

4.4.2.4.7.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Changes in physical and hydraulic conditions during construction of the HOR gate are expected to have no effect on migrating adult spring-run Chinook salmon; suitable passage conditions for adults will be maintained throughout the construction period by limiting construction to half the channel width during each year of construction. Although construction of the HOR gate will result in localized reductions in the quality of passage and rearing conditions for juveniles, these changes are unlikely to significantly affect the growth of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon because of the low quality and minimal use of this habitat by juveniles under existing conditions. However, the lack of cover for juvenile fish and the structural and hydraulic changes associated with the presence of the cofferdams may increase the risk of predation by increasing predator habitat and the vulnerability of juveniles to predators.

4.4.2.5 Clifton Court Forebay

4.4.2.5.1 Overview

Construction activities at Clifton Court Forebay (CCF) that may potentially affect spring-run Chinook salmon include expansion and dredging of South Clifton Court Forebay (SCCF), construction of divider wall and east/west embankments, dewatering and excavation of North Clifton Court Forebay (NCCF), construction of NCCF outlet canals and siphons, and construction of a SCCF intake structure and NCCF emergency spillway. The estimated 7-year construction period will be phased, beginning with expansion of SCCF (Phases 1, 2, and 3); construction of the divider wall between NCCF and SCCF (Phase 4); construction of the west and east embankments (Phase 5); and construction of the NCCF east, west, and north side embankments (Phases 6, 7, and 8). Details on the design, construction methods, and proposed construction schedule for CCF are presented in Section 3.2.5 *Clifton Court Forebay*.

In-water construction activities, including pile driving, dredging, riprap placement, and barge operations, will all be conducted within a 5-month work window each year, extending from July 1 to November 30. Pile driving operations include the installation of an estimated 10,294 temporary sheet piles to construct the cofferdams for the embankments and divider wall, and 2,160 14-inch diameter concrete or steel pipe piles to construct the siphon at the NCCF outlet. A total of 4 construction seasons will be required to complete pile driving operations based on the estimated duration of pile installation.

Dredging will be performed with a cutter head dredge, a dragline type dredge, or other acceptable dredging technique. The SCCF will be dredged to an approximate elevation of -10.0 feet. An estimated 1,932 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat will be dredged, resulting in the removal of an estimated volume of 7 million cubic yards of material. Dredged material will be disposed of at an approved disposal site or reused for embankment and levee construction if determined to be suitable. Dredging will be performed by two dredges (425 cubic yards capacity each) operating within 200-acre cells enclosed by silt curtains to limit the extent of turbidity and suspended sediment. Dredging of CCF is estimated to require three successive work windows seasons.

Permanent impacts on aquatic habitat include the loss of an estimated 258 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat in CCF that will be replaced by permanent fill and structures associated with the new Clifton Court Pumping Plant (CCPP), perimeter and divider embankments, outlet canals and siphons, and intake structure and spillway. Estimates of the amount of shallow water habitat potentially affected by construction are not currently available.

4.4.2.5.2 Turbidity and Suspended Sediment

In-water construction activities at CCF would result in elevated turbidity and suspended sediment levels in CCF and Old River. The principal sources of increased turbidity and suspended sediment are dredging, cofferdam construction (sheet pile installation and removal), levee clearing and grading[21], and riprap placement. Minor increases in turbidity and suspended sediment in CCF and Old River are also expected during construction of the CCPP, outlet canals and siphons, SSCF intake structure, and NCCF emergency spillway. All other sediment-disturbing activities within cofferdams, upland areas, or non-fish-bearing waters pose little or no risk to listed fish species or aquatic habitat.

The potential for adverse effects of elevated turbidity and suspended sediment on spring-run Chinook salmon will be minimized by restricting all in-water construction to July 1 to November 30, limiting the duration of these activities to the extent practicable, and implementing the following take minimization measures described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*: AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring;* AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan;* AMM4

---

[21] See Permit Resolution Log item #32 for further information on this point.

Erosion and Sediment Control Plan; AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material Plan;* and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management*

Dredging of CCF will result in elevated turbidity and suspended sediment and potential secondary effects on water quality, including potential re-suspension of contaminants and reductions in dissolved oxygen levels associated with the decomposition of vegetation and organic material in disturbed sediments. In addition to implementing the take minimization measures listed above, DWR proposes to limit the potential exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to water quality impacts by restricting the timing, extent, and frequency of major sediment-disturbing events. For example, DWR proposes to limit the extent of dredging impacts in CCF by restricting daily operations to two dredges operating for 10-hour periods (daylight hours) within 200-acre cells enclosed by silt curtains (representing approximately 10% of the total surface area of CCF). In addition, dredging will be monitored and regulated through the implementation of AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material Plan* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*), which includes preparation of a SAP, compliance with NPDES and SWRCB water quality requirements during dredging activities, and compliance with applicable in-water work windows established by CDFW, NMFS, and USFWS.

Some potential exists for construction-related turbidity and suspended sediment to occur during winter and spring due to increased erosion and mobilization of sediment in runoff from disturbed levee surfaces. However, with the timing restrictions on in-water activities and implementation of erosion and sediment control take minimization measures, no adverse water quality effects are anticipated during this period.

4.4.2.5.2.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of in-water construction activities to July 1–November 30 avoids the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. Based on the location and timing of in-water activities relative to the principal timing and migration routes of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta, the potential for exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to construction-related increases in turbidity and suspended sediment will be limited to yearling smolts in November. This includes Sacramento River spring-run Chinook salmon, which can be enter the central and south Delta via the DCC (when open), Georgiana Slough, Three Mile Slough, and the lower San Joaquin River at its junction with the Sacramento River. Their presence in the south Delta and CCF depends on Sacramento flows, Delta inflows, CVP and SWP pumping rates, and operation of the DCC.

4.4.2.5.2.2 Assess Species Response

As described in Section 4.4.2.2.2.2 *Assess Species Response*, turbidity and suspended levels generated by in-water construction activities in CCF and the adjacent Old River channel are not expected to reach levels that would cause direct injury to spring-run Chinook salmon. With implementation of the take minimization measures, in-water construction activities will result in temporary, localized increases in turbidity and suspended sediment that dissipate rapidly with distance from the source and return to baseline levels following cessation of activities. The direct effects on spring-run Chinook salmon will likely be limited to behavioral effects in individuals that encounter turbidity plumes. Juveniles, if holding or rearing in the affected areas, may respond by avoiding or moving away from affected areas, disrupting normal activities and possibly increasing their exposure to predators. Such disruptions are expected to be brief and unlikely to adversely affect the growth of individual salmonids. However, there could be minor losses due to increased predation mortality.

Increases in suspended sediment during in-water construction activities may result in localized sediment deposition in CCF and Old River, potentially degrading food-producing areas by burying benthic substrates that support important food organisms (benthic invertebrates) for juvenile salmonids. However, CCF and the adjacent south Delta channels have been highly altered for the purpose of water conveyance and lack many of the attributes of preferred migration and rearing habitat. The potential effects of sedimentation on food production will likely have little effect on juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon growth or survival due to the low quality of existing habitat and implementation of the proposed measures to limit construction effects on turbidity, sedimentation, and other water quality hazards.

4.4.2.5.2.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Based on the expected responses of salmonids to construction-related increases on turbidity and suspended sediment, any disruptions of the normal behavior are expected to be brief and unlikely to cause adverse effects. With the implementation of the take minimization measures, the potential for turbidity to result in incidental take of either adult or juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon is extremely small.

4.4.2.5.3 Contaminants

Dredging, excavation, and expansion of the CCF and construction of new water conveyance facilities presents an exposure risk to spring-run Chinook salmon from potential spills of hazardous materials from construction equipment and from potential re-suspension of contaminated sediment. The risk of accidental spills of contaminants and other potentially hazardous materials will be similar to that described for the NDDs (see Section 4.4.2.2.3 *Contaminants*) due to the proximity of construction activities to the waters of the CCF and neighboring waterways. Implementation of AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan*, and AMM14 *Hazardous Materials Management* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*) will minimize the potential for introduction of contaminants into surface waters and guide rapid and effective response in the case of inadvertent spills of hazardous materials. With implementation of these and other required construction BMPs (e.g., AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan*), the risk of contaminant spills or discharges to Delta waters from in-water or upland sources will be minimized.

Contaminants may also enter the aquatic environment through disturbance, resuspension, or discharge of contaminated soil and sediments from construction sites. As described in Section 4.4.2.2.3 *Contaminants*, sediments act as a sink or source of contaminant exposure, and resuspension of contaminated sediments may have adverse effects on fish through direct exposure to contaminants from mobilized sediments or indirect exposure through accumulation of contaminants in the food web. Consequently, dredging, excavation, and expansion of CCF poses a short-term to long-term risk of exposure of fish and other aquatic organisms to elevated concentrations of contaminants. Current estimates indicate the dredging will affect up to 1,932 acres of CCF while expansion of the SCCF will create an additional 590 acres of newly exposed sediment. In view of the proximity of the south Delta waterways to agricultural, industrial, and municipal sources, it is conceivable that a broad range of contaminants that are toxic to fish and other aquatic biota, including metals, hydrocarbons, pesticides, and ammonia, could be present. Mud and silt in south Delta waterways have been shown to contain elevated concentrations of contaminants, including mercury, pesticides (chlorpyrifos, diazinon, DDT), and other toxic substances (California State Water Resources Control Board 2010). Impairments in Delta waterways have also been found to include heavy metals such as selenium, cadmium, and nickel (G. Fred Lee & Associates 2004). Thus, resuspension of sediments during in-water construction could lead to degradation of water quality and adverse effects on fish or their food resources in the project area.

The potential for introduction of contaminants from disturbed sediments will be addressed through the implementation of specific measures addressing containment, handling, storage, and disposal of contaminated sediments, as described under AMM6 *Disposal of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material* in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*. These measures include the preparation and implementation of a pre-construction sampling and analysis plan (SAP) to characterize contaminants and determine appropriate BMPs to minimize or avoid mobilization of contaminated sediments during in-water construction activities. Because potential mobilization of contaminants is closely linked to sediment disturbance and associated increases in turbidity and suspended sediment, turbidity monitoring and control measures (e.g., silt curtains) to achieve compliance with existing Basin Plan objectives (Central Valley Water Board 1998) will be important measures for limiting dispersal of contaminated sediments during dredging and other in-water construction activities.

4.4.2.5.3.1 Assess Species Exposure

The potential for contaminant spills will continue throughout the construction period with the highest risk occurring during in-water construction activities. Based on the general timing and distribution of spring-run Chinook salmon in the south Delta, the potential for direct exposure to contaminants will exist for yearling smolts in November.

4.4.2.5.3.2 Assess Species Response

As described in 4.4.2.2.3.4 *Assess Species Response*, the discharge of contaminants into the aquatic environment can cause direct or indirect effects on fish, up to and including mortality, depending on the type, concentrations, and fate of contaminants.

4.4.2.5.3.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Implementation of AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan*, AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan*, and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management*, will minimize the potential for spills or discharges of contaminants into CCF and Old River. Adherence to all preventative, response, and disposal measures in the approved plans is expected to largely eliminate the risk of mortality in spring-run Chinook salmon. No information is available on potential contaminant risks associated with disturbance and exposure of sediments resulting from pile driving and barge operations. However, this risk will be minimized by developing and implementing a SAP to characterize contaminants and determine appropriate BMPs to minimize or avoid mobilization of contaminated sediments during in-water construction activities. Some exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to sediment-borne contaminants or elevated contaminants in food organisms may be unavoidable because of the potential dispersal of contaminants during construction and continued disturbance and exposure of sediments during maintenance dredging and natural sediment transport processes.

4.4.2.5.4 Underwater Noise

During construction of the CCF water conveyance facilities, activities that are likely to generate underwater noise include in-water pile driving, riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations. Pile driving conducted in or near open water poses the greatest risk to fish because the levels of underwater noise produced by impulsive sounds (typically, impact pile driving) often reach levels of sufficient intensity to injure or kill fish within a certain radius of the source piles (Popper and Hastings 2009). Other activities such as riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations generally produce more continuous, lower energy sounds below the thresholds associated with direct injury but may cause avoidance behavior or temporary hearing loss or physiological stress if avoidance is not possible or exposure is prolonged (Popper and Hastings 2009).

Pile driving conducted in or near open water can produce underwater noise of sufficient intensity to injure or kill fish within a certain radius of the source piles. Pile driving information for CCF includes pile placement for the embankments, divider wall, siphon at NCCF outlet, and siphon at Byron Highway (Appendix 3.E *Pile Driving Assumptions for the Proposed Project*). Pile driving operations include the installation of an estimated 10,294 temporary sheet piles to construct the cofferdams for the embankments and divider wall, and 2,160 14-inch diameter concrete or steel pipe piles to construct the siphon at the NCCF outlet. Pile driving for the siphon under Byron Highway is not addressed in the following analysis because all pile driving would be conducted on land and more than 200 feet from water potentially containing spring-run Chinook salmon. A total of 4 construction seasons will be needed to complete pile driving operations based on the estimated duration of pile installation (Appendix 3.D *Construction Schedule for the Proposed Project*).

DWR proposes to minimize the potential exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to pile driving noise by conducting all in-water construction activities between July 1 and November 30. In addition, DWR will develop and implement an underwater sound control and abatement plan outlining specific measures that will be implemented to avoid and minimize the effects of underwater construction noise on listed fish species (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM9 *Underwater Sound Control and Abatement Plan*). These measures include the use of vibratory and other non-impact driving methods as well as other physical and operational measures to limit the intensity and duration of underwater noise levels when listed fish species may be present. Where impact pile driving is required, hydroacoustic monitoring will be performed to determine compliance with established objectives (e.g., distances to cumulative noise thresholds) and identify corrective actions to be taken should the thresholds be exceeded[22]. These measures may include additional physical or operational measures to further limit the magnitude and/or duration of underwater noise levels.

---

[22] See Permit Resolution Log item #33 for further information on this point.

4.4.2.5.4.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of driving activities to July 1–November 30 avoids the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. Based on the general timing and distribution of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta, the potential for exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to pile driving noise will be limited to yearling smolts in November. This includes Sacramento River spring-run Chinook salmon, which can be enter the central and south Delta via the DCC (when open), Georgiana Slough, Three Mile Slough, and the lower San Joaquin River at its junction with the Sacramento River. Their presence in the south Delta and CCF depends on Sacramento flows, Delta inflows, CVP and SWP pumping rates, and operation of the DCC.

4.4.2.5.4.2 Assess Species Response

As described for the NDDs (see Section 4.4.2.2.4.2 *Assess Species Response*), the potential responses of fish to pile driving noise can range from behavioral effects to direct injury or mortality, depending on a number of biological, physical, and exposure variables. Sound exposure criteria currently in use by state and federal resource and transportation agencies in California, Oregon, and Washington to evaluate the potential for injury to pile driving activities are presented in Table 4.4-1. The peak SPL is considered the maximum sound pressure level a fish can receive from a single strike without injury. The cumulative SEL is considered the total amount of acoustic energy that a fish can receive from a single or multiple strikes without injury. Pile driving and other sources of construction noise could also cause behavioral responses that could disrupt or delay normal activities, potentially leading to adverse effects on survival, growth, and reproductive success. Insufficient data are currently available to support the establishment of a noise threshold for behavioral effects (Popper et al. 2006); however, it is generally assumed that 150 dB RMS is an appropriate threshold for behavioral effects. Underwater noise generated by other in-water construction activities (e.g., dredging) is not expected to result in direct injury to fish but may temporarily alter behavior of fish within a certain distance from the source.

Table 4.4-5**Error! Reference source not found.** presents the extent, timing, and duration of pile driving noise levels predicted to exceed the interim injury and behavioral thresholds during installation of cofferdam sheet piles for the embankments and divider wall, and the structural piles for the NCCF siphon based on application of the NMFS spreadsheet model and the assumptions presented in Appendix 3.E Pile Driving Assumptions for the Proposed Project. For cofferdam sheet piles, it is assumed that approximately 70% of the length of each pile can be driven using vibratory pile driving, with impact driving used to finalize pile placement. For the NFFC siphon piles, the current design assumes the use of impact pile driving only. However, some degree of attenuation is expected assuming that the cofferdams can be fully dewatered. Therefore, predictions are shown for two scenarios, one in which dewatering results in a 5 dB reduction in reference noise levels, and one in which no attenuation is possible.

Table 4.4-5. Extent, Timing, and Duration of Pile Driving Noise Levels Predicted to Exceed the Interim Injury and Behavioral Thresholds at CCF.

Facility	Distance to 206 dB SPL Injury Threshold (feet)	Distance to Cumulative 187 dB and 183 dB SEL Injury Threshold or Effective Quiet (150 dB SEL) [1, 2] (feet)	Distance to 150 dB RMS Behavioral Threshold[2] (feet)	Number and Timing of Construction Seasons	Timing of Pile Driving	Duration of Pile Driving (days)
Clifton Court Forebay						
Embankment Cofferdams	30	2,814	13,058	1 (Year 5)	Jul–Nov	85
Divider Wall	30	2,814	13,058	1 (Year 4)	Jul–Nov	86
NCCF Siphon (no attenuation)	46	1,774	9,607	2 (Years 2-3)	Jul–Nov	72
NCCF Siphon (with attenuation)	20	823	4,458	2 (Years 2-3)	Jul–Nov	72

[1] Computed distances to injury thresholds are governed by the distance to "effective quiet" (150 dB SEL) rather than 187 dB and 183 dB cumulative SEL thresholds. Computation assumes that cumulative exposure to single strike SELs <150 dB does not cause injury. Accordingly, once the distance to the cumulative injury threshold exceeds the distance to effective quiet, increasing the number of strikes does not increase the presumed injury distance.

[2] Distance to injury and behavioral thresholds assume an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance and an unimpeded propagation path; on-land pile driving, vibratory driving or other non-impact driving methods, dewatering of cofferdams, and the presence of major river bends or other channel features can impede sound propagation and limit the extent of underwater sounds exceeding the injury and behavioral thresholds.

Sound monitoring data collected during similar types of pile driving operations indicate that single-strike peak SPLs exceeding the interim injury thresholds will be limited to areas within 30 feet of the cofferdam sheet piles and 20-46 feet of the NCCF siphon piles (Table 4.4-4). Based on a cumulative (daily) threshold of 187 dB, the risk of injury is calculated to extend 2,814 feet away from the source piles during installation of cofferdam sheet piles and 1,774 feet during installation of the NCCF siphon piles (823 feet if the cofferdams can be dewatered).[23] Based on a threshold of 150 dB RMS, the potential for behavioral effects is calculated to extend 13,058 and 9,607 feet (4,458 if the cofferdams can be dewatered), respectively. Such exposures would occur over a period of up to 72 days (36 days per season) during installation of the NCCF siphon piles (second and third years of construction activities at CCF), 86 days during cofferdam construction for the divider wall (year 4), and 85 days during cofferdam construction for the embankments (year 5).

4.4.2.5.4.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Peak SPLs exceeding the injury criteria would be limited to a distance of 30 feet from the cofferdam sheet piles, affecting a very small fraction of CCF during sheet pile installation. During installation of the NCCF siphon piles, peak SPLs exceeding the injury criteria would extend 20-46 feet from the source piles, affecting approximately 7-15% of the width (300 feet) of the channel entrance available for fish to pass from CCF to the SFPF (assuming half-width

---

[23] In this case, the distance to the injury thresholds are governed by the distance to "effective quiet" (150 dB SEL) rather than the 187 dB and 183 dB cumulative SEL thresholds.

construction of the NCCF siphon). Thus, salmonids will continue to have access to large areas of CCF and sufficient area to pass the construction sites and avoid exposure to potentially harmful noise levels. However, areas subject to cumulative levels of pile driving noise exceeding the cumulative SEL thresholds are predicted to extend up to 2,814 feet away from the source piles during installation of the cofferdam sheet piles, affecting from 25-50% of CCF, and up to 1,774 feet away from the source piles during installation of the siphon piles, affecting 15-20% of CCF and the entire width of the channel entrance leading to the SCCF. Assuming a 5 dB reduction in noise levels can be achieved through dewatering of the cofferdams at the NCCF siphon, the distances to the cumulative SEL thresholds can be approximately halved but noise levels would remain above the cumulative injury thresholds in all waters at the SCCF entrance channel and surrounding waters up to 823 feet away. Pile driving noise exceeding the 150 dB RMS will encompass much or all of CCF during installation of the cofferdam sheet piles and siphon piles (up to 9,607-13,058 feet), and thus could affect the behavior of all fish that are present or entrained into CCF during pile driving operations.

Thus, the potential exists for noise-related injury and mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon that become entrained into CCF during active pile driving operations. In general, potentially harmful levels of underwater noise would occur for up to 36 days per year during construction of the NCCF siphon, and 86 days per year during installation of the embankment and divider wall cofferdams, although the risk to spring-run Chinook salmon will be limited to November when yearling smolts may be present in the Delta. The risk of injury or mortality is particularly high in CCF because of limited opportunities to avoid pile driving noise and the presence of other stressors that may compound or contribute to poor survival in CCF, especially for juvenile salmonids that are subject to high pre-screen mortality rates in CCF (Gingras 1997, Clark et al. 2009). To minimize this risk, DWR will develop and implement an underwater sound control and abatement plan outlining specific measures that will be implemented to avoid and minimize the effects of underwater construction noise on listed fish species (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*, AMM9 *Underwater Sound Control and Abatement Plan*). These measures include the use of vibratory and other non-impact driving methods as well as other physical and operational measures to limit the intensity and duration of underwater noise levels when listed fish species may be present. Where impact pile driving is required, hydroacoustic monitoring will be performed to determine compliance with established objectives (e.g., distances to cumulative noise thresholds) and identify corrective actions to be taken should the thresholds be exceeded[24]. These measures may include additional physical or operational measures to further limit the magnitude and/or duration of underwater noise levels.

4.4.2.5.5 Fish Stranding

Installation of cofferdams or silt curtains to isolate construction and dredging areas in CCF and the adjacent Old River channel has the potential to strand fish, resulting in direct injury and mortality of fish that become trapped inside the cofferdams or silt curtains. To minimize potential fish stranding losses, DWR proposes to implement AMM8 *Fish Rescue and Salvage Plan* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*). This plan will be submitted to the fish and wildlife agencies (NMFS, USFWS, CDFW) for review and approval

---

[24] See Permit Resolution Log item #33 for further information on this point.

prior to implementation. The plan will identify appropriate procedures for excluding fish from the construction zones, where feasible, and procedures for collecting, holding, handling, and release for all in-water activities with the potential to entrap fish. All fish rescue and salvage operations will be conducted under the guidance of a qualified fish biologist. The biologist, in consultation with a designated agency biologist, will determine the appropriate fish collection and relocation methods based on site-specific conditions and construction methods.

4.4.2.5.5.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of cofferdam and silt curtain installation to July 1–November 30 avoids the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. Based on the general timing and distribution of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta, the potential for exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to pile driving noise will be limited to yearling smolts in November. This includes Sacramento River spring-run Chinook salmon, which can be enter the central and south Delta via the DCC (when open), Georgiana Slough, Three Mile Slough, and the lower San Joaquin River at its junction with the Sacramento River. Their presence in the south Delta and CCF depends on Sacramento flows, Delta inflows, CVP and SWP pumping rates, and operation of the DCC.

4.4.2.5.5.2 Assess Species Response

If stranded within cofferdams, juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon would likely be killed by subsequent dewatering and construction within the enclosed structures. The fate of fish that may become stranded within the 200-acre cells surrounded by silt curtains in CCF is less certain but confinement and prolonged exposure (months) to elevated turbidity, suspended sediment, and noise inside the silt curtains is likely to result in incidental take of stranded juveniles.

4.4.2.5.5.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon will be at risk of being stranded within cofferdams or silt curtains that are installed in November. Fish rescue and salvage activities using accepted fish collection methods will minimize these losses but some injury or mortality could still occur because of varying degrees of effectiveness of the collection methods and potential stress and injury associated with various capture and handling methods. It will be impractical or infeasible to rescue fish from large, deep areas surrounded by silt curtains in CCF. However, it may be possible to exclude spring-run Chinook salmon and other species from active dredging areas in CCF by deploying silt curtains in a manner that directs fish away from the silt curtains and prevents fish from re-entering these areas during dredging operations. Fish rescue operations at NCCF prior to dewatering will require special considerations given its large surface area, depth, and large numbers of fish that may be present.

4.4.2.5.6 Direct Physical Injury

Fish could be injured or killed by direct contact with equipment or materials during in-water construction activities in CCF and the adjacent Old River channel. Potential mechanisms include fish being crushed by rock (riprap), impinged by sheetpiles, entrained by dredges, or struck by propellers. In addition to the proposed in-water work period, DWR proposes to implement the following take minimization measures (described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*) to minimize the potential for impacts on listed fish species: AMM2 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM3 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and*

Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material; AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan;* AMM8 *Underwater Sound Control and Abatement Plan; and* AMM9 *Fish Rescue and Salvage Plan.*

4.4.2.5.6.1 Assess Species Exposure

Restriction of in-water construction activities to July 1–November 30 avoids the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. Based on the general timing and distribution of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta, the potential for injury will be limited to yearling smolts in November. This includes Sacramento River spring-run Chinook salmon, which can be enter the central and south Delta via the DCC (when open), Georgiana Slough, Three Mile Slough, and the lower San Joaquin River at its junction with the Sacramento River. Their presence in the south Delta and CCF depends on Sacramento flows, Delta inflows, CVP and SWP pumping rates, and operation of the DCC.

4.4.2.5.6.2 Assess Species Response

Spring-run Chinook salmon that may be present in the project area in November will be large, migrating yearlings that are capable of readily avoiding or moving away from active construction areas, minimizing their risk of being injured.

4.4.2.5.6.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

There is a low risk of injury or mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon based on the timing of in-water work and ability of juveniles to avoid active construction areas.

4.4.2.5.7 Loss/Alteration of Habitat

Dredging, excavation, and expansion of CCF and construction of the new water conveyance facilities will result in temporary and permanent losses or alteration of aquatic habitat in CCF and adjacent Old River channel. Temporary effects of construction activities on water quality, including turbidity and suspended sediment, underwater noise, and contaminants, were previously discussed. The following analysis focuses on longer-term to permanent impacts on physical habitat associated with construction activities. Dredging, cofferdam installation, levee armoring, and barge operations would affect an estimated 1,932 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat through changes in water depths, vegetation, and substrate within CCF and Old River. Permanent impacts on aquatic habitat encompass an estimated 258 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat in CCF that would be replaced by permanent fill and structures associated with the new CCPP, perimeter and divider embankments, outlet canals and siphons, and intake structure and spillway.

During construction activities, DWR will implement AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*), to protect listed fish, wildlife, and plant species, their habitat, and other sensitive natural communities. These BMPs include a number of measures to limit the extent of disturbance of aquatic and riparian habitat during construction, and, following construction, to restore temporarily disturbed areas to pre-construction conditions. All construction and site restoration BMPs will be subject to an approved construction and post-construction monitoring plan to ensure their effectiveness. Compensation for unavoidable impacts on aquatic habitat in CCF is not proposed because CCF is not considered suitable habitat for spring-run Chinook salmon.

4.4.2.5.7.1 Assess Species Exposure

All migrating or rearing salmonids that occur in CCF and the adjacent Old River channel during expansion of the CCF and construction of the new water conveyance facilities will be potentially exposed to physical alteration of aquatic and channel margin habitat due to changes in water depths, hydraulic conditions, vegetation, substrate, and shoreline structure. All spring-run Chinook salmon that occur in CCF and the adjacent Old River channel during construction activities will be potentially exposed to these changes throughout the construction period.

4.4.2.5.7.2 Assess Species Response

Similar to that described for the HOR gate (see Section 4.4.2.4.7.7 *Assess Species Response*), spring-run Chinook salmon that become entrained into CCF may be adversely affected by changes in hydraulic conditions and losses of shallow water habitat, instream cover, and benthic food resources within the dredged areas and permanent footprints of the water conveyance facilities.

4.4.2.5.7.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Expansion of CCF and construction of the new water conveyance facilities is expected to reduce the quality of passage and rearing conditions for juvenile salmonids due to habitat loss and increases in predator habitat associated with alteration of hydraulic conditions and losses of shallow water habitat, instream cover, and benthic food resources within the dredged areas and permanent footprints of the water conveyance facilities. Under existing conditions, salmonid migration and rearing habitat in CCF and the adjacent south Delta channels has been degraded by alteration of natural flow patterns, high predator densities, levee clearing and armoring, channel dredging, entrainment, and lost connectivity of migration corridors. Because spring-run Chinook salmon that are entrained into CCF generally suffer high mortality rates (pre-screen losses) (Gingras 1997, Clark et al. 2009), CCF is not considered suitable habitat for spring-run Chinook salmon. Consequently, the projected changes in physical habitat associated with expansion of CCF and construction of the new water conveyance facilities are not expected to significantly affect the survival of individual spring-run Chinook salmon that become entrained into CCF.

4.4.3 Effects of Water Facility Maintenance

Water facility maintenance is not proposed for coverage under this Application (Section 3.1.6 *Take Authorization Requested*), and the following information is provided for context.

4.4.3.1 North Delta Intakes

Maintenance of the proposed intake facilities (including intakes, pumping plants, sedimentation basins, and solids lagoons) includes regular visual inspections and adjustments of the facilities to maintain compliance with engineering and performance standards, and periodic repairs to prevent mechanical, structural, and electrical failures. Emergency maintenance is also anticipated. It is anticipated that major equipment repairs and overhauls would be conducted at a centralized maintenance shop at one of the intake facilities or at the intermediate pumping plant site.

Maintenance activities that could affect listed fish species and aquatic habitat include suction dredging or mechanical excavation of accumulated sediment around the intake structures; periodic removal of debris and biofouling organisms (e.g., algae, clams, mussels) from the log boom, fish screen panels, cleaning system, and other structural and mechanical elements exposed to the river; and levee maintenance activities, including repairs (e.g., RSP replacement) and vegetation control on the waterside levee slope. It is anticipated that in-river dredging will be required every 2–3 years on average. A formal dredging plan describing specific maintenance dredging activities will be developed prior to dredging activities. Guidelines related to dredging activities and disposal and reuse of spoils, including compliance with in-water work windows and turbidity standards, are described in AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*). The replacement of RSP may necessitate access and work either from the levee crest (e.g., using an excavator) or from the water (e.g., using a barge and crane).

During maintenance activities, in-water dredging and riprap replacement pose the highest risk to spring-run Chinook salmon and other listed fish species because of the potential for injury or mortality of fish. As described in Section 4.4.2.2 *North Delta Diversions*, restriction of dredging, riprap replacement, and other in-water maintenance activities to the an in-water work window to be approved by CDFW, NMFS, and USFWS will minimize exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to turbidity and suspended sediment, noise, and other construction-related hazards (e.g., direct physical injury)[25]. Based on the general timing of spring-run Chinook salmon in the project area, potential exposure to these activities will be limited to a small proportion of the adults and juveniles that may be migrating through the project area in June and July.

As described in Section 4.4.2.2 *North Delta Diversion*, dredging, riprap replacement, and barge operations could result in harassment of adult and juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon from increases in turbidity, suspended sediment, and noise; injury or mortality of juveniles from direct contact with active dredges, vessels (e.g., propeller strikes), or materials (e.g., riprap); and adverse effects on rearing habitat from loss or degradation of benthic habitat and associated food resources. The likelihood of exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon is expected to be low based on the location and timing of maintenance activities relative to the primary migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the project area; the low quality of rearing habitat at the proposed intake locations; and the localized, temporary nature of maintenance activities. Potential adverse effects on spring-run Chinook salmon and aquatic habitat will be further minimized by implementing the following take minimization measures (described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*) to limit the extent and duration of potential impacts on aquatic habitat: AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring;* AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan;* AMM3 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM4 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan;* and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management*.

---

[25] See Permit Resolution Log items #45 and #47 for further information on this point.

4.4.3.2 Barge Landings

Maintenance activities at the barge landings will likely include periodic visual inspections, routine maintenance, and perhaps repairs of the docking, loading, and unloading facilities. Maintenance activities also include replacement of riprap to repair eroded or damaged portions of the waterside levee slope and crown. Vegetation control measures would be performed as part of levee maintenance. Where in-water work is required, maintenance activities will be restricted to an in-water work window to be approved by CDFW, NMFS, and USFWS, likely timed from August to October to avoid the adult migration period and the primary juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. Potential adverse effects on winter-run Chinook salmon and aquatic habitat will be further minimized by implementing the following take minimization measures (described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*) to limit the extent and duration of potential impacts on aquatic habitat: AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring;* AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan;* AMM3 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM4 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan;* and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management*[26].

4.4.3.3 Head of Old River Gate

Maintenance of the Head of Old River (HOR) gate, including fishway, boat lock, and navigation structures, will include regular visual inspections and adjustments of the facilities to maintain compliance with engineering and performance standards, and periodic repairs to prevent mechanical, structural, and electrical failures. Routine maintenance includes regular servicing and repair of motors, compressors, and control systems, and periodic repairs to the mechanical and structural elements of the gate, fishway, and boat lock. Maintenance activities include periodic dredging to remove accumulated sediment from around the gate structure, dewatering of the gate facilities for inspection and maintenance, and replacement of riprap to repair eroded or damaged portions of the waterside levee slope. Vegetation control measures would be performed as part of levee maintenance.

Maintenance dredging may be necessary every 3 to 5 years to remove sediment that may potentially interfere with navigation, fish passage, and gate operations. Dredging would be conducted with a sealed clamshell dredge operated from a barge or from the top of the levee. A floating turbidity control curtain would be used to limit the dispersion of suspended sediment during dredging operations. A formal dredging plan describing specific maintenance dredging activities will be developed prior to dredging activities. Guidelines related to dredging activities and disposal and reuse of spoils, including compliance with in-water work windows and turbidity standards, are described in AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*).

Each gate bay will be inspected annually at the end of the wet season for sediment accumulation. Each miter or radial gate bay will include stop log guides and pockets for stop log posts to

---

[26] See Permit Resolution Log item #46 for a statement that barge landings would not need maintenance dredging.

facilitate the dewatering of individual bays for inspection and maintenance. Major maintenance could require a temporary cofferdam upstream and downstream for dewatering. When spring-run Chinook salmon may be present during dewatering operations, DWR proposes to minimize potential stranding losses by implementing AMM8 *Fish Rescue and Salvage Plan* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*).

Maintenance activities that have the greatest potential to affect spring-run Chinook salmon at the HOR gate are dredging, pile driving, and cofferdam installation. As described in Section 4.4.2.4 *Head of Old River Gate*, restriction of in-water activities to an in-water work window to be approved by CDFW, NMFS, and USFWS (likely in the range from August to October or November) will avoid the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. However, this period overlaps with the potential occurrence of San Joaquin River (SJR)-basin spring-run Chinook salmon (yearling smolts) that may be present in November, assuming juveniles exhibit similar emigration patterns to Sacramento River spring-run populations. Juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon originating from the Sacramento River may enter the lower San Joaquin River in November but are unlikely to occur as far upstream as the HOR gate based on the general effects of flow, DCC gate operations, and export pumping on route selection in the Delta.

As described in Section 4.4.2.4 *Head of Old River Gate*, dredging, cofferdam installation, and riprap placement could result in harassment of spring-run Chinook salmon from increases in turbidity, suspended sediment, and noise; direct injury or mortality from stranding, entrainment, or direct contact with equipment or materials during cofferdam installation, dredging, barge operations, and riprap placement; and adverse effects on rearing and migration habitat from loss or degradation of benthic habitat and potential increases in predator habitat. However, the likelihood of adverse effects of spring-run Chinook salmon from these sources is low based on the short duration of exposure of migrating adults and juveniles; the low quality of rearing habitat in Old River; and the localized, temporary nature of maintenance activities.

DWR proposes to minimize potential effects on spring-run Chinook salmon by preparing and implementing a formal dredging plan describing specific maintenance dredging activities, including compliance with in-water work windows and turbidity standards, as described in AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*). If cofferdam installation is required, DWR proposes to minimize potential stranding losses by implementing a fish rescue and salvage plan (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures,* AMM8 *Fish Rescue and Salvage Plan*). Potential adverse effects on listed species and aquatic habitat will be further minimized by implementing a number of construction and maintenance AMMs to limit the extent and duration of potential impacts on aquatic habitat: AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring;* AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan;* AMM3 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM4 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan;* and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*).

4.4.3.4 Clifton Court Forebay

Maintenance of CCF and the water conveyance facilities will include regular visual inspections and adjustments of the facilities to maintain compliance with engineering and performance standards, and periodic repairs to prevent mechanical, structural, and electrical failures. Emergency maintenance is also anticipated. Maintenance requirements potentially affecting listed fish species and aquatic habitat in CCF and Old River include dredging or mechanical excavation of accumulated sediment around the pumping, intake, and outlet facilities, and embankment maintenance activities, including repairs (e.g., RSP replacement) and vegetation control on the divider and perimeter embankments. With upstream sediment removal at the north Delta sedimentation facilities and expansion of storage capacity at CCF, the need for additional dredging of NCCF and SCCF over the first 50 years following construction is expected to be minimal. (The aquatic weed control program is analyzed in Section 4.4.4.1, *Proposed Delta Exports and Related Hydrodynamics*).

As described in Section 4.4.2.5 *Clifton Court Forebay*, restriction of maintenance dredging, embankment repairs, and other in-water activities would be restricted to an proposed in-water work window to be approved by CDFW, NMFS, and USFWS (likely during the period from July to November), thereby avoiding the primary adult migration period and juvenile migration and rearing periods of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. Based on the general timing and distribution of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta, the potential for exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to turbidity and suspended sediment, noise, and other construction-related hazards (e.g., direct physical injury) will be limited to yearling smolts in November.

As described in Section 4.4.2.5 *Clifton Court Forebay*, dredging, levee repairs, and other in-water activities could result in harassment of listed fish species from increases in turbidity, suspended sediment, and noise; direct injury or mortality from stranding, entrainment, or direct contact with equipment or materials during cofferdam installation, dredging, barge operations, and riprap placement; and adverse effects on rearing and migration habitat from loss or degradation of benthic habitat and potential increases in predator habitat. However, the likelihood of effects on spring-run Chinook salmon from these sources is low due to the location and timing of these activities relative to the primary migration routes of adults and juveniles in the Delta; the low quality of habitat in CCF; and the localized, temporary nature of maintenance activities. Potential adverse effects on spring-run Chinook salmon will be further minimized by implementing a number of take minimization measures (described in Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*) to limit the extent and duration of potential impacts on listed fish species and aquatic habitat: AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring;* AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan;* AMM3 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM4 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan;* and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management*.

4.4.4 Effects of Water Facility Operations

4.4.4.1 Proposed Delta Exports and Related Hydrodynamics

The assessment of the effects of water facility operations in the Delta on spring-run Chinook salmon is divided into two main sections. Section 4.4.4.1.2 *Assess Species Exposure* examines the general temporal and spatial occurrence of the species in the Delta, before specifically examining the potential for exposure to the different elements of the PP. Section 4.4.4.1.3 *Assess Species Response to the Proposed Project* examines how the different elements of the PP could affect fish, e.g., through entrainment or changes in river flow.

4.4.4.1.1 Assess Species Exposure

The following account of species exposure to the effects of proposed Delta exports and related hydrodynamics is adapted from the account by NMFS (2009).

4.4.4.1.1.1 Temporal Occurrence

Adult spring-run Chinook salmon enter the San Francisco Bay Estuary from the ocean in January to late February (Table 4.4-6**Error! Reference source not found.**). They move through the Delta prior to entering the Sacramento River system. Based on the available information for fish from the Sacramento River basin, spring-run Chinook salmon show two distinct juvenile emigration patterns in the Central Valley. Fish may either emigrate to the Delta and ocean during their first year of life as YOY, typically in the following spring after hatching, or hold over in their natal streams and emigrate the following fall as yearlings. Typically, yearlings enter the Delta as early as November and December and continue to enter the Delta through at least March. They are larger and less numerous than the YOY smolts that enter the Delta from January through June. The peak of YOY spring-run Chinook salmon presence in the Delta is during the month of April, as indicated by the recoveries of spring-run Chinook salmon-size fish in the CVP and SWP salvage operations and the Chipps Island trawls. Frequently, it is difficult to distinguish the YOY spring-run Chinook salmon outmigration from that of the fall-run Chinook salmon due to the similarity in their spawning and emergence times. The overlap of these two runs makes for an extended pulse of Chinook salmon smolts through the Delta each spring, frequently lasting into June. This broad period of juvenile outmigration helps the species adapt to variable conditions in the ocean that can differentially affect individuals depending on when they enter the ocean (Johnson 2015). Therefore, the tail ends of the migratory periods of each species are important to species viability even though the abundance of the juveniles at the extreme ends of the migration periods is small. As a result, this effects analysis evaluates effects of the PP during the entire period of spring-run Chinook salmon occurrence in the Delta, including evaluating each month of the period of presence distinctly where possible and appropriate.

The temporal occurrence of SJR-basin spring-run Chinook salmon may ultimately be similar to the populations from the Sacramento River basin, although this will not be known until monitoring data are examined in the future. For the purposes of this effects analysis, the timing for the SJR-basin spring-run Chinook salmon (including the springtime running Chinook salmon from the tributaries, discussed below) is assumed to be similar to that of the Sacramento River basin populations.

Table 4.4-6. Temporal Distribution of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon within the Delta.

Life Stage	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Spawning, egg incubation, and alevins[1]								▨	■	■	▨	░
Fry and Juvenile rearing[2]	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	■	■
Juvenile emigration[3]	▨	░	▨	■	▨					■	■	■
Adult immigration[4]			▨	▨	■	■	▨	▨	░			
Adult holding[5]				▨	■	■	■	■	░			

	■	High	▨	Med	░	Low

Source: NMFS (2009: 335).
Note: KL = Knights Landing. FW = Fremont Weir. Shading denotes relative abundance; high (black), medium (gray), or low (stippled).

4.4.4.1.1.2 Spatial Occurrence

Currently, the only recognized populations of spring-run occur in the Sacramento River basin. Historical populations that occurred in the river basins to the south (*i.e.*, southern Sierra watersheds) have been extirpated, although reintroduction of spring-run to the San Joaquin River has begun (NMFS 2016a). As previously described in Section 4.5.2 *Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Spring-Run ESU* in Chapter 4, *Action Area and Environmental Baseline*, although there have been observations of springtime running Chinook salmon returning to the San Joaquin tributaries in recent years, there is insufficient information to determine the specific origin of these fish, and whether or not they are straying into the basin or returning to natal streams (NMFS 2016b: 8).

The main migration route for adult spring-run Chinook salmon from the Sacramento River basin is the Sacramento River channel through the Delta. Sacramento River basin adults may stray into the San Joaquin River side of the Delta due to the inflow of Sacramento River basin water through one of the interconnecting waterways branching off of the mainstem Sacramento River towards the San Joaquin River. Starting in February, the closure of the DCC radial gates minimizes the influence of this pathway, but flows in the channels of Georgiana and Three Mile Slough provide sufficient flows of water to the San Joaquin River to induce straying from “spurious” olfactory cues present in these waterways. San Joaquin River basin spring-run Chinook salmon presumably use the San Joaquin River as their main migration pathway through the Delta, both as juveniles and adults.

Juvenile Sacramento River basin spring-run Chinook salmon are present in waterways in the North Delta, Central Delta, South Delta, and the interconnecting waterways, including the main channels of the San Joaquin and Sacramento rivers and Three Mile Slough. NMFS (2009: 337) did not anticipate seeing any significant numbers of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon in the eastern Delta or the mainstem of the San Joaquin River upstream of Columbia and Turner cuts; this situation has presumably changed with the reintroduction of spring-run to the San Joaquin River, and the San Joaquin River basin spring-run Chinook salmon presumably occur in these areas.

4.4.4.1.1.3 Exposure to North Delta Exports

The potential for exposure of spring-run Chinook salmon to the NDD would be very similar in terms of timing to that described for the Delta Cross Channel by NMFS (2009: 402-403), as discussed in Section 4.3.4.1.2.6, *Exposure to Delta Cross Channel*. However, a greater proportion of Sacramento River basin fish would pass the NDD than the DCC because a portion of fish (~20–40%, based on Perry et al. [2010, 2012]) would be expected to enter Sutter/Steamboat Sloughs prior to reaching the DCC. Some fish will enter the Delta from the Yolo Bypass during Fremont Weir overtopping events and via passage through the notch of the modified Fremont Weir[27]. Roberts et al. (2013) utilized proportion of flow as a proxy to estimate percentage of fish that would emigrate through the Yolo Bypass[28]. They estimated that the percentage would range from a mean of ~8% in drier years to ~16% in wetter years for spring-run Chinook salmon (Table 4.4-7). Any fish entering the Delta from the Yolo Bypass would

---

[27] The notch modification would occur under the NAA and the PA.

[28] These findings were subsequently published in the peer-reviewed literature (Acierto et al. 2014).

avoid exposure to the NDD. No spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin would be expected to be exposed to the NDD, other than occasional straying adults for which the effects would be insignificant because of their large size and swimming ability.

Table 4.4-7. Annual Percentage of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juveniles Approaching Fremont Weir That Would Be Entrained Onto the Yolo Bypass Under Existing Conditions and with Notching of Fremont Weir

Water Year	Water-Year Type	Existing Conditions	With Notch
1997	W	13.2	21.1
1998	W	6.1	11.2
1999	W	1.1	13.7
2000	AN	8.0	18.4
2001	D	0.0	4.1
2002	D	0.1	7.6
2003	AN	0.7	14.0
2004	BN	0.5	10.6
2005	AN	0.0	11.5
2006	W	7.2	16.2
2007	D	0.0	8.7
2008	C	0.0	11.3
2009	D	0.0	6.5
2010	BN	0.5	12.3
2011	W	13.0	22.7
Average (1997–2011)		3.4	12.7
Wet and Above Normal Water Year Average		6.2	16.1
Dry and Critical Water Year Average		0.0	7.7

Source: Roberts et al. 2013.

4.4.4.1.1.4 Exposure to South Delta Exports

The potential for exposure to the effects of south Delta exports follows the basic timing outlined in the earlier species-specific discussions and additional information presented for the Delta Cross Channel in Section 4.4.4.1.1.6, *Exposure to Delta Cross Channel*. Hydrodynamic effects of the south Delta export facilities could occur for juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon emigrating from the Sacramento River basin and entering the interior Delta, principally at Georgiana Slough (the DCC generally would be closed during this period); the percentage of juveniles migrating down the main stem Sacramento River that use the Georgiana Slough migration pathway generally is around 10–30%[29] (Perry et al. 2010, 2012). Spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin would be expected to be exposed to the south Delta export facilities in greater frequency than spring-run from the Sacramento River basin because their migration pathways include the south Delta.

---

[29] As previously described, a portion of fish would enter the Yolo Bypass, thereby making exposure to south Delta export effects unlikely. The 10–30% estimate applies to fish entering the Delta on the main stem Sacramento River.

4.4.4.1.1.5 Exposure to Head of Old River Gate Operations

Spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin would be expected to be exposed to near-field effects of the HOR gate based on its geographic location. Operations of the gate would coincide with juveniles and adult occurrence in spring (with a lesser overlap possibly in fall for any emigrating yearlings). Far-field effects of the HOR gate in terms of flow routing down the San Joaquin River would also affect spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin basin, and could also affect spring-run Chinook salmon from the Sacramento River basin if occurring in the interior Delta.

4.4.4.1.1.6 Exposure to Delta Cross Channel

The proportion of juvenile Chinook salmon that enter the Delta from the Sacramento River is given in Table 6-34 of NMFS (2009: 402). Salvage and loss across months (http://www.usbr.gov/mp/cvo/fishrpt.html) represents fish presence in the South Delta. The closure of the DCC gates under the NMFS (2009) BiOp's Action 4.1 is described in Section 3.3.2.4 *Operational Criteria for the Delta Cross Channel Gates*, and would be expected to result in nearly all juvenile salmonids from the Sacramento River basin encountering the DCC when the gates are closed. The majority of adult spring-run Chinook salmon could encounter a mixture of open and closed gate configurations, depending on migration timing and gate operations.

4.4.4.1.1.7 Exposure to Suisun Marsh Facilities

4.4.4.1.1.7.1 Suisun Marsh Salinity Control Gates

Operation of the SMSCG from October through May coincides with the upstream migration of adult Central Valley spring-run Chinook salmon (Table 4.4-6). The late winter and spring downstream migration of Central Valley spring-run also overlaps with the operational period of the SMSCG. As adult Central Valley spring-run travel between the ocean and their natal Central Valley streams, Montezuma Slough provides an alternative route to their primary migration corridor through Suisun Bay. Fisheries sampling conducted by CDFW indicates many adult Central Valley spring-run migrate upstream through Montezuma Slough (Edwards *et al*. 1996, Tillman *et al*. 1996), but the proportion of the total run utilizing this route is unknown.

4.4.4.1.1.7.2 Roaring River Distribution System

As described previously for the SMSCG, some spring-run Chinook salmon (juveniles and adults) will occur in Montezuma Slough and therefore could be exposed to the RRDS, although the intake is screened.

4.4.4.1.1.7.3 Morrow Island Distribution System

NMFS (2009: 438) noted that Goodyear Slough is not a migratory corridor for spring-run Chinook salmon, which would be likely to limit the potential for exposure to the MIDS.

4.4.4.1.1.7.4 Goodyear Slough Outfall

NMFS (2009: 438) suggested that listed salmonids are not likely to encounter the Goodyear Slough structure because of its location.

4.4.4.1.1.8 Exposure to North Bay Aqueduct

Spring-run Chinook salmon may be present in the waterways adjacent to the Barker Slough Pumping Plant, however several years of monitoring have failed to consistently capture any salmonids during the winter Delta smelt surveys (1996 to 2004) in Lindsey Slough or Barker

Slough. Captures of Chinook salmon have usually occurred in the months of February and March and typically are only a single fish per net haul (http://www.delta.dfg.ca.goc/data/nba). Most Chinook salmon captured have come from Miner Slough, which is a direct distributary from the Sacramento River via Steamboat and Sutter Sloughs. Based on the geographic location of the Barker Slough Pumping Plant in the north Delta, it is unlikely that any spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin would be exposed to the facility.

4.4.4.1.1.9 Exposure to Other Facilities

4.4.4.1.1.9.1 Contra Costa Canal Rock Slough Intake

As described by NMFS (2009: 411), juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon are present in the South Delta in the vicinity of the CCWD diversions from January through June with peak occurrence from March through May.

4.4.4.1.1.9.2 Clifton Court Forebay Aquatic Weed Control Program

The application of aquatic herbicide to the waters of Clifton Court Forebay will occur during the summer months of July and August. The probability of exposing salmonids to the herbicide is very low due to the life history of Chinook salmon in the Central Valley’s Delta region. Migrations of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon primarily occur outside of the summer period in the Delta. Based on typical water temperatures in the vicinity of the salvage facilities during this period, the temperatures would be incompatible with Chinook salmon life history preferences, generally exceeding 70˚F by mid-June. Mechanical harvesting would occur on an as-needed basis and therefore spring-run Chinook salmon could be exposed to this action, if entrained into the Forebay.

4.4.4.1.2 Assess Species Response to the Proposed Project

The response of spring-run Chinook salmon to the PP and associated take is discussed in this section, with the potential effects divided into near-field and far-field effects. Near-field effects are those occurring close to an operations facility, e.g., predation at the NDD screens or the HOR gate. Far-field effects are those occurring over a broader area, e.g., lower through-Delta survival caused by less river flow downstream of the NDD.

4.4.4.1.2.1 Near-Field Effects

4.4.4.1.2.1.1 North Delta Exports

As described in Section 3.2.2.2 *Fish Screen Design*, the NDD will be provided with fish screens designed to minimize the risk that fish will be entrained into the intakes, or injured by impingement on the fish screens during operations[30]. The process of the fish screen design has been and will continue to be subject to extensive collaborative discussions with the fish agencies affecting both final design and initial operations of the screens, during which their operations will be “tuned” to minimize risks to fish. As described Chapter 6 *Monitoring Plan*, a number of studies will be conducted to monitor NDD fish screen performance and allow refinement to meet design criteria.

---

[30] Fish screens would be removed as necessary during maintenance, which could be accompanied by dewatering, for example (see Section 3.3.6.1.1, *Intake Dewatering*). Pumping would not occur in bays with fish screens removed, and therefore there would be no risk of entrainment during these times.

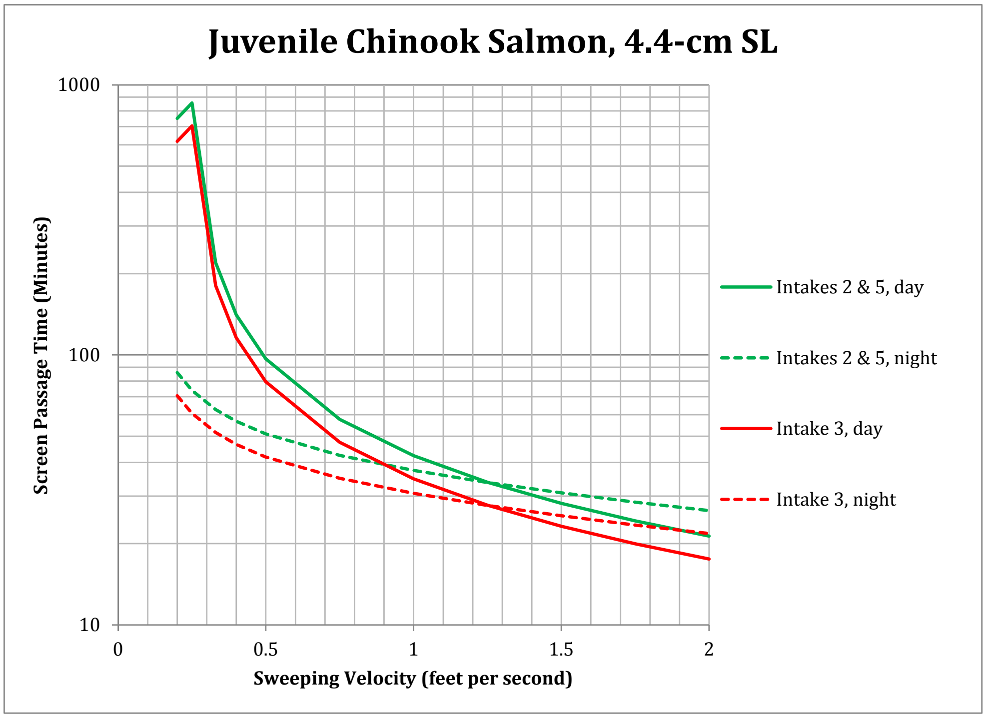
4.4.4.1.2.1.1.1 Entrainment

Juvenile Chinook salmon at sizes of 30 mm or greater may occur near the NDD structures (National Marine Fisheries Service 1997). Based on a conservative body fineness ratio of 10 (from Delta Smelt estimates by Young et al. 1997) and applying the equations of Young et al. (1997), the NDD's fish screens with a 1.75-mm opening would be estimated to be effective at excluding juvenile Chinook salmon of 22-mm standard length and greater (McEwan 2001). Therefore, little to no entrainment of salmonids is expected at the NDD. Note, however, that one juvenile Chinook salmon of 32-mm fork length—standard length would be slightly shorter—was collected during entrainment monitoring at the Freeport Regional Water Project intake in January 2012 (Kozlowski pers comm.), a facility with the same screen opening size as proposed for the NDD. This suggests occasional entrainment of very small Chinook salmon could occur at the NDDs.

4.4.4.1.2.1.1.2 Impingement, Screen Contact, and Screen Passage Time

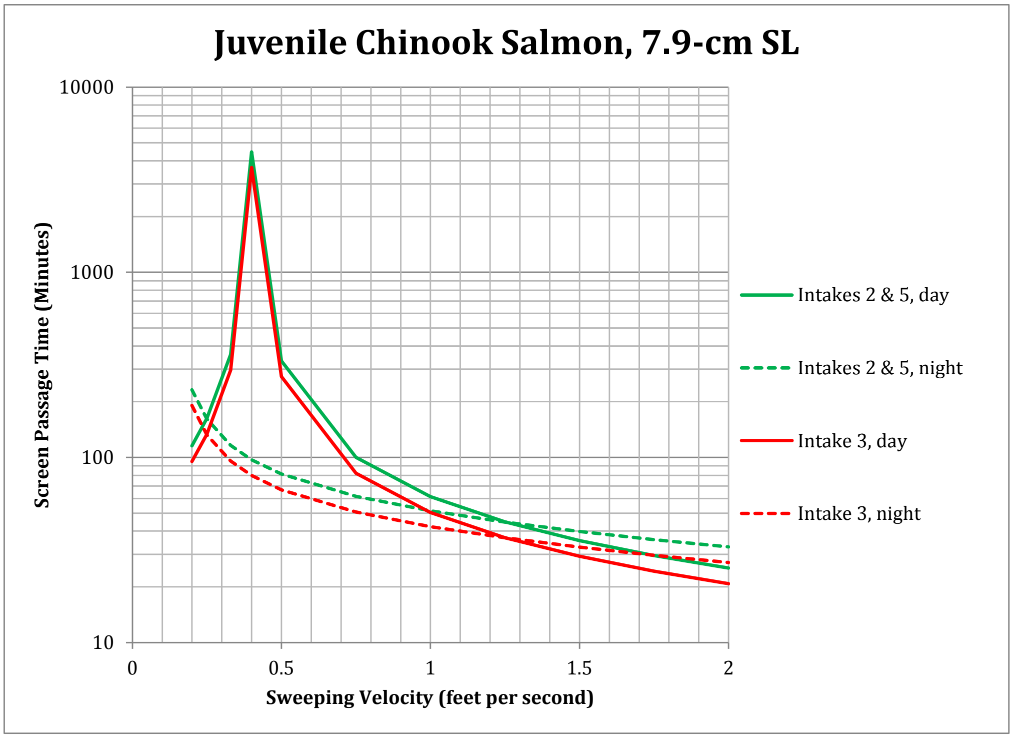
Juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon would have the potential to contact and be impinged on the screens of the NDD. Experimental studies at the UC Davis Fish Treadmill facility found that Chinook salmon experienced frequent contact with the simulated fish screen but were rarely impinged (defined as prolonged screen contacts >2.5 minutes) and impingement was not related to any of the experimental variables examined (Swanson et al. 2004a). The extent to which the experimental environment is representative of Sacramento River conditions is uncertain, but the proposed NDD intake screens would have a smooth screen surface and the potential for frequent screen cleaning (cycle time no more than 5 minutes), which will provide additional protection to minimize screen surface impingement of juvenile Chinook salmon. The smooth surface also will reduce the risk of abrasion and scale loss for any fish that comes into contact with the screens (Swanson et al. 2004a).

Although Swanson et al. (2004a) provide equations to estimate screen contact rate for juvenile Chinook salmon, preliminary calculations for this effects analysis suggested that these equations did not perform well for the lengths of screen proposed for the NDD. Additionally, the equations derived from this study, conducted in a two-foot wide channel, may not be wholly applicable to the effects of NDD, where fish will be in a much wider channel and may be able to move away from the screens or may not be in an area of the channel exposed to their effects. Screen passage time is another useful measure of potential effects on Chinook salmon, with shorter passage times being more desirable to limit the potential for adverse effects (e.g., predation or screen contact). Application of the relationships from Swanson et al. (2004a) for a representative winter water temperature of 12°C illustrated how screen passage time may differ in relation to sweeping velocity at an approach velocity of 0.2 ft/s (see methods description in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale,* Section 5.D.1.1.1.1, *Screen Passage Time* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D]) (Figure 4.4-1 and Figure 4.4-2). It should be noted that the equations of Swanson et al. (2004a) give very long screen passage times at certain sweeping velocity and approach velocity combinations, e.g., over 4,600 minutes for 7.9-cm fish along intakes 2 and 5 at sweeping velocity of 0.4 ft/s (Figure 4.4-2). Such estimates are far in excess of the duration of the experimental trials (120 minutes) used to derive the swimming data and therefore should be treated with caution. The peaks in the estimated screen passage times shown in Figure 4.4-1 and Figure 4.4-2 reflect the swimming response of the tested juvenile Chinook salmon and their general negative rheotaxis (swimming against the prevailing current). To the left of the peaks, swimming velocity was sufficient to give net upstream progress, so that in theory the fish would pass the screen in an upstream direction. To the right of the peaks, swimming velocity increases but does not keep up with the increase in sweeping velocity, resulting in fish passing the screen in a downstream direction. Very high estimated screen passage time at the peaks reflects fish that would be maintaining station in front of a screen for a long time. Larger fish have greater swimming ability, so their peak screen passage time is somewhat greater (Figure 4.4-2) than that of smaller fish (Figure 4.4-1). Swimming velocity is lower at night than during the day for a given set of flow conditions; this generally results in screen passage time decreasing as sweeping velocity increases over the full range of sweeping flows examined here, because screen passage velocity becomes more negative (i.e., fish move downstream more quickly). Longer screens increase screen passage time: for example, at a sweeping velocity of 0.4 ft/s during the night, a 7.9-cm juvenile would pass the screens of intakes 2 and 5 (each ~1,350 feet long) in ~97 minutes, compared to ~80 minutes for intake 3 (1,100 feet long) (Figure 4.4-1 and Figure 4.4-2). Juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon migrating downstream close to shore may encounter several of the proposed intakes within a few hours, depending on travel time. Because of the lack of an established relationship between passage time, screen contact rate and injury or mortality, it is not possible to conclude with high certainty what the effects of the NDD may be on juvenile Chinook salmon. This uncertainty would be addressed with monitoring and targeted studies examining impingement and passage time along the intakes. Swanson et al. (2004a) also found that at warmer temperatures (19°C), the larger fish had a greater tendency to move downstream with the current (negative rheotaxis), consistent with a behavioral shift to outmigration; this would result in considerably lower screen passage times.



Note: The total screen length for intakes 2 and 5 would be 1,350 feet each; intake 3's screen length would be 1,110 feet.

Figure 4.4-1. Estimated Screen Passage Time for Juvenile Chinook Salmon (4.4-cm Standard Length) Encountering Proposed NDD Fish Screens at Approach Velocity of 0.2 Feet per Second during the Day and Night



Note: The total screen length for intakes 2 and 5 would be 1,350 feet each; intake 3's screen length would be 1,110 feet.

Figure 4.4-2. Estimated Screen Passage Time for Juvenile Chinook Salmon (7.9-cm Standard Length) Encountering Proposed NDD Fish Screens at Approach Velocity of 0.2 Feet per Second during the Day and Night.

4.4.4.1.2.1.1.3 Predation

Predation of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon at the NDD could occur if predatory fish aggregated along the screens, as has been observed at other long screens in the Central Valley (Vogel 2008b). The only study of predation along a long fish screen occurred at the Glenn Colusa Irrigation District's (GCID) Sacramento River pump station (Vogel 2008b). In that study, mean survival of tagged juvenile Chinook salmon along the fish screens (total length just under 1,300 feet) in 2007—this being the only year of the study in which flow-control blocks at the weir at the downstream end of the fish screen were removed, to reduce predatory fish concentration—was ~95%. However, the percentage of tagged juvenile Chinook salmon released at the upstream end of the fish screen that were recaptured at a downstream sampling location was similar or slightly greater than the percentage of tagged juvenile Chinook salmon released at the downstream end of the fish screen, when standardized for the distance that the fish had to travel to the recapture site. These data suggest that survival along the screen was at least similar to survival in the portion of the channel without the screen (i.e., screen survival was similar to baseline survival, if the latter is assumed to be represented by the channel downstream of the screen). However, test juvenile Chinook salmon providing the estimate of survival in the channel downstream of the screen were released prior to those released at the upstream end of the fish screen, which could have confounded comparisons of relative survival between these groups if predatory fishes became partly satiated prior to the arrival of the fish released at the upstream end of the screen (thus making their survival relatively higher than otherwise would have occurred) (Vogel 2008b).

Although the GCID facility is closest in size to the proposed NDD and has received considerable study in terms of fish survival, the GCID facility and the proposed NDD screens are substantially different. The GCID facility is located along a relatively narrow oxbow channel (about 10 to 50 meters wide) in the middle Sacramento River near Hamilton City, while the NDDs would be located on the much wider channel of the mainstem lower Sacramento River (about 150 to 180 meters wide). In addition, the fish tested at GCID were relatively small (mean length generally less than 70 mm; Vogel 2008b) in comparison to the sizes of salmonid that would occur near the NDD (e.g., spring-run Chinook salmon mean length generally would be greater than 70 mm), which could give different susceptibility to predation. Under the PP, there would be three intakes constituting the NDD, compared to only one for the GCID facility, so that the cumulative length of screen would be considerably greater for the PP. Therefore, there is uncertainty to what extent the results from the GCID studies may represent the situation at the NDD.

Analysis of potential predation of juvenile Chinook salmon using a bioenergetics approach (Appendix 5.F *Biological Stressors on Covered Fish,* Section 5.F.3.2.1 in California Department of Water Resources [2013]) suggested that loss along the NDD[31] would be an order of magnitude lower than estimated at the GCID facility. These estimates are uncertain because of the various assumptions in the modeling and do not provide context for how such losses would compare to baseline losses without the NDD. Overall, there is potential for predation of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon along the NDD, which would constitute an adverse effect. Implementation of localized reduction of predatory fishes at the NDD as part of adaptive management could reduce the potential for predation, although this measure is uncertain in its effectiveness. Further discussion is provided in Section 4.3.5.2, *Localized Reduction of Predatory Fishes to Minimize Predator Density at North and South Delta Export Facilities*.

4.4.4.1.2.1.2 South Delta Exports

As described by NMFS (2009: 341-374), direct entrainment of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon includes a number of components contributing to loss. These include the following.

- SWP
    - Prescreen loss (from Clifton Court Forebay radial gates to primary louvers at the Skinner Fish Protection Facility): 75% loss
    - Louver efficiency: 25% loss
    - Collection, handling, trucking, and release: 2% loss
    - Post release: 10% loss
    - Total loss (combination of the above): 83.5%
    - CVP

---

[31] Although the screen lengths analyzed were different to those proposed under the PA, the order of magnitude of the results would remain the same if modeling specific to the PA was undertaken.

- Prescreen loss (in front of trash racks and primary louvers): 15% loss
- Louver efficiency: 53.2% loss
- Collection, handling, trucking, and release: 2% loss
- Post release: 10% loss
- Total loss (combination of the above): 35.1%

The present analysis provides quantitative analyses of entrainment differences between the no-action alternative[32] (NAA) and PP, and a qualitative discussion of potential predation differences between NAA and PP. The above loss percentages are assumed not to differ between NAA and PP (other than qualitative discussion of potential prescreen loss differences in Clifton Court Forebay), so the differences are attributable to differences in export pumping. Clifton Court Forebay's configuration will change under the PP with the division into north and south cells (Section 3.2.5.1.2 *Clifton Court Forebay*), so that the potential active storage (12,050 acre feet; see page 14-8 in Appendix 3.B, *Conceptual Engineering Report*, *Volume 1*) for the proposed South Clifton Court Forebay would be somewhat less than the active storage under existing conditions (~14,700 acre feet, based on the difference in storage between maximum and minimum normal water surface elevations; see page 4-2 in Appendix 3.B *Conceptual Engineering Report*, *Volume 1*). This could result in lower residence times for a given level of pumping at the Banks pumping plant under the PP compared to NAA, which may result in less prescreen loss under the PP for a given level of Banks pumping. Gingras (1997: 16-17) found a significant negative relationship between export rate and prescreen loss for marked juvenile Chinook salmon in Clifton Court Forebay and reasoned that this presumably reflected the inverse relationship between export rate and residence time in the Forebay. Recent hydrodynamic studies have confirmed the inverse relationship between export pumping and transit time for passive particles across the Forebay (MacWilliams and Gross 2013), although specific relationships for juvenile salmonids are lacking. Given the lack of specific relationships between residence time and prescreen loss for juvenile salmonids, for this effects analysis, it is assumed that there is no difference in prescreen loss between NAA and PP across Clifton Court Forebay attributable to Banks pumping and the reconfiguration of the Forebay under the PP.

Outside of Clifton Court Forebay, the other major difference in configuration of the SWP south Delta export facility under the PP will be the inclusion of a control structure in the Banks approach channel leading to the Skinner Fish Protective Facility. This control structure will consist of three channels, each with a radial gate[33]; all gates will either be fully closed (when

---

[32] Analyses presented herein were also used to assess potential impacts of the PP through the NEPA and CEQA compliance process, resulting in use of the term "no action alternative" to describe expected conditions at the time the PP conveyance facilities would otherwise become operational, if the facilities were not constructed. See ICF International (2016), Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results*, for a detailed explanation of this analytical approach.

[33] The drawings presented in Appendix 3.C *Conceptual Engineering Report, Volume 2* are incorrect in indicating a weir would be included in the control structure in the Banks approach channel. Such weirs would only be included in the water control structures in other parts of the new conveyance system, which would be in areas to which fish

export is occurring only from the NDD) or fully open (when export is occurring from only the south Delta export facilities or from both the NDD and south Delta). The change in configuration from a 250-foot-wide channel to a control structure with total width of around 170 feet consisting of three channels and dividing walls could alter the suitability of the approach channel habitat for predatory fishes. For example, if predatory fishes are able to exploit the hydrodynamics created by the concrete divisions between the channels, predation risk could increase under the PP. This risk cannot be quantified based on available information.

Following completion of PP construction and commencement of PP operations, studies will be undertaken as part of the Clifton Court Forebay Technical Team described in Section 3.2.5.1.3 *Clifton Court Forebay Technical Team* to estimate the extent to which the reconfigured Clifton Court Forebay and associated changes to the south Delta export facilities change the prescreen loss of juvenile salmonids (i.e., from the Clifton Court Forebay radial gates to the primary louvers at the Skinner Fish Protective Facility) relative to the assumptions currently made for estimating loss and take per the NMFS (2009) BiOp (or the prevailing assumptions at the commencement of PP operations). These studies will consist of releases of tagged (acoustic or PIT) or otherwise marked juvenile salmonids, followed by recapture or detection in order to estimate survival in different parts of the salvage process, as has been done in previous studies (e.g. Gingras 1997; Clark et al. 2009). The results of these experiments will inform the need to change the loss multipliers used to estimate loss and take as a function of expanded salvage. Should the experiments indicate statistically significant differences between the PP loss multipliers and the prevailing multipliers used prior to the commencement of PP operations, and following regulatory agency approval, the new PP multipliers will from then on be applied to subsequent loss estimates that are used to estimate the level of incidental take in relation to the levels of incidental take that have been authorized by NMFS and CDFW for the PP in each water year. South Delta export pumping will be managed in real time, as currently occurs, in order to ensure that losses of listed juvenile salmonids remain below the authorized incidental take, which will have been set to a level that limits the potential for jeopardy for the species.

Construction activities in Clifton Court Forebay could interact with operations to affect the survival of juvenile salmonids, for example, by increasing the potential for prescreen loss, given that there is some evidence that anthropogenic noise can affect predation rates of fishes (Simpson et al. 2016). However, the timing of in-water construction activities (July 1–November 30) would avoid the periods when juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon are most likely to be present in the south Delta. Thus, the interaction of operations with construction would be expected to affect only a limited portion of the juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon population, and any effect cannot be quantified because of the lack of specific information for how prescreen loss would differ as a result of construction noise, for example. It is also not possible to quantify the extent to which any equipment or structures left in the Forebay between in-water work periods (e.g., in winter/spring) would affect the prescreen loss of juvenile salmonids. It is possible that such equipment or structures could provide predator habitat and therefore increase predation risk.

---

would not have access (other than the fish not successfully salvaged at the Skinner/Tracy facilities or screened by the NDD) and therefore would not affect losses as part of the salvage process.

4.4.4.1.2.1.2.1 Entrainment

4.4.4.1.2.1.2.1.1 Salvage-Density Method: Spring-run Chinook Salmon

The salvage-density method was used to assess differences in south Delta exports and resulting entrainment[34] during the periods of occurrence of juvenile salmonids in the Delta, based on historical salvage data. Details of the method, together with results by month and water year, are presented in (Section 4.3.4.1.2.1.2.1.2 *Salvage Based on Zeug and Cavallo (2014): Winter-Run Chinook Salmon, and Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.1.2, *South Delta Exports*[35]). Note that although this method provides an index of entrainment loss, it is most appropriately viewed comparatively, and functions primarily to illustrate south Delta export differences between scenarios. The method does not account for differences in salvage and entrainment loss that could occur because of other operational effects, e.g., changes in juvenile salmonid routing because of the NDD or the HOR gate.

The results of the salvage-density method showed that, based on modeled south Delta exports, mean entrainment loss at the south Delta export facilities would be lower under PP than NAA in all water year types for spring-run Chinook salmon (Table 4.4-8**Error! Reference source not found.**). The differences between PP and NAA were greater in wetter water years, as a result of less south Delta export pumping facilitated by operation of the NDD. For spring-run Chinook salmon, the differences ranged from 11% less under PP at the CVP in critical years to 92% less under PP at the CVP in wet years (Table 4.4-8**Error! Reference source not found.**).

Table 4.4-8. Estimated Mean Entrainment Index (Number of Fish Lost, Based on Nonnormalized Salvage Data) of Juvenile Spring-Run Chinook Salmon for NAA and PP Scenarios at the CVP/SWP Salvage Facilities, By Water Year Type

Water Year Type	**State Water Project**				**Central Valley Project**		
	NAA	**PP**	**PP vs. NAA[1]**		**NAA**	**PP**	**PP vs. NAA[1]**
Wet	27,193	5,743	-21,449 (-79%)		13,600	1,125	-12,474 (-92%)
Above Normal	16,923	2,873	-14,049 (-83%)		5,176	1,035	-4,140 (-80%)
Below Normal	4,892	3,061	-1,831 (-37%)		853	642	-211 (-25%)
Dry	10,936	7,378	-3,557 (-33%)		2,271	1,655	-616 (-27%)
Critical	5,859	4,804	-1,055 (-18%)		1,991	1,777	-214 (-11%)

Notes: [1]Negative values indicate lower entrainment loss under the proposed project (PP) than under the no action alternative (NAA).

The salvage-density method analysis was applied to spring-run Chinook salmon without regard to the region of origin (i.e., Sacramento River vs. San Joaquin River basins) because this

---

[34] As noted in ICF International (2016, Appendix 5.D, *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale*, Section 5D.1.1.2, *South Delta Exports*), there is uncertainty regarding the population-level significance of south Delta entrainment losses for salmonids. Regardless of the significance of this loss, this effects analysis provides relative differences between the NAA and PP.

[35] See Permit Resolution Log item #118, #119, #120, #121, #122, #123, #134, #135, #136, and #137 for discussion of potential entrainment into the NCCF and subsequent expert through NCCF siphon outlet to pumping plants.

information is not known. It is not clear from these data to what extent the entrainment results could represent San Joaquin River basin spring-run Chinook salmon. San Joaquin River basin spring-run Chinook salmon may be more likely to enter the CVP export facility via the Delta Mendota Canal than enter Clifton Court Forebay because the CVP entrance is located on Old River upstream of the SWP intake at Clifton Court Forebay and therefore would be the first source of entrainment these fish would encounter, if migrating down Old River. Evidence for this hypothesis is provided by salvage data of coded-wire-tagged juvenile San Joaquin River spring-run Chinook salmon that were released in spring 2016 (Marcinkevage pers. comm.). A total of 165,000 spring-run juveniles were released on March 18 at Hills Ferry, with a total of 129 of these fish recorded in SWP and CVP salvage sampling between March 20 and April 6. Adjusting for the losses before salvage sampling (i.e., prescreen loss and louver efficiency; see 4.4.4.1.2.1.2 *South Delta Exports*) gives adjusted totals of 43 spring-run juveniles that otherwise would have been sampled at SWP and 304 spring-run juveniles that otherwise would have been sampled at CVP. During the period from March 20 to April 6, the total water exported was 56,341 acre feet by the SWP and 73,935 acre-feet by the CVP[36]. Thus, the salvage density of the released spring-run juveniles that were sampled, adjusted for losses, would be around 5.4 times greater for the CVP (0.00411 fish per acre-foot) compared to the SWP (0.00076 fish per acre-foot). Overall, this provides evidence that consideration of CVP exports is an appropriate indicator of the potential for entrainment differences between PP and NAA, as the density of San Joaquin River fish entrained at CVP is likely to be considerably greater than at SWP.

Results of differences in entrainment between the PP and NAA from the salvage density method are presented in Table 4.4-8 for each facility separately. Entrainment results for juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon based on the salvage-density method suggest that there would be less of a difference between PP and NAA at the CVP compared to the SWP in drier years (Table 4.4-8; although the differences were still appreciable), which may be somewhat indicative of results for spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin; however, these results do not account for the presence of the HOR gate, which would route away from the south Delta export facilities many juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon entering the Delta down the San Joaquin River.

4.4.4.1.2.1.2.2 Predation

Appreciable loss of juvenile salmonids occurs because of predation in association with the south Delta export facilities (Gingras 1997; Clark et al. 2009). Less entrainment of juvenile salmonids, as estimated in the preceding sections with the salvage-density method and salvage estimates based on Zeug and Cavallo (2014), would be expected to result in less entrainment-related predation loss. To the extent that localized reduction of predatory fishes (implemented as part of adaptive management) reduces predator abundance in Clifton Court Forebay, predation risk to juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon could be further reduced under the PP relative to the NAA. However, there is uncertainty in the efficacy of predatory fish reduction, given that previous

---

[36] http://www.dfg.ca.gov/delta/apps/salvage/, accessed July 3, 2016.

efforts did not yield measurable changes in predator population size within the Forebay (Brown et al. 1996); for the purpose of this effects analysis it is assumed not to be effective[37].

4.4.4.1.2.1.3 Head of Old River Gate

The proposed HOR gate would have the potential to considerably increase the proportion of San Joaquin River basin-origin juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon that remain in the main-stem San Joaquin River rather than entering Old River, as well as increasing their migration speed; these far-field effects of the HOR gate are discussed further in the analyses of channel velocity in Section 4.3.4.1.3.2.1.1, *Channel Velocity (DSM2-HYDRO)*, and flow routing into channel junctions in Section 4.3.4.1.3.2.1.3, *Flow Routing Into Channel Junctions*. This section focuses on potential near-field operational effects of the HOR gate, namely predation and blockage of upstream passage.

4.4.4.1.2.1.3.1 Predation

Studies of the rock barrier installed at the HOR in 2012 suggested the structure created eddies that could have resulted in enhanced predatory fish habitat and increased predation on juvenile salmonids (California Department of Water Resources 2015a); such effects could also occur to juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River as a result of HOR gate operations when the gate is closed. Such effects arose because the barrier was not located immediately adjacent to the San Joaquin River, but slightly downstream in Old River. Given that the HOR gate could be operated in intermediate positions between fully closed and fully open (lying flat on the channel bed), there would be potential for the creation of hydrodynamic conditions providing opportunities for predators to ambush passing (possibly disoriented) juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon. The extent to which any near-field predation at the HOR gate would offset the anticipated beneficial effects of a greater proportion of fish and flow remaining in the San Joaquin River is unclear, although the available data for fall-run juvenile Chinook salmon suggest that in general the presence of a barrier improves through-Delta survival (see review by Hankin et al. 2010 and comparison of 2012 [rock barrier] versus 2013 [no barrier] by Brandes and Buchanan 2016; however, see also comments by Anderson et al. [2012] with specific reference to the uncertainty in the effectiveness of the 2012 HOR rock barrier implementation in protecting out-migrating salmonid smolts).[38]

4.4.4.1.2.1.3.2 Upstream Passage

Adult spring-run Chinook salmon returning to natal tributaries in the San Joaquin River basin via Old River could experience migration delay when encountering the HOR gate during its October- June operational period. The HOR gate would include a fish passage structure meeting NMFS and USFWS guidelines in order to allow passage of upstream migrating salmonids, including steelhead and Chinook salmon. The existing fall rock barrier includes a 30-foot-wide notch at elevation 2.3 feet NAVD, which is intended to allow passage of upstream-migrating salmonids. NMFS (2013a: 89) considered that this notch would result in minimal delay to upstream migrating steelhead, and presumably the same conclusion is reasonable for spring-run

---

[37] See Permit Resolution Log items #103, #104, #105, #106, #107, #108, #109, #110, #111 for further information predation rates at the south Delta facilities.

[38] See Permit Resolution Log items #138 and #139 for discussion of passage and predation risks at the HOR Gate.

Chinook salmon. The fish passage structure for the PP's proposed gate also would be intended to minimize delay to upstream migrants, therefore minimizing the potential for take.[39]

4.4.4.1.2.1.4 Delta Cross Channel

The principal effect of the DCC would be to influence the proportion of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon entering the interior Delta, where survival is lower, during downstream migration from the Sacramento River basin. These effects are discussed further in Section 4.3.4.1.3.2.1.2, *Entry into Interior Delta,* in relation to far-field effects.

An additional potential effect of DCC operations is delayed migration of adult spring-run Chinook salmon migrating upstream to the Sacramento River basin. NMFS (2009: 406) noted that adults destined for the Sacramento River basin may be blocked or delayed by the DCC gates if they have entered the Mokelumne River system and are downstream of the DCC gates. During the main period of spring-run Chinook salmon upstream migration (winter/spring), there would be little to no difference in the number of days the gates would be open between NAA and PP (see Table 5.A.6-31 in *CalSim II Modeling and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.A]). The CalSim modeling showed that in September of ~20% of years, sufficient water was exported by the NDD that the 25,000-cfs threshold for closure of the DCC is not exceeded, whereas it is exceeded under the NAA in the same years and results in closure of the DCC more than under PP (see Table 5.A.6-31 in *CalSim II Modeling and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.A]). Additionally, in October-November, reservoir releases later in the year under the NAA triggered the 7,500-cfs Sacramento River at Wilkins Slough threshold assumed to coincide with juvenile salmon migration into the Delta, which resulted in a greater number of days with DCC closed under NAA. Last, the DCC may also have been open more under the PP to maintain water quality conditions per D-1641 (Rock Slough salinity standard). The differences between NAA and PP in the number of days open generally were not considerable, and adult spring-run Chinook salmon that are migrating to the Sacramento River basin have the ability to drop back and swim around the DCC gates (National Marine Fisheries Service 2009: 406).

The potential for delay of adult spring-run Chinook salmon entering the central Delta and moving up the Mokelumne River system may be dependent on the duration of DCC openings. Assessing the duration of DCC openings in each month for the NAA and PP and the potential effects on upstream-migrating adults is complicated by overlaps of closure periods across months (e.g., DCC opening in one month, followed by closure in the subsequent month). The month of November perhaps illustrates best how the duration of DCC opening could differ between NAA and PP. Openings commencing in November occurred at a similar frequency under NAA (n = 25 openings over the 82-year CalSim period) and PP (n = 22 openings). Openings tended to be longer under the PP (mean = 14.0 days, median = 8 days, mode = 20 days) than the NAA (mean = 8.6 days, median = 6 days, mode = 3 days) (Figure 4.4-3). NMFS (2009: 406) suggested that adult salmonids that are migrating to the Sacramento River basin have the ability to drop back and swim around the DCC gates during intermittent openings. A greater frequency of multi-day openings therefore could have some adverse effects on spring-run Chinook salmon attempting to reach the Sacramento River through the DCC, by decreasing the attraction flows from the Sacramento River and delaying migration if the DCC gates were subsequently closed. The

---

[39] See Permit Resolution Log items #138 and #139 for discussion of passage and predation risks at the HOR Gate.

proportion of spring-run adults that could be affected by this mechanism is unknown, with the only data from which to make inferences regarding the proportion of upstream-migrating adult salmonids that could take the DCC pathway via the central Delta/Mokelumne River being for fall-run Chinook salmon. Stein and Cuetara (2004) found that of 66 adult fall-run Chinook salmon acoustically tagged and released in Suisun Marsh, 47 of these fish left the Delta in the Sacramento River at Hood. Of these 47 fish, 10 (21%) traveled via the interior Delta, including the DCC, and movement out of the DCC was always when a strong positive flow into the DCC was occurring. During Stein and Cuetara's (2004) study (October-November 2003), the DCC was open 100% of the time. This indicates that some portion of upstream-migrating adult salmonids, including spring-run Chinook salmon, could be delayed by a greater frequency of multi-day opening and subsequent closure under the PP in some years. Further study would be required to ascertain the extent to which adult spring-run could find an alternative pathway through the Delta, or how long they may hold below the gates until they are reopened. However, it is unlikely that in November, migrating adult spring-run Chinook salmon will be affected by DCC closures.

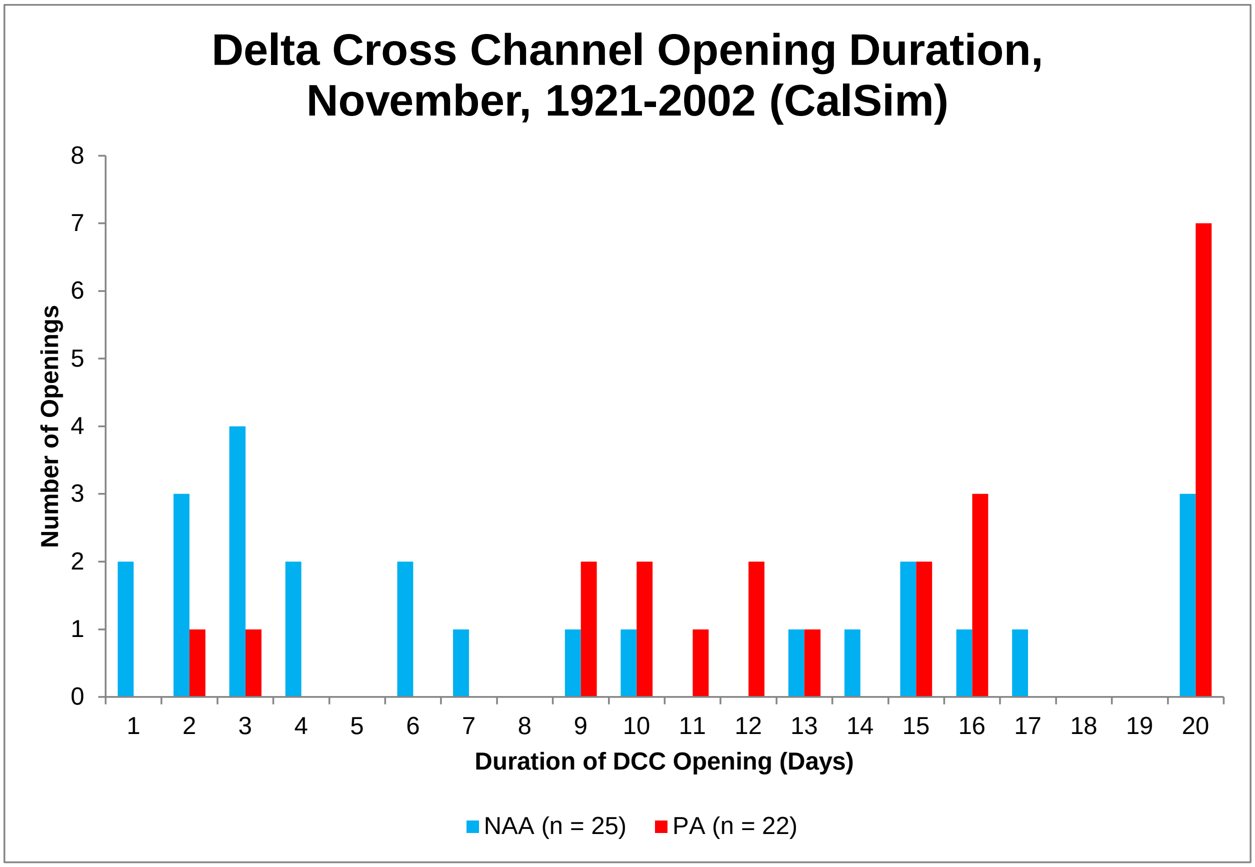


Figure 4.4-3. Duration of Delta Cross Channel Openings that Began in November, from CalSim Modeling of 1921-2002

4.4.4.1.2.1.5 Suisun Marsh Facilities

4.4.4.1.2.1.5.1 Suisun Marsh Salinity Control Gates

The principal potential effect of the Suisun Marsh Salinity Control Gates (SMSCG) being closed up to 20 days per year from October through May is delay of upstream-migrating adult spring-run Chinook salmon that have entered Montezuma Slough from its westward end and are seeking to exit the slough at its eastward end. Vincik (2013) found some evidence that opening of the boat lock improved passage rates of acoustically tagged adult Chinook salmon, and that even with the gates up, ~30–40% of fish returned downstream. Adult spring-run Chinook salmon that do not continue upstream past the SMSCG are expected to return downstream by backtracking through Montezuma Slough to Suisun Bay, and they likely find the alternative upstream route to their natal Central Valley streams through Suisun and Honker Bays (National Marine Fisheries Service 2009: 435). NMFS (2009: 436) noted that the effect of the SMSCG when closed are uncertain on adult salmonids, but suggested that if the ultimate destination of adult spring-run Chinook salmon in natal tributaries is reliant on access provided by short-duration, high-streamflow events, delay in the Delta could affect reproductive viability. Results of the DSM2 modeling indicate that the flow through the SMSCG would be very similar under NAA and PP (see Table 5.B.5-29 in *DSM2 Methods and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.B]), indicating that operation of the gates would be similar under NAA and PP.

As described by NMFS (2009: 436), downstream migrating juvenile salmonids may also be affected by the operation of the SMSCG, given the overlap of operations with the occurrence of these species. NMFS (2009: 436; citations omitted) noted:

> As juvenile salmon and steelhead emigrate downstream, some fish will pass through Montezuma Slough as they travel towards the ocean. If the SMSCG are in operation, the gates will open and close twice each day with the tides. On the ebb tide, the gates are open and fish will pass downstream into Montezuma Slough without restriction. On the flood tide, the gates are closed and freshwater flow and the passage of juvenile fish will be restricted. Most juvenile listed salmonids in the western Delta entering San Francisco Bay are expected to be actively emigrating smolts. Smolts are likely taking advantage of the ebb tide to pass downstream, and, thus, the operation of the SMSCG is not expected to significantly impede their downstream movement in the estuary.

In addition to the lack of impediments to passage, NMFS (2009: 437; citations omitted) noted the following with respect to near-field predation effects:

> Salmonid smolt predation by striped bass and pikeminnow could be exacerbated by operation of the SMSCG. These predatory fish are known to congregate in areas where prey species can be easily ambushed. Pikeminnow are not typically major predators of juvenile salmonids, but both pikeminnow and striped bass are opportunistic predators that will take advantage of localized, unnatural circumstances. The SMSCG provides an enhanced opportunity for predation because fish passage is blocked or restricted when the structure is operating.

> However, DWR proposes to limit the operation of the SMSCG to only periods required for compliance with salinity control standards, and this operational frequency is expected to be 10–20 days per year. Therefore, the SMSCG will not provide the stable environment which favors the establishment of a local predatory fish population and the facility is not expected to support conditions for an unusually large population of striped bass and pikeminnow.

Operational criteria for the SMSCG would not change under the PP relative to NAA, and, as previously shown, operations modeling suggested that there would be little difference between NAA and PP in terms of SMSCG opening. Therefore, the potential for adverse near-field effects on downstream-migrating juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon is minimal.

4.4.4.1.2.1.5.2 Roaring River Distribution System

As described by NMFS (2009: 437-438), the Roaring River Distribution System (RRDS)’s water intake (eight 60-inch-diameter culverts) is equipped with fish screens (3/32-inch opening, or 2.4 mm) operated to maintain screen approach velocity of 0.2 ft/s (for Delta Smelt protection), so that juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon are excluded from entrainment. Therefore there is minimal potential for any adverse effect from the RRDS.

4.4.4.1.2.1.5.3 Morrow Island Distribution System

NMFS (2009: 438) considered it unlikely that juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon are entrained by the three unscreened 48-inch culverts that form the Morrow Island Distribution System (MIDS) water intake, as a result of their larger size and better swimming ability relative to the size of fall-run Chinook salmon observed to have been entrained (<45 mm), and also because the location of the MIDS intake on Goodyear Slough is not on a migratory corridor for listed juvenile salmonids. Therefore there will be minimal potential for any adverse effect from the MIDS.

4.4.4.1.2.1.5.4 Goodyear Slough Outfall

NMFS (2009: 438) concluded that it is unlikely for spring-run Chinook salmon to encounter or be negatively affected by the Goodyear Slough outfall given its location and design, which is intended to improve water circulation in Suisun Marsh and therefore was felt by NMFS (2009: 438) to likely be of benefit to juvenile salmonids by improving water quality and increasing foraging opportunities.

4.4.4.1.2.1.6 North Bay Aqueduct

Pumping rates at the North Bay Aqueduct Barker Slough Intake generally would be similar under the NAA and PP (see Table 5.B.5-35 in *DSM2 Methods and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.B]). Regardless of differences in the rate of pumping and any resulting differences in exposure to the intake under NAA and PP, the basic conclusions from NMFS (2009: 417) apply:

> [The] screens, which were designed to protect juvenile salmonids per NMFS criteria, should prevent entrainment and greatly minimize any impingement of fish against the screen itself. Furthermore, the location of the pumping plant on Barker Slough is substantially removed from the expected migrational corridors

utilized by emigrating Chinook salmon and steelhead smolts in the North Delta system.

Therefore, there will be expected to be a minimal adverse effect from the North Bay Aqueduct intake on juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon from the Sacramento River basin.

4.4.4.1.2.1.7 Other Facilities

4.4.4.1.2.1.7.1 Contra Costa Canal Rock Slough Intake

The 1.75-mm-opening, 0.2 ft/s-approach-velocity fish screen installed at the Rock Slough intake is intended to prevent entrainment of listed fish, including juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon, into the Contra Costa Canal. However, the 4 mechanical rakes making up the screen cleaning system are unable to handle the large amount of aquatic vegetation that ends up on the fish screen (National Marine Fisheries Service 2015a: 2). This has resulted in a number of operational issues that have resulted in problems such as capture of adult salmon by rake heads (Seedall 2015) and operation of the fish screen only on ebb tides (National Marine Fisheries Service 2015b). This has led Reclamation to test alternative technology (a prototype rake) to improve vegetation removal, an action that NMFS (2015a: 4) concluded would improve fish protection (i.e., screen efficiency) by minimizing the chance a listed fish would be entrained or impinged on the fish screen. In addition, mechanical removal of aquatic weeds within Rock Slough in 2015 to facilitate testing of the new rake design was expected by NMFS (2015b: 4) to improve screen efficiency, reduce predation of juvenile salmonids by vegetation-associated predatory fishes, and reduce adult salmonid mortality during screen maintenance. As noted by NMFS (2015a: 4), Rock Slough is off the main migratory routes through the Delta for listed fish species, however, due to tidal action, salmon occasionally stray into Rock Slough. Modeled pumping suggested that diversions under the PP generally would be similar to NAA, with the exception of April and May, when diversions were modeled to be greater under the PP (see Table 5.B.5-36 in *DSM2 Methods and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.B]). The overall diversions for the Rock Slough intake and the other CCWD intakes on Old River and Middle River do not differ greatly between NAA and PP, suggesting that Rock Slough may have been favored in the modeling of PP for operational reasons, e.g., Old and Middle River flow criteria, for example. Greater use of the Rock Slough intake would increase the potential for adverse effects to juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon under the PP compared to NAA. However, resolution of the aforementioned issues regarding screen effectiveness would be expected to minimize the potential for any adverse effects.

4.4.4.1.2.1.7.2 Clifton Court Forebay Aquatic Weed Control Program

The application of copper-based herbicides in Clifton Court Forebay is intended to reduce the standing crop of invasive aquatic weeds, among which the dominant species is *Egeria densa*. As reviewed by NMFS (2009: 388-390), aquatic weed control with copper-based herbicides to treat *Egeria* and other aquatic weeds in Clifton Court Forebay has the potential to result in a variety of negative physiological effects on juvenile salmonids, ranging from sub-lethal effects such as diminished olfactory sensitivity (e.g., reduced ability to imprint on natal streams or to avoid chemical contaminants) to lethal effects. Spring-run Chinook salmon will be expected to be minimally exposed to such effects because their period of occurrence within Clifton Court Forebay is entirely or nearly entirely before the July/August timeframe for herbicide treatment.

Entrainment of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon into Clifton Court Forebay is expected to be less under the PP than NAA in July-August (see Tables 5.D-21, 5.D-22, 5.D-23, 5.D.24, and 5.D-25 in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D]), which will reduce the exposure of these species to any adverse effects of herbicide treatment compared to the situation under the NAA (although exposure would be expected to be minimal under both the NAA and PP scenarios).

Mechanical removal of aquatic weeds in Clifton Court Forebay would occur on an as needed basis and therefore could coincide with occurrence of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon. In assessing the potential for adverse effects of the 2013-2017 Water Hyacinth Control Program in the Delta, NMFS (2013b: 11) concluded that mechanical removal could have negative effects to spring-run Chinook salmon but that these would be discountable because of several factors, including that mechanical removal would be limited to dense water hyacinth mats where listed salmonids are not likely to be present. Presumably within Clifton Court Forebay there will be greater potential for juvenile salmonids to encounter mechanical removal of water hyacinth, given that hyacinth and fish may follow similar pathways across the Forebay toward the intake channel and the trash racks. However, any potential adverse effects from mechanical removal of water hyacinth or other aquatic weeds (e.g., injury from contact with cutting blades) will potentially be offset to some extent by the reduced probability of predation by weed-associated predatory fishes and increases in salvage efficiency at the Skinner Fish Delta Fish Protective Facility because of reduced smothering by weeds.

4.4.4.1.2.2 Far-Field Effects

4.4.4.1.2.2.1 Indirect Mortality Within the Delta

4.4.4.1.2.2.1.1 Channel Velocity (DSM2-HYDRO)

Delta channel flows have considerable importance for downstream migrating juvenile salmonids, as shown by studies in which through-Delta survival of Chinook salmon smolts positively correlated with flow (Newman 2003; Perry 2010) although one recent study by Zeug and Cavallo (2013) did not find evidence for effects of inflow on the probability of recovery of coded-wire-tagged Chinook salmon in ocean fisheries. Flow-related survival, in terms of the influence of downstream river (net) flow, may be more important in areas with largely unidirectional downstream flow and lesser tidal influence, as opposed to strong tidal influence, because tidal influence progressively becomes much greater with movement downstream. The Delta Passage Model, for example, does not include a net flow-survival relationship in the Sacramento River below Rio Vista, because such a relationship is not supported by existing data (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.2, *Delta Passage Model*). Further evidence of possible greater importance of flow in riverine reaches (as opposed to tidal reaches) comes from the recent study of Michel et al. (2015), who found that survival of acoustically tagged juvenile late fall-run Chinook salmon from the upper Sacramento River to the Golden Gate Bridge was greatest in 2011, the highest flow year, and that survival in the other years (2007–2010) was lower and did not differ greatly; the overall pattern was driven by in-river (upstream of Delta) survival being considerably greater in 2011 than the other years, whereas through-Delta survival was similar in all five years.

The PP has the potential to both adversely and beneficially change channel flows in the Delta, through changes in north and south Delta export patterns in relation to the NAA. Although north Delta exports would reduce Sacramento River flows downstream of the NDD, this would allow greater south and central Delta channel flows because of less south Delta exports.

As described in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.1.1.1, *Velocity*), velocity generally is a superior variable than flow for examining potential effects on fish because its effects do not vary with channel size and velocity has a direct relationship with bioenergetics. However, for the present analysis, the summary is based only on velocity, without linkage to biological outcomes such as sustained fish swimming speed, and represents a somewhat new methodology in terms of assessing potential differences, having only recently been applied in Reclamation/DWR's Biological Review for Endangered Species Act Compliance with the WY 2015 Drought Contingency Plan April through September Project Description[40]. In addition, the behavior of juvenile salmonids, particularly with respect to selective tidal-stream transport (Delaney et al. 2014) means that simple differences in velocity may not translate into biological outcomes between scenarios and therefore indicates that there is uncertainty as to the significance of the velocity-based results to spring-run Chinook salmon beyond general trends in differences. A comparison of hydrodynamic conditions in important Delta channels for the NAA and PP scenarios was undertaken based on 15-minute DSM2-HYDRO velocity outputs. Three velocity metrics were assessed: magnitude of channel velocity; magnitude of negative velocity; and proportion of time in each day that velocity was negative. Lower overall velocity, greater negative velocity, and a greater proportion of negative velocity are all indicators of potential adverse effects to juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon, e.g., by delaying migration or causing advection into migration pathways with lower survival. As previously noted, the lack of an explicit biological outcome in the modeling means that there is some uncertainty in the biological significance of the results; other analyses used herein to assess effects, such as the Delta Passage Model and the analysis based on Perry (2010), provide more explicit context as to biological significance because differences in flow are converted to potential differences in survival. Note that the summary of velocity differences between NAA and PP does not account for real-time operations that would be done in order to limit potential operational effects by assessing flow conditions in the context of fish presence, e.g., by using monitoring data from at or upstream of the Delta periphery (e.g., Knights Landing on the Sacramento River or Mossdale on the San Joaquin River).

A comprehensive description of the results is presented in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.1.2, *Results*). In this section, the detailed information presented with text and graphs in Appendix 5.D is summarized in color-coded tables, which highlight differences in medians of 5% or greater between PP and NAA. These differences are plotted and described across the full range of variability of the data in Appendix 5.D.

---

[40] Available at http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/drought/docs/tucp/2015/biorev2_aprsep.pdf

With respect to overall velocity, operational differences between NAA and PP led to differences in channel velocity. Within the south Delta and San Joaquin River, the changes will be positive for migrating juvenile salmonids, because channel velocity was generally greater under the PP (Table 4.4-9). In the San Joaquin River, this was caused by the closure of the HOR gate (assumed in the modeling to be open during days in October prior to the D-1641 San Joaquin River pulse, 100% closed during the pulse, 50% closed from January 1 to June 15, and 100% open during the remaining months), and median channel 21 velocity downstream of the HOR was around 10–50% greater (0.02–0.08 ft/s greater). In Old River downstream of the south Delta export facilities, the differences were related to less south Delta exports; however, in April and May it was also apparent that in drier years median velocity was less positive under PP than NAA. Although the PP criteria are consistent with the OMR flows and San Joaquin I/E ratio requirements in the current BiOps, and south Delta export pumping is almost always lower (*CalSim II Modeling and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.A], Figures 5.A.6-27-1 to 5.A.6-27-19 and Table 5.A.6-27), in April and May the assumption of the HOR gate being 50% closed, combined with differing modeling assumptions for south Delta exports[41], results in Old River channel velocity that was slightly lower under PP than NAA (although both had positive median velocity). Channel velocity in Old River upstream of the south Delta export facilities was less positive under the PP than NAA, reflecting less south Delta exports under the PP (i.e., the export facilities exert some hydrodynamic influence by increasing velocity toward them) and the HOR gate, which blocks flow from entering 50% of the time during January 1 to June 15.

In the north Delta, less flow in the Sacramento River downstream of the NDD (channel 418) under the PP led to lower median channel velocity under the PP relative to NAA (Table 4.4-9). Reflecting the fact that greater diversion would occur in wetter years, the difference in median velocity for channel 418 ranged from 10–24% less under PP in wet years to 4–11% less in critical years, which equated to absolute differences of 0.23–0.57 ft/s in wet years to 0.04–0.15 ft/s in critical years. Sacramento River channels farther downstream (421 and 423, upstream and downstream of Georgiana Slough) had similar patterns of difference, but with lower magnitude of change, reflecting greater tidal influence; this was also evident in Sutter Slough (channel 379) and Steamboat Slough (channel 383) Table 4.4-9), with the latter being farther downstream than the former.

Considering only negative velocity estimates, under the PP the median negative velocity in the San Joaquin River downstream of Old River was greater (closer to zero) than under NAA, with the relative difference decreasing as water years became drier (Table 4.4-10); there was little difference farther downstream near the confluence with the Mokelumne River, reflecting greater tidal influence. Negative velocity estimates in Old River downstream of the south Delta export facilities under the PP were either less than or similar to (defined as <5% difference in the medians) those under NAA, whereas in Old River upstream of the facilities, the negative velocities were greater (again reflecting less south Delta exports and the influence of the HOR

---

[41] To some extent the results reflect the fact that there were differences in the CalSim modeling between the San Luis rule curves assumed for the NAA and PA: the NAA was more conservative in terms of being well below criteria for April-May San Luis reservoir filling, whereas the PA assumed a different curve and was much closer to criteria in some instances. Additional discussion of the rule curve differences is provided in *CalSim II Modeling and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.A], Section 5.A.4.4.

gate, both of which would increase the influence of flood tides in this channel). In the north Delta, the estimates of negative velocity must be interpreted with caution because in many cases negative velocity occurred for only a very small proportion of time (particularly in the more upstream channels such as Sutter Slough and the Sacramento River downstream of the NDD and upstream of Georgiana Slough; see Table 4.4-11). For the situations where an appreciable proportion of velocity estimates were negative under both scenarios, (e.g., Steamboat Slough and the Sacramento River downstream of Georgiana Slough), median negative velocity under PP was similar to or more negative than median negative velocity under NAA. This is consistent with less Sacramento River flow because of the NDD, increasing the flood tide influence on velocity. The absolute differences in median negative velocity were not large, however; for example, in the Sacramento River downstream of Georgiana Slough, differences in the periods during which there was a greater proportion of negative velocity (typically drier years) generally were much less than 0.1 ft/s (Table 4.4-10).

The median daily proportion of negative velocity again illustrated the effect of the HOR gate in the San Joaquin River downstream of HOR, where the proportion under the PP generally was less than under NAA, although farther downstream near the confluence with the Mokelumne River the tidal influence resulted in little to no difference between PP and NAA (Table 4.4-11). The daily proportion of negative velocity in Old River downstream of the south Delta export facilities under PP was similar to or less than NAA, whereas upstream of the facilities, the greater tidal influence caused by the HOR gate and less south Delta exports led to a greater proportion of time with negative velocity. In the north Delta, as previously noted in the analysis of negative velocity, the farther upstream channels had little to no negative velocity much of the time (e.g., Sutter Slough and the Sacramento River downstream of the NDD) (Table 4.4-11). Of concern from the perspective of salmonids migrating down the Sacramento River was greater frequency of negative velocity in the Sacramento River downstream of Georgiana Slough under the PP relative to the NAA, with differences between medians ranging from little difference (<5%) in a number of water-year types/months to >110% more (0.09 in absolute difference) in March of below normal years.

Overall, the results of the analysis of channel velocity suggest the potential for adverse effects to migrating juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon migrating downstream through the north Delta from the Sacramento River basin caused by lower overall velocity, somewhat greater negative velocity, and a greater proportion of time with negative velocity, which may delay migration and result in greater repeated exposure to entry into migration routes with lower survival, particularly because of entry into Georgiana Slough (see also discussion of flow routing into channel junctions). Spring-run Chinook salmon emigrating from the San Joaquin River basin would potentially benefit from the HOR gate, which would increase overall velocity and reduce negative velocity in the San Joaquin River, as well as reducing the daily proportion of negative velocity; these effects would be greatest farther upstream. Salmonids from both the Sacramento and San Joaquin River basins generally would potentially benefit from interior Delta channel velocity (e.g., Old River downstream of the south Delta export facilities) that would be somewhat more positive and less frequently negative. As previously noted, the summary of Delta hydrodynamic conditions based on DSM2 does not account for the results of coordinated monitoring and research that will be done under the Collaborative Science and Adaptive Management Program, including real-time operations to limit potential operational effects and avoid jeopardy while maximizing water supplies, by assessing flow conditions in the context of fish presence, e.g., by using monitoring data from at or upstream of the Delta periphery (e.g., Knights Landing on the Sacramento River or Mossdale on the San Joaquin River).

This page intentionally left blank.

Table 4.4-9. Median 15-minute Velocity in Important Delta Channels, from DSM2-HYDRO Modeling, with Green Shading Indicating PP is ≥ 5% More than NAA and Red Shading Indicating PP is ≥ 5% Less than NAA.

DSM2 Channel	Location	Water Year Type	December			January			February			March			April			May			June		
			NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
21	San Joaquin River downstream of HOR	W	0.263	0.264	0.001 (0%)	0.378	0.433	0.054 (14%)	0.473	0.533	0.060 (13%)	0.482	0.548	0.066 (14%)	0.428	0.493	0.065 (15%)	0.407	0.462	0.055 (13%)	0.330	0.355	0.025 (8%)
		AN	0.182	0.185	0.003 (2%)	0.239	0.295	0.056 (23%)	0.308	0.371	0.064 (21%)	0.295	0.368	0.073 (25%)	0.271	0.351	0.081 (30%)	0.254	0.331	0.078 (31%)	0.152	0.196	0.045 (30%)
		BN	0.115	0.119	0.004 (4%)	0.131	0.202	0.071 (54%)	0.265	0.318	0.053 (20%)	0.169	0.251	0.082 (49%)	0.199	0.286	0.087 (44%)	0.166	0.245	0.079 (47%)	0.097	0.118	0.022 (22%)
		D	0.087	0.089	0.002 (3%)	0.112	0.171	0.059 (52%)	0.167	0.223	0.057 (34%)	0.172	0.228	0.056 (32%)	0.167	0.234	0.067 (40%)	0.155	0.217	0.061 (39%)	0.090	0.110	0.020 (22%)
		C	0.085	0.086	0.001 (1%)	0.087	0.128	0.041 (47%)	0.120	0.167	0.048 (40%)	0.104	0.142	0.038 (37%)	0.099	0.134	0.035 (35%)	0.092	0.128	0.035 (38%)	0.076	0.083	0.008 (11%)
45	San Joaquin River near the confluence with the Mokelumne River	W	0.240	0.251	0.011 (4%)	0.432	0.488	0.056 (13%)	0.471	0.554	0.083 (18%)	0.452	0.550	0.098 (22%)	0.439	0.474	0.034 (8%)	0.394	0.430	0.036 (9%)	0.232	0.293	0.061 (27%)
		AN	0.140	0.155	0.015 (11%)	0.269	0.300	0.031 (11%)	0.334	0.368	0.034 (10%)	0.293	0.385	0.092 (31%)	0.298	0.324	0.026 (9%)	0.247	0.270	0.022 (9%)	0.142	0.171	0.030 (21%)
		BN	0.061	0.081	0.020 (34%)	0.131	0.191	0.060 (45%)	0.237	0.260	0.023 (10%)	0.168	0.197	0.029 (17%)	0.213	0.222	0.009 (4%)	0.172	0.186	0.014 (8%)	0.130	0.139	0.008 (6%)
		D	0.068	0.076	0.008 (11%)	0.118	0.149	0.031 (27%)	0.184	0.198	0.013 (7%)	0.192	0.203	0.011 (6%)	0.195	0.208	0.014 (7%)	0.158	0.172	0.014 (9%)	0.134	0.143	0.010 (7%)
		C	0.085	0.087	0.002 (2%)	0.092	0.111	0.020 (21%)	0.148	0.150	0.002 (1%)	0.152	0.161	0.010 (6%)	0.144	0.148	0.004 (3%)	0.122	0.126	0.004 (3%)	0.124	0.124	0.000 (0%)
94	Old River downstream of the south Delta export facilities	W	-0.250	-0.175	0.075 (30%)	0.004	0.227	0.224 (5831%)	0.036	0.448	0.412 (1138%)	0.052	0.505	0.454 (877%)	0.350	0.486	0.136 (39%)	0.296	0.453	0.157 (53%)	-0.110	0.170	0.279 (255%)
		AN	-0.358	-0.272	0.087 (24%)	-0.121	0.008	0.129 (107%)	-0.062	0.087	0.149 (240%)	-0.146	0.265	0.411 (282%)	0.189	0.230	0.041 (22%)	0.164	0.197	0.032 (20%)	-0.181	-0.061	0.120 (66%)
		BN	-0.446	-0.363	0.083 (19%)	-0.200	0.003	0.203 (101%)	-0.108	-0.051	0.057 (53%)	-0.171	-0.100	0.071 (42%)	0.109	0.061	-0.048 (-44%)	0.088	0.061	-0.027 (-30%)	-0.131	-0.077	0.054 (41%)
		D	-0.368	-0.321	0.046 (13%)	-0.213	-0.134	0.079 (37%)	-0.133	-0.086	0.047 (35%)	-0.097	-0.074	0.024 (24%)	0.067	0.047	-0.020 (-30%)	0.039	0.043	0.004 (11%)	-0.112	-0.043	0.069 (61%)
		C	-0.266	-0.222	0.044 (16%)	-0.214	-0.190	0.023 (11%)	-0.107	-0.108	0.000 (0%)	-0.019	-0.016	0.003 (16%)	0.056	0.034	-0.022 (-39%)	0.045	0.029	-0.015 (-35%)	0.035	0.052	0.017 (48%)
212	Old River upstream of the south Delta export facilities	W	0.682	0.701	0.018 (3%)	0.946	0.867	-0.079 (-8%)	1.120	1.036	-0.084 (-8%)	1.199	1.075	-0.124 (-10%)	1.171	1.074	-0.097 (-8%)	1.161	1.069	-0.093 (-8%)	0.666	0.621	-0.045 (-7%)
		AN	0.574	0.558	-0.016 (-3%)	0.705	0.578	-0.127 (-18%)	0.794	0.689	-0.105 (-13%)	0.818	0.754	-0.064 (-8%)	0.814	0.640	-0.174 (-21%)	0.805	0.612	-0.193 (-24%)	0.301	0.159	-0.142 (-47%)
		BN	0.493	0.465	-0.028 (-6%)	0.503	0.362	-0.141 (-28%)	0.713	0.555	-0.158 (-22%)	0.583	0.350	-0.234 (-40%)	0.657	0.387	-0.269 (-41%)	0.589	0.327	-0.262 (-44%)	0.132	0.047	-0.085 (-64%)
		D	0.445	0.428	-0.017 (-4%)	0.452	0.287	-0.165 (-36%)	0.541	0.378	-0.162 (-30%)	0.575	0.387	-0.188 (-33%)	0.584	0.363	-0.221 (-38%)	0.546	0.346	-0.200 (-37%)	0.113	0.037	-0.076 (-67%)
		C	0.418	0.394	-0.024 (-6%)	0.393	0.248	-0.145 (-37%)	0.467	0.300	-0.167 (-36%)	0.410	0.251	-0.159 (-39%)	0.378	0.235	-0.143 (-38%)	0.359	0.200	-0.160 (-44%)	0.009	-0.011	-0.020 (-229%)
365	Delta Cross Channel	W	0.016	0.016	0.000 (0%)	0.013	0.013	0.000 (1%)	0.014	0.014	0.000 (0%)	0.015	0.015	0.000 (1%)	0.016	0.016	0.000 (2%)	0.016	0.016	0.000 (2%)	0.422	0.471	0.049 (12%)
		AN	0.025	0.027	0.001 (6%)	0.014	0.014	0.000 (1%)	0.015	0.015	0.000 (1%)	0.015	0.015	0.000 (2%)	0.014	0.014	0.000 (2%)	0.013	0.013	0.000 (2%)	0.662	0.576	-0.087 (-13%)
		BN	0.036	0.037	0.001 (3%)	0.011	0.012	0.001 (5%)	0.013	0.013	0.000 (1%)	0.012	0.012	0.000 (1%)	0.012	0.013	0.000 (1%)	0.011	0.011	0.000 (2%)	0.667	0.613	-0.053 (-8%)
		D	0.043	0.043	0.000 (-1%)	0.011	0.011	0.000 (2%)	0.012	0.012	0.000 (0%)	0.013	0.013	0.000 (0%)	0.012	0.012	0.000 (0%)	0.010	0.011	0.000 (2%)	0.675	0.609	-0.065 (-10%)
		C	0.040	0.039	-0.001 (-1%)	0.010	0.010	0.000 (1%)	0.011	0.011	0.000 (0%)	0.010	0.011	0.000 (2%)	0.010	0.010	0.000 (0%)	0.008	0.009	0.000 (2%)	0.535	0.518	-0.017 (-3%)

DSM2 Channel	Location	Water Year Type	December			January			February			March			April			May			June		
			NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
379	Sutter Slough	W	1.691	1.478	-0.214 (-13%)	2.573	2.270	-0.304 (-12%)	3.045	2.765	-0.280 (-9%)	2.536	2.208	-0.327 (-13%)	1.763	1.648	-0.116 (-7%)	1.687	1.543	-0.143 (-8%)	1.036	0.807	-0.229 (-22%)
		AN	1.101	1.012	-0.089 (-8%)	1.866	1.578	-0.288 (-15%)	2.564	2.305	-0.259 (-10%)	2.052	1.769	-0.283 (-14%)	1.345	1.270	-0.075 (-6%)	1.022	0.958	-0.065 (-6%)	0.799	0.656	-0.143 (-18%)
		BN	0.996	0.902	-0.094 (-9%)	1.079	1.015	-0.064 (-6%)	1.327	1.192	-0.134 (-10%)	1.146	0.992	-0.154 (-13%)	0.937	0.922	-0.015 (-2%)	0.856	0.832	-0.023 (-3%)	0.763	0.681	-0.082 (-11%)
		D	0.875	0.823	-0.052 (-6%)	1.008	0.939	-0.069 (-7%)	1.202	1.090	-0.112 (-9%)	1.236	1.052	-0.185 (-15%)	0.956	0.946	-0.010 (-1%)	0.821	0.799	-0.022 (-3%)	0.758	0.659	-0.099 (-13%)
		C	0.766	0.721	-0.046 (-6%)	0.932	0.892	-0.040 (-4%)	1.006	0.909	-0.097 (-10%)	0.846	0.805	-0.041 (-5%)	0.751	0.734	-0.017 (-2%)	0.649	0.607	-0.042 (-6%)	0.610	0.562	-0.048 (-8%)
383	Steamboat Slough	W	1.972	1.789	-0.183 (-9%)	2.932	2.617	-0.315 (-11%)	3.448	3.120	-0.328 (-10%)	2.868	2.495	-0.373 (-13%)	2.021	1.903	-0.118 (-6%)	1.888	1.742	-0.146 (-8%)	1.346	1.140	-0.206 (-15%)
		AN	1.394	1.313	-0.081 (-6%)	2.161	1.916	-0.245 (-11%)	2.937	2.632	-0.305 (-10%)	2.346	2.042	-0.304 (-13%)	1.581	1.538	-0.044 (-3%)	1.275	1.206	-0.070 (-5%)	1.026	0.930	-0.095 (-9%)
		BN	1.235	1.156	-0.079 (-6%)	1.362	1.276	-0.086 (-6%)	1.631	1.518	-0.113 (-7%)	1.397	1.239	-0.158 (-11%)	1.169	1.140	-0.030 (-3%)	1.089	1.062	-0.027 (-2%)	0.972	0.941	-0.031 (-3%)
		D	1.115	1.066	-0.049 (-4%)	1.272	1.196	-0.076 (-6%)	1.493	1.384	-0.109 (-7%)	1.483	1.307	-0.177 (-12%)	1.204	1.177	-0.027 (-2%)	1.032	1.012	-0.020 (-2%)	0.964	0.918	-0.046 (-5%)
		C	0.987	0.936	-0.051 (-5%)	1.175	1.121	-0.054 (-5%)	1.249	1.143	-0.106 (-8%)	1.083	1.019	-0.064 (-6%)	0.960	0.942	-0.018 (-2%)	0.816	0.808	-0.008 (-1%)	0.779	0.776	-0.003 (0%)
418	Sacramento River downstream of proposed NDD	W	2.224	1.901	-0.323 (-15%)	3.416	2.884	-0.532 (-16%)	4.052	3.484	-0.568 (-14%)	3.347	2.775	-0.571 (-17%)	2.305	2.070	-0.235 (-10%)	2.191	1.939	-0.252 (-12%)	1.524	1.162	-0.362 (-24%)
		AN	1.494	1.351	-0.143 (-10%)	2.473	2.019	-0.453 (-18%)	3.409	2.918	-0.491 (-14%)	2.700	2.240	-0.460 (-17%)	1.752	1.615	-0.137 (-8%)	1.343	1.225	-0.119 (-9%)	1.206	0.982	-0.224 (-19%)
		BN	1.365	1.219	-0.145 (-11%)	1.432	1.312	-0.120 (-8%)	1.744	1.538	-0.206 (-12%)	1.508	1.279	-0.229 (-15%)	1.240	1.186	-0.054 (-4%)	1.140	1.081	-0.060 (-5%)	1.157	1.017	-0.140 (-12%)
		D	1.222	1.131	-0.091 (-7%)	1.349	1.227	-0.122 (-9%)	1.594	1.411	-0.183 (-11%)	1.623	1.353	-0.269 (-17%)	1.265	1.218	-0.047 (-4%)	1.096	1.041	-0.055 (-5%)	1.149	0.992	-0.157 (-14%)
		C	1.081	0.993	-0.088 (-8%)	1.245	1.163	-0.082 (-7%)	1.333	1.182	-0.151 (-11%)	1.134	1.059	-0.075 (-7%)	1.019	0.977	-0.042 (-4%)	0.885	0.814	-0.071 (-8%)	0.928	0.826	-0.102 (-11%)
421	Sacramento River upstream of Georgiana Slough	W	1.858	1.672	-0.186 (-10%)	2.737	2.445	-0.292 (-11%)	3.191	2.903	-0.288 (-9%)	2.679	2.337	-0.342 (-13%)	1.897	1.773	-0.124 (-7%)	1.786	1.637	-0.149 (-8%)	1.407	1.115	-0.292 (-21%)
		AN	1.322	1.241	-0.081 (-6%)	2.031	1.773	-0.258 (-13%)	2.736	2.467	-0.269 (-10%)	2.210	1.921	-0.288 (-13%)	1.472	1.418	-0.055 (-4%)	1.154	1.074	-0.080 (-7%)	1.114	0.955	-0.159 (-14%)
		BN	1.194	1.113	-0.082 (-7%)	1.251	1.167	-0.084 (-7%)	1.501	1.374	-0.127 (-8%)	1.295	1.139	-0.156 (-12%)	1.076	1.053	-0.023 (-2%)	0.986	0.954	-0.032 (-3%)	1.067	0.980	-0.087 (-8%)
		D	1.087	1.040	-0.047 (-4%)	1.173	1.099	-0.073 (-6%)	1.372	1.263	-0.109 (-8%)	1.381	1.198	-0.183 (-13%)	1.103	1.084	-0.020 (-2%)	0.944	0.914	-0.030 (-3%)	1.058	0.955	-0.103 (-10%)
		C	0.956	0.902	-0.054 (-6%)	1.080	1.039	-0.041 (-4%)	1.147	1.053	-0.094 (-8%)	0.989	0.945	-0.045 (-5%)	0.885	0.867	-0.018 (-2%)	0.756	0.733	-0.024 (-3%)	0.852	0.814	-0.039 (-5%)
423	Sacramento River downstream of Georgiana Slough	W	1.713	1.578	-0.134 (-8%)	2.467	2.211	-0.256 (-10%)	2.857	2.593	-0.265 (-9%)	2.429	2.129	-0.300 (-12%)	1.755	1.670	-0.085 (-5%)	1.623	1.522	-0.102 (-6%)	1.147	0.975	-0.171 (-15%)
		AN	1.229	1.161	-0.067 (-5%)	1.857	1.680	-0.177 (-10%)	2.463	2.205	-0.259 (-11%)	2.015	1.764	-0.251 (-12%)	1.402	1.368	-0.034 (-2%)	1.127	1.072	-0.055 (-5%)	0.824	0.739	-0.086 (-10%)
		BN	1.063	0.993	-0.070 (-7%)	1.199	1.121	-0.077 (-6%)	1.458	1.359	-0.100 (-7%)	1.235	1.091	-0.144 (-12%)	1.020	0.998	-0.022 (-2%)	0.947	0.927	-0.020 (-2%)	0.767	0.743	-0.024 (-3%)
		D	0.949	0.903	-0.046 (-5%)	1.120	1.055	-0.065 (-6%)	1.328	1.228	-0.100 (-8%)	1.313	1.150	-0.162 (-12%)	1.058	1.032	-0.025 (-2%)	0.890	0.877	-0.013 (-2%)	0.759	0.723	-0.037 (-5%)
		C	0.829	0.784	-0.046 (-6%)	1.023	0.973	-0.050 (-5%)	1.095	0.999	-0.096 (-9%)	0.945	0.883	-0.062 (-7%)	0.824	0.810	-0.014 (-2%)	0.674	0.669	-0.005 (-1%)	0.596	0.594	-0.001 (0%)

Table 4.4-10. Median 15-minute Negative Velocity in Important Delta Channels, from DSM2-HYDRO Modeling, with Green Shading Indicating PP is ≥ 5% More than NAA and Red Shading Indicating PP is ≥ 5% Less than NAA.

DSM2 Channel	Location	Water Year Type	December			January			February			March			April			May			June		
			NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
21	San Joaquin River downstream of HOR	W	-0.298	-0.295	0.003 (1%)	-0.246	-0.194	0.052 (21%)	-0.182	-0.133	0.049 (27%)	-0.166	-0.121	0.045 (27%)	-0.154	-0.104	0.051 (33%)	-0.187	-0.124	0.063 (34%)	-0.222	-0.205	0.017 (7%)
		AN	-0.334	-0.332	0.002 (1%)	-0.284	-0.233	0.051 (18%)	-0.246	-0.187	0.059 (24%)	-0.225	-0.170	0.055 (25%)	-0.194	-0.132	0.062 (32%)	-0.215	-0.149	0.066 (31%)	-0.267	-0.249	0.017 (7%)
		BN	-0.321	-0.317	0.004 (1%)	-0.309	-0.251	0.058 (19%)	-0.281	-0.220	0.061 (22%)	-0.258	-0.198	0.060 (23%)	-0.229	-0.167	0.061 (27%)	-0.249	-0.190	0.059 (24%)	-0.299	-0.287	0.012 (4%)
		D	-0.333	-0.330	0.002 (1%)	-0.318	-0.259	0.059 (19%)	-0.306	-0.250	0.057 (18%)	-0.309	-0.254	0.054 (18%)	-0.277	-0.226	0.051 (18%)	-0.291	-0.239	0.052 (18%)	-0.312	-0.301	0.011 (4%)
		C	-0.338	-0.337	0.001 (0%)	-0.341	-0.294	0.047 (14%)	-0.317	-0.266	0.051 (16%)	-0.324	-0.282	0.042 (13%)	-0.327	-0.288	0.039 (12%)	-0.325	-0.284	0.041 (13%)	-0.322	-0.319	0.003 (1%)
45	San Joaquin River near the confluence with the Mokelumne River	W	-1.314	-1.307	0.008 (1%)	-1.223	-1.199	0.023 (2%)	-1.161	-1.118	0.043 (4%)	-1.196	-1.146	0.049 (4%)	-1.206	-1.188	0.018 (1%)	-1.231	-1.212	0.018 (1%)	-1.296	-1.264	0.032 (2%)
		AN	-1.343	-1.332	0.010 (1%)	-1.284	-1.268	0.016 (1%)	-1.255	-1.236	0.018 (1%)	-1.265	-1.219	0.045 (4%)	-1.285	-1.272	0.013 (1%)	-1.306	-1.297	0.010 (1%)	-1.340	-1.331	0.009 (1%)
		BN	-1.376	-1.364	0.012 (1%)	-1.341	-1.316	0.025 (2%)	-1.295	-1.283	0.012 (1%)	-1.321	-1.304	0.016 (1%)	-1.303	-1.297	0.005 (0%)	-1.316	-1.310	0.006 (0%)	-1.333	-1.330	0.003 (0%)
		D	-1.370	-1.365	0.005 (0%)	-1.348	-1.334	0.014 (1%)	-1.331	-1.321	0.010 (1%)	-1.323	-1.315	0.008 (1%)	-1.314	-1.310	0.004 (0%)	-1.328	-1.323	0.005 (0%)	-1.339	-1.336	0.003 (0%)
		C	-1.358	-1.355	0.002 (0%)	-1.351	-1.345	0.005 (0%)	-1.333	-1.329	0.004 (0%)	-1.337	-1.334	0.003 (0%)	-1.341	-1.339	0.002 (0%)	-1.336	-1.335	0.001 (0%)	-1.333	-1.334	0.000 (0%)
94	Old River downstream of the south Delta export facilities	W	-0.962	-0.953	0.009 (1%)	-0.895	-0.849	0.045 (5%)	-0.859	-0.775	0.084 (10%)	-0.873	-0.724	0.149 (17%)	-0.715	-0.706	0.009 (1%)	-0.733	-0.711	0.022 (3%)	-0.917	-0.815	0.102 (11%)
		AN	-0.977	-0.968	0.008 (1%)	-0.922	-0.884	0.038 (4%)	-0.910	-0.870	0.040 (4%)	-0.927	-0.812	0.115 (12%)	-0.821	-0.838	-0.017 (-2%)	-0.818	-0.834	-0.016 (-2%)	-0.963	-0.929	0.034 (4%)
		BN	-1.002	-0.996	0.006 (1%)	-0.956	-0.888	0.068 (7%)	-0.921	-0.889	0.031 (3%)	-0.940	-0.915	0.025 (3%)	-0.844	-0.877	-0.033 (-4%)	-0.843	-0.867	-0.024 (-3%)	-0.932	-0.923	0.009 (1%)
		D	-0.992	-0.987	0.006 (1%)	-0.965	-0.931	0.034 (4%)	-0.936	-0.919	0.017 (2%)	-0.929	-0.912	0.016 (2%)	-0.865	-0.882	-0.017 (-2%)	-0.851	-0.866	-0.014 (-2%)	-0.929	-0.917	0.012 (1%)
		C	-0.950	-0.952	-0.002 (0%)	-0.955	-0.943	0.012 (1%)	-0.916	-0.915	0.001 (0%)	-0.896	-0.905	-0.008 (-1%)	-0.888	-0.897	-0.009 (-1%)	-0.866	-0.878	-0.012 (-1%)	-0.898	-0.898	0.001 (0%)
212	Old River upstream of the south Delta export facilities	W	-0.451	-0.461	-0.010 (-2%)	-0.461	-0.698	-0.237 (-51%)	-0.377	-0.691	-0.314 (-83%)	-0.342	-0.661	-0.319 (-93%)	-0.418	-0.705	-0.288 (-69%)	-0.504	-0.766	-0.262 (-52%)	-0.261	-0.319	-0.058 (-22%)
		AN	-0.481	-0.465	0.016 (3%)	-0.531	-0.718	-0.187 (-35%)	-0.490	-0.678	-0.188 (-38%)	-0.431	-0.773	-0.342 (-79%)	-0.506	-0.767	-0.261 (-52%)	-0.550	-0.807	-0.257 (-47%)	-0.306	-0.348	-0.043 (-14%)
		BN	-0.433	-0.445	-0.012 (-3%)	-0.526	-0.761	-0.236 (-45%)	-0.501	-0.678	-0.177 (-35%)	-0.465	-0.675	-0.210 (-45%)	-0.548	-0.750	-0.202 (-37%)	-0.604	-0.798	-0.194 (-32%)	-0.369	-0.396	-0.027 (-7%)
		D	-0.472	-0.479	-0.008 (-2%)	-0.500	-0.699	-0.199 (-40%)	-0.544	-0.707	-0.163 (-30%)	-0.578	-0.723	-0.145 (-25%)	-0.620	-0.767	-0.147 (-24%)	-0.642	-0.793	-0.151 (-24%)	-0.400	-0.430	-0.030 (-8%)
		C	-0.591	-0.573	0.018 (3%)	-0.554	-0.700	-0.146 (-26%)	-0.596	-0.716	-0.121 (-20%)	-0.691	-0.797	-0.106 (-15%)	-0.735	-0.829	-0.094 (-13%)	-0.731	-0.830	-0.099 (-14%)	-0.473	-0.489	-0.016 (-3%)
365	Delta Cross Channel	W	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.050	-0.050	0.000 (0%)	-0.050	-0.049	0.000 (1%)	-0.051	-0.051	0.000 (1%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.056	-0.060	-0.004 (-7%)
		AN	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (1%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.053	-0.053	0.000 (0%)	-0.059	-0.061	-0.002 (-3%)
		BN	-0.053	-0.053	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.051	-0.051	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.057	-0.059	-0.002 (-3%)
		D	-0.054	-0.054	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.051	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.058	-0.060	-0.002 (-3%)
		C	-0.055	-0.055	0.000 (-1%)	-0.052	-0.052	0.000 (0%)	-0.051	-0.051	0.000 (0%)	-0.051	-0.051	0.000 (0%)	-0.051	-0.051	0.000 (0%)	-0.051	-0.051	0.000 (0%)	-0.099	-0.095	0.004 (4%)

DSM2 Channel	Location	Water Year Type	December			January			February			March			April			May			June		
			NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
379	Sutter Slough	W	-0.120	-0.127	-0.007 (-6%)	-0.077	-0.073	0.003 (5%)	-0.025	-0.022	0.003 (12%)	NA*	NA	NA	-0.111	-0.119	-0.008 (-7%)	-0.124	-0.122	0.002 (2%)	-0.147	-0.135	0.011 (8%)
		AN	-0.224	-0.209	0.015 (7%)	-0.099	-0.062	0.037 (37%)	-0.206	-0.177	0.029 (14%)	NA	-0.027	NA	-0.154	-0.150	0.003 (2%)	-0.140	-0.123	0.017 (12%)	-0.135	-0.104	0.032 (24%)
		BN	-0.218	-0.199	0.019 (9%)	-0.173	-0.162	0.010 (6%)	-0.295	-0.271	0.025 (8%)	-0.096	-0.094	0.002 (2%)	-0.154	-0.142	0.012 (8%)	-0.132	-0.136	-0.005 (-3%)	-0.139	-0.145	-0.005 (-4%)
		D	-0.194	-0.180	0.014 (7%)	-0.136	-0.128	0.008 (6%)	-0.153	-0.143	0.010 (7%)	-0.127	-0.115	0.013 (10%)	-0.172	-0.163	0.009 (5%)	-0.149	-0.136	0.013 (9%)	-0.143	-0.156	-0.013 (-9%)
		C	-0.231	-0.240	-0.010 (-4%)	-0.192	-0.121	0.071 (37%)	-0.149	-0.173	-0.024 (-16%)	-0.166	-0.145	0.021 (12%)	-0.146	-0.144	0.002 (2%)	-0.249	-0.248	0.001 (1%)	-0.222	-0.230	-0.008 (-3%)
383	Steamboat Slough	W	-0.404	-0.399	0.005 (1%)	-0.362	-0.364	-0.002 (-1%)	-0.185	-0.250	-0.065 (-35%)	-0.160	-0.347	-0.187 (-117%)	-0.372	-0.397	-0.025 (-7%)	-0.410	-0.438	-0.028 (-7%)	-0.550	-0.579	-0.029 (-5%)
		AN	-0.492	-0.516	-0.025 (-5%)	-0.345	-0.340	0.005 (2%)	-0.525	-0.461	0.064 (12%)	-0.246	-0.324	-0.078 (-32%)	-0.367	-0.393	-0.027 (-7%)	-0.431	-0.456	-0.025 (-6%)	-0.567	-0.594	-0.026 (-5%)
		BN	-0.484	-0.512	-0.028 (-6%)	-0.457	-0.470	-0.014 (-3%)	-0.419	-0.435	-0.015 (-4%)	-0.392	-0.419	-0.027 (-7%)	-0.434	-0.463	-0.029 (-7%)	-0.480	-0.490	-0.010 (-2%)	-0.578	-0.547	0.030 (5%)
		D	-0.541	-0.559	-0.018 (-3%)	-0.439	-0.474	-0.035 (-8%)	-0.376	-0.421	-0.045 (-12%)	-0.384	-0.409	-0.025 (-7%)	-0.471	-0.474	-0.003 (-1%)	-0.472	-0.476	-0.004 (-1%)	-0.582	-0.578	0.003 (1%)
		C	-0.625	-0.648	-0.023 (-4%)	-0.499	-0.494	0.005 (1%)	-0.419	-0.485	-0.066 (-16%)	-0.487	-0.516	-0.029 (-6%)	-0.503	-0.516	-0.014 (-3%)	-0.613	-0.621	-0.007 (-1%)	-0.691	-0.696	-0.005 (-1%)
418	Sacramento River downstream of proposed NDD	W	-0.120	-0.136	-0.017 (-14%)	-0.091	-0.092	-0.002 (-2%)	NA	-0.073	NA	NA	0.000	NA	-0.168	-0.160	0.008 (5%)	-0.145	-0.154	-0.008 (-6%)	-0.156	-0.175	-0.019 (-12%)
		AN	-0.250	-0.242	0.008 (3%)	-0.065	-0.064	0.001 (2%)	-0.265	-0.220	0.046 (17%)	NA	-0.036	NA	-0.200	-0.183	0.017 (8%)	-0.150	-0.140	0.010 (7%)	-0.202	-0.156	0.046 (23%)
		BN	-0.254	-0.231	0.023 (9%)	-0.187	-0.180	0.007 (4%)	-0.374	-0.359	0.015 (4%)	-0.126	-0.114	0.012 (9%)	-0.175	-0.178	-0.002 (-1%)	-0.150	-0.160	-0.010 (-7%)	-0.135	-0.135	0.000 (0%)
		D	-0.233	-0.200	0.032 (14%)	-0.141	-0.139	0.002 (1%)	-0.154	-0.149	0.005 (3%)	-0.115	-0.119	-0.004 (-3%)	-0.194	-0.182	0.012 (6%)	-0.168	-0.158	0.010 (6%)	-0.157	-0.152	0.005 (3%)
		C	-0.272	-0.266	0.006 (2%)	-0.224	-0.146	0.078 (35%)	-0.155	-0.188	-0.033 (-21%)	-0.183	-0.169	0.014 (8%)	-0.166	-0.162	0.004 (3%)	-0.285	-0.281	0.005 (2%)	-0.271	-0.263	0.009 (3%)
421	Sacramento River upstream of Georgiana Slough	W	-0.074	-0.080	-0.006 (-8%)	-0.061	-0.052	0.008 (14%)	NA	-0.104	NA	NA	-0.033	NA	-0.123	-0.123	0.001 (0%)	-0.111	-0.147	-0.036 (-33%)	-0.152	-0.158	-0.006 (-4%)
		AN	-0.190	-0.187	0.003 (2%)	-0.047	-0.084	-0.037 (-78%)	-0.179	-0.139	0.040 (22%)	NA	-0.058	NA	-0.156	-0.137	0.019 (12%)	-0.110	-0.142	-0.032 (-29%)	-0.186	-0.147	0.038 (21%)
		BN	-0.218	-0.179	0.038 (18%)	-0.141	-0.141	0.000 (0%)	-0.304	-0.278	0.025 (8%)	-0.088	-0.096	-0.008 (-9%)	-0.133	-0.161	-0.028 (-21%)	-0.115	-0.146	-0.031 (-27%)	-0.113	-0.133	-0.020 (-18%)
		D	-0.178	-0.161	0.017 (10%)	-0.103	-0.105	-0.002 (-2%)	-0.106	-0.118	-0.012 (-11%)	-0.077	-0.092	-0.014 (-18%)	-0.149	-0.157	-0.008 (-5%)	-0.125	-0.145	-0.020 (-16%)	-0.162	-0.142	0.020 (12%)
		C	-0.223	-0.223	0.000 (0%)	-0.163	-0.108	0.054 (33%)	-0.113	-0.152	-0.039 (-35%)	-0.134	-0.139	-0.004 (-3%)	-0.122	-0.139	-0.018 (-15%)	-0.219	-0.234	-0.015 (-7%)	-0.247	-0.256	-0.009 (-4%)
423	Sacramento River downstream of Georgiana Slough	W	-0.347	-0.343	0.005 (1%)	-0.310	-0.297	0.013 (4%)	-0.225	-0.217	0.008 (4%)	-0.144	-0.286	-0.142 (-98%)	-0.317	-0.338	-0.021 (-7%)	-0.356	-0.384	-0.028 (-8%)	-0.545	-0.580	-0.035 (-6%)
		AN	-0.448	-0.468	-0.020 (-4%)	-0.297	-0.285	0.012 (4%)	-0.467	-0.402	0.065 (14%)	-0.213	-0.268	-0.054 (-25%)	-0.312	-0.333	-0.021 (-7%)	-0.377	-0.403	-0.026 (-7%)	-0.576	-0.610	-0.034 (-6%)
		BN	-0.449	-0.479	-0.030 (-7%)	-0.396	-0.414	-0.017 (-4%)	-0.354	-0.372	-0.018 (-5%)	-0.329	-0.363	-0.034 (-10%)	-0.385	-0.412	-0.026 (-7%)	-0.434	-0.443	-0.008 (-2%)	-0.582	-0.585	-0.002 (0%)
		D	-0.505	-0.520	-0.015 (-3%)	-0.389	-0.426	-0.037 (-9%)	-0.329	-0.369	-0.039 (-12%)	-0.334	-0.348	-0.014 (-4%)	-0.417	-0.419	-0.002 (0%)	-0.430	-0.435	-0.005 (-1%)	-0.589	-0.600	-0.011 (-2%)
		C	-0.587	-0.608	-0.021 (-4%)	-0.438	-0.444	-0.006 (-1%)	-0.373	-0.432	-0.059 (-16%)	-0.435	-0.463	-0.028 (-6%)	-0.460	-0.472	-0.012 (-3%)	-0.566	-0.576	-0.010 (-2%)	-0.678	-0.682	-0.004 (-1%)

Note: *NA denotes that there were no negative velocity estimates.

Table 4.4-11. Median Daily Proportion of Negative Velocity in Important Delta Channels, from DSM2-HYDRO Modeling, with Green Shading Indicating PP is ≥ 5% Less than NAA and Red Shading Indicating PP is ≥ 5% More than NAA.

DSM2 Channel	Location	Water Year Type	December			January			February			March			April			May			June		
			NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
21	San Joaquin River downstream of HOR	W	0.438	0.438	0.000 (0%)	0.365	0.250	-0.115 (-31%)	0.219	0.083	-0.135 (-62%)	0.167	0.063	-0.104 (-63%)	0.234	0.094	-0.141 (-60%)	0.292	0.135	-0.156 (-54%)	0.385	0.323	-0.063 (-16%)
		AN	0.469	0.458	-0.010 (-2%)	0.438	0.406	-0.031 (-7%)	0.406	0.333	-0.073 (-18%)	0.396	0.260	-0.135 (-34%)	0.396	0.292	-0.104 (-26%)	0.406	0.323	-0.083 (-21%)	0.448	0.438	-0.010 (-2%)
		BN	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.427	-0.031 (-7%)	0.438	0.396	-0.042 (-10%)	0.438	0.396	-0.042 (-10%)	0.427	0.385	-0.042 (-10%)	0.438	0.396	-0.042 (-10%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)
		D	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.438	-0.021 (-5%)	0.458	0.427	-0.031 (-7%)	0.458	0.438	-0.021 (-5%)	0.448	0.417	-0.031 (-7%)	0.448	0.427	-0.021 (-5%)	0.469	0.458	-0.010 (-2%)
		C	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.448	-0.021 (-4%)	0.458	0.438	-0.021 (-5%)	0.458	0.448	-0.010 (-2%)	0.458	0.448	-0.010 (-2%)	0.458	0.448	-0.010 (-2%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)
45	San Joaquin River near the confluence with the Mokelumne River	W	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.448	-0.010 (-2%)	0.448	0.438	-0.010 (-2%)	0.448	0.438	-0.010 (-2%)	0.448	0.438	-0.010 (-2%)	0.448	0.448	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)
		AN	0.490	0.490	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.448	-0.010 (-2%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)
		BN	0.500	0.490	-0.010 (-2%)	0.490	0.479	-0.010 (-2%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.469	-0.010 (-2%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)
		D	0.500	0.490	-0.010 (-2%)	0.490	0.479	-0.010 (-2%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)
		C	0.490	0.490	0.000 (0%)	0.490	0.490	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)	0.479	0.479	0.000 (0%)
94	Old River downstream of the south Delta export facilities	W	0.583	0.573	-0.010 (-2%)	0.531	0.490	-0.042 (-8%)	0.531	0.448	-0.083 (-16%)	0.531	0.438	-0.094 (-18%)	0.448	0.438	-0.010 (-2%)	0.458	0.448	-0.010 (-2%)	0.531	0.479	-0.052 (-10%)
		AN	0.583	0.583	0.000 (0%)	0.531	0.510	-0.021 (-4%)	0.531	0.500	-0.031 (-6%)	0.542	0.469	-0.073 (-13%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.542	0.521	-0.021 (-4%)
		BN	0.667	0.604	-0.063 (-9%)	0.552	0.490	-0.063 (-11%)	0.521	0.521	0.000 (0%)	0.542	0.531	-0.010 (-2%)	0.479	0.490	0.010 (2%)	0.479	0.490	0.010 (2%)	0.531	0.521	-0.010 (-2%)
		D	0.594	0.583	-0.010 (-2%)	0.552	0.531	-0.021 (-4%)	0.531	0.531	0.000 (0%)	0.521	0.521	0.000 (0%)	0.490	0.500	0.010 (2%)	0.490	0.490	0.000 (0%)	0.521	0.510	-0.010 (-2%)
		C	0.542	0.542	0.000 (0%)	0.552	0.552	0.000 (0%)	0.521	0.521	0.000 (0%)	0.500	0.500	0.000 (0%)	0.490	0.490	0.000 (0%)	0.490	0.490	0.000 (0%)	0.490	0.490	0.000 (0%)
212	Old River upstream of the south Delta export facilities	W	0.344	0.354	0.010 (3%)	0.292	0.396	0.104 (36%)	0.125	0.354	0.229 (183%)	0.094	0.297	0.203 (217%)	0.177	0.365	0.188 (106%)	0.229	0.396	0.167 (73%)	0.188	0.385	0.198 (106%)
		AN	0.344	0.365	0.021 (6%)	0.365	0.427	0.063 (17%)	0.313	0.406	0.094 (30%)	0.271	0.417	0.146 (54%)	0.344	0.427	0.083 (24%)	0.365	0.438	0.073 (20%)	0.438	0.464	0.026 (6%)
		BN	0.333	0.365	0.031 (9%)	0.385	0.448	0.063 (16%)	0.365	0.427	0.063 (17%)	0.354	0.438	0.083 (24%)	0.375	0.438	0.063 (17%)	0.396	0.448	0.052 (13%)	0.469	0.490	0.021 (4%)
		D	0.375	0.375	0.000 (0%)	0.385	0.448	0.063 (16%)	0.385	0.448	0.063 (16%)	0.396	0.448	0.052 (13%)	0.406	0.448	0.042 (10%)	0.417	0.458	0.042 (10%)	0.479	0.500	0.021 (4%)
		C	0.396	0.406	0.010 (3%)	0.406	0.458	0.052 (13%)	0.396	0.448	0.052 (13%)	0.438	0.469	0.031 (7%)	0.438	0.469	0.031 (7%)	0.438	0.469	0.031 (7%)	0.500	0.500	0.000 (0%)
365	Delta Cross Channel	W	0.448	0.448	0.000 (0%)	0.427	0.427	0.000 (0%)	0.427	0.417	-0.010 (-2%)	0.427	0.427	0.000 (0%)	0.438	0.427	-0.010 (-2%)	0.427	0.427	0.000 (0%)	0.073	0.083	0.010 (14%)
		AN	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.448	0.448	0.000 (0%)	0.438	0.438	0.000 (0%)	0.438	0.438	0.000 (0%)	0.448	0.448	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.031	0.063	0.031 (100%)
		BN	0.458	0.448	-0.010 (-2%)	0.469	0.458	-0.010 (-2%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.458	-0.010 (-2%)	0.042	0.063	0.021 (50%)
		D	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.042	0.073	0.031 (75%)
		C	0.458	0.458	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.469	0.469	0.000 (0%)	0.146	0.156	0.010 (7%)

DSM2 Channel	Location	Water Year Type	December			January			February			March			April			May			June		
			NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
379	Sutter Slough	W	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)
		AN	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.083	0.063	-0.021 (-25%)
		BN	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.052	0.063	0.010 (20%)	0.104	0.083	-0.021 (-20%)
		D	0.000	0.063	0.063 (Inf.)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.052	0.052	0.000 (0%)	0.104	0.104	0.000 (0%)
		C	0.167	0.203	0.036 (22%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.021	0.021 (Inf.)	0.083	0.094	0.010 (13%)	0.167	0.188	0.021 (12%)	0.240	0.250	0.010 (4%)
383	Steamboat Slough	W	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.198	0.302	0.104 (53%)
		AN	0.125	0.167	0.042 (33%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.031	0.031 (Inf.)	0.188	0.229	0.042 (22%)	0.302	0.333	0.031 (10%)
		BN	0.167	0.229	0.063 (37%)	0.115	0.146	0.031 (27%)	0.000	0.094	0.094 (Inf.)	0.042	0.146	0.104 (250%)	0.219	0.250	0.031 (14%)	0.281	0.281	0.000 (0%)	0.313	0.313	0.000 (0%)
		D	0.260	0.281	0.021 (8%)	0.182	0.224	0.042 (23%)	0.021	0.125	0.104 (500%)	0.000	0.125	0.125 (Inf.)	0.224	0.229	0.005 (2%)	0.271	0.271	0.000 (0%)	0.313	0.323	0.010 (3%)
		C	0.333	0.344	0.010 (3%)	0.219	0.250	0.031 (14%)	0.146	0.214	0.068 (46%)	0.281	0.292	0.010 (4%)	0.302	0.302	0.000 (0%)	0.344	0.354	0.010 (3%)	0.375	0.375	0.000 (0%)
418	Sacramento River downstream of proposed NDD	W	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)
		AN	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)
		BN	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.031	0.052	0.021 (67%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)
		D	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.021	0.042	0.021 (100%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)
		C	0.141	0.156	0.016 (11%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.005	0.005 (Inf.)	0.073	0.083	0.010 (14%)	0.156	0.167	0.010 (7%)	0.130	0.135	0.005 (4%)
421	Sacramento River upstream of Georgiana Slough	W	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)
		AN	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.031	0.031 (Inf.)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)
		BN	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.042	0.073	0.031 (75%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)
		D	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.021	0.073	0.052 (250%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)
		C	0.135	0.156	0.021 (15%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.052	0.052 (Inf.)	0.083	0.104	0.021 (25%)	0.167	0.167	0.000 (0%)	0.125	0.135	0.010 (8%)
423	Sacramento River downstream of Georgiana Slough	W	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.281	0.333	0.052 (19%)
		AN	0.146	0.188	0.042 (29%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%)	0.000	0.063	0.063 (Inf.)	0.208	0.250	0.042 (20%)	0.344	0.365	0.021 (6%)
		BN	0.188	0.250	0.063 (33%)	0.135	0.167	0.031 (23%)	0.000	0.115	0.115 (Inf.)	0.083	0.177	0.094 (113%)	0.240	0.250	0.010 (4%)	0.292	0.292	0.000 (0%)	0.354	0.354	0.000 (0%)
		D	0.281	0.302	0.021 (7%)	0.198	0.240	0.042 (21%)	0.083	0.146	0.063 (75%)	0.000	0.146	0.146 (Inf.)	0.229	0.240	0.010 (5%)	0.281	0.281	0.000 (0%)	0.354	0.365	0.010 (3%)
		C	0.344	0.354	0.010 (3%)	0.240	0.260	0.021 (9%)	0.177	0.229	0.052 (29%)	0.292	0.292	0.000 (0%)	0.302	0.313	0.010 (3%)	0.354	0.354	0.000 (0%)	0.396	0.396	0.000 (0%)

4.4.4.1.2.2.1.2 Entry into Interior Delta

Juvenile spring-run Chinook Salmon may enter the interior Delta from the mainstem Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers through junctions such as Georgiana Slough/Delta Cross Channel and the HOR. Survival through the interior Delta from the Sacramento River has been shown to be consistently appreciably lower than in the river mainstem (Perry et al. 2010, 2013; Brandes and McLain 2001; Singer et al. 2013), whereas some evidence supports higher main stem survival for the San Joaquin River (reviewed by Hankin et al. 2010) and other evidence does not (Buchanan et al. 2013, 2015[42]). Perry et al. (2013) found that, based on observed patterns for hatchery-origin late fall–run Chinook salmon, eliminating entry into the interior Delta through Georgiana Slough and the Delta Cross Channel would increase overall through-Delta survival by up to approximately one-third (10–35%); this represents an absolute increase in survival of 2-7%. The need to reduce entry into the interior Delta by juvenile salmonids was recognized in the NMFS (2009) BiOp, which requires that engineering solutions be investigated to lessen the issue; such solutions may include physical or nonphysical barriers.

The PP has the potential to result in changes in interior Delta entry on the Sacramento River and the San Joaquin River. Less flow in the Sacramento River (which would occur because of exports by the NDD) leads to a greater tidal influence at the Georgiana Slough/DCC junction (Perry et al. 2015) and a greater proportion of flow entering the junction (Cavallo et al. 2015); installation of a nonphysical barrier at the Georgiana Slough junction would aim to minimize the biological consequences of these changes in hydrodynamics by allowing flow to enter Georgiana Slough but preventing fish from entering the distributary [43]. Installation of the HOR gate under the PP would greatly reduce entry into Old River from the San Joaquin River. These factors are discussed in this section.

4.4.4.1.2.2.1.3 Flow Routing Into Channel Junctions

Perspective on potential differences in juvenile salmonid entry into the interior Delta between modeled operations of the NAA and PP was provided by assessing differences in the proportion of flow entering important channel junctions from the Sacramento River and the San Joaquin River based on DSM2-HYDRO modeling (*Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D], Section 5.D.1.2.1.1.2, *Flow Routing at Junctions*, for methods, with results in Section 5.D.1.2.1.2.2, *Flow Routing at Junctions*, of the same appendix). Assessment of the proportion of flow entering a junction generally is a reasonable proxy for the proportion of fish entering the junction (Cavallo et al. 2015). As noted previously in the analysis of velocity, the summary provided herein does not account for the results of the coordinated monitoring and research under the Collaborative Science and Adaptive Management Program and real-time operations to avoid jeopardy while maximizing water

---

[42] The study of Buchanan et al. (2015) occurred in 2012, when a rock barrier was in place at HOR, resulting in few fish entering Old River (presumably through the barrier culverts), producing high uncertainty in the estimates of survival via the Old River route (which was not significantly different from survival in the San Joaquin River mainstem route). See also discussion by Anderson et al. (2012) for the Report of the 2012 Delta Science Program Independent Review Panel (IRP) on the Long-term Operations Opinions (LOO) Annual Review.

[43] Note that there is essentially no effect of south Delta exports on the proportion of flow (and fish) entering Georgiana Slough (Cavallo et al. 2015).

supplies by assessing flow conditions in the context of fish presence, e.g., by using monitoring data from at or upstream of the Delta periphery (e.g., Knights Landing on the Sacramento River or Mossdale on the San Joaquin River).

For the Sacramento River, the junctions analyzed included Sutter and Steamboat Sloughs, for which less entry from the mainstem Sacramento River is actually a negative effect, as these are relatively high survival migration pathways that allow fish to avoid entry into the interior Delta (Perry et al. 2010; 2012), Georgiana Slough, and the DCC. The junctions off the mainstem San Joaquin River that were analyzed included the HOR, Turner Cut, Columbia Cut, Middle River, and mouth of Old River.

For the Sacramento River, the analysis of flow routing into channel junctions showed that at Sutter Slough, the most upstream junction, there generally would be little difference in proportion of flow entering the junction between NAA and PP, although in one case (December of critical years) the difference in median proportion was 5% less under PP (0.01 absolute difference) (Table 4.4-12). Slightly farther downstream at Steamboat Slough, there were more incidences of median proportion being >5% less under PP (0.01–0.02 less absolute difference in February and March of below normal and dry years). Differences in flow routing into the Delta Cross Channel in December to May are discountable because the gates are usually closed in these months, whereas there were negligible differences in June, when the gates are opened again (see summary of gate openings in Table 5.B.5-24 in *DSM2 Methods and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.B]). The proportion of flow entering Georgiana Slough under the PP was generally similar to (<5% difference) or somewhat greater than the proportion entering under NAA, with the largest difference between medians in March of dry years (11% more under the PP, or 0.04 in absolute terms).

Table 4.4-12. Median Daily Proportion of Flow Entering Important Delta Channels, from DSM2-HYDRO Modeling, with Green Shading Indicating PP is ≥ 5% Less than NAA and Red Shading Indicating PP is ≥ 5% More than NAA (Except for Sutter/Steamboat Sloughs, where Entry is Considered Beneficial and the Color Scheme is Reversed).

Junction	Water Year Type	December			January			February			March			April			May			June		
		NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
Sutter Slough (Entry is beneficial)	W	0.262	0.262	0.000 (0%)	0.264	0.263	-0.001 (0%)	0.267	0.265	-0.002 (-1%)	0.265	0.265	0.000 (0%)	0.263	0.263	0.000 (0%)	0.263	0.263	0.000 (0%)	0.219	0.193	-0.026 (-12%)
	AN	0.259	0.257	-0.002 (-1%)	0.261	0.261	0.000 (0%)	0.263	0.263	0.000 (0%)	0.262	0.263	0.001 (0%)	0.262	0.261	-0.001 (0%)	0.262	0.258	-0.004 (-2%)	0.181	0.174	-0.007 (-4%)
	BN	0.257	0.252	-0.005 (-2%)	0.259	0.258	-0.001 (0%)	0.261	0.261	0.000 (0%)	0.260	0.259	-0.001 (0%)	0.261	0.259	-0.002 (-1%)	0.240	0.238	-0.002 (-1%)	0.175	0.181	0.006 (3%)
	D	0.227	0.219	-0.008 (-4%)	0.256	0.254	-0.002 (-1%)	0.260	0.259	-0.001 (0%)	0.260	0.259	-0.001 (0%)	0.259	0.259	0.000 (0%)	0.242	0.239	-0.003 (-1%)	0.173	0.174	0.001 (1%)
	C	0.195	0.185	-0.010 (-5%)	0.254	0.247	-0.007 (-3%)	0.259	0.256	-0.003 (-1%)	0.249	0.239	-0.010 (-4%)	0.230	0.225	-0.005 (-2%)	0.199	0.195	-0.004 (-2%)	0.151	0.152	0.001 (1%)
Steamboat Slough (Entry is beneficial)	W	0.254	0.242	-0.012 (-5%)	0.278	0.272	-0.006 (-2%)	0.291	0.284	-0.007 (-2%)	0.277	0.270	-0.007 (-3%)	0.257	0.253	-0.004 (-2%)	0.252	0.249	-0.003 (-1%)	0.182	0.180	-0.002 (-1%)
	AN	0.207	0.203	-0.004 (-2%)	0.259	0.248	-0.011 (-4%)	0.279	0.272	-0.007 (-3%)	0.263	0.257	-0.006 (-2%)	0.238	0.229	-0.009 (-4%)	0.202	0.203	0.001 (0%)	0.164	0.169	0.005 (3%)
	BN	0.200	0.193	-0.007 (-4%)	0.213	0.209	-0.004 (-2%)	0.238	0.220	-0.018 (-8%)	0.218	0.205	-0.013 (-6%)	0.196	0.196	0.000 (0%)	0.192	0.194	0.002 (1%)	0.164	0.168	0.004 (2%)
	D	0.192	0.190	-0.002 (-1%)	0.199	0.197	-0.002 (-1%)	0.222	0.210	-0.012 (-5%)	0.232	0.212	-0.020 (-9%)	0.197	0.198	0.001 (1%)	0.192	0.194	0.002 (1%)	0.163	0.169	0.006 (4%)
	C	0.192	0.193	0.001 (1%)	0.198	0.196	-0.002 (-1%)	0.203	0.199	-0.004 (-2%)	0.193	0.194	0.001 (1%)	0.190	0.191	0.001 (1%)	0.191	0.193	0.002 (1%)	0.180	0.183	0.003 (2%)
Delta Cross Channel (Entry is adverse)	W	0.006	0.007	0.001 (17%)	0.004	0.004	0.000 (0%)	0.003	0.003	0.000 (0%)	0.004	0.004	0.000 (0%)	0.005	0.006	0.001 (20%)	0.006	0.006	0.000 (0%)	0.386	0.379	-0.007 (-2%)
	AN	0.009	0.010	0.001 (11%)	0.005	0.006	0.001 (20%)	0.004	0.004	0.000 (0%)	0.005	0.006	0.001 (20%)	0.007	0.008	0.001 (14%)	0.010	0.011	0.001 (10%)	0.432	0.426	-0.006 (-1%)
	BN	0.009	0.010	0.001 (11%)	0.009	0.009	0.000 (0%)	0.007	0.008	0.001 (14%)	0.008	0.009	0.001 (13%)	0.010	0.010	0.000 (0%)	0.011	0.011	0.000 (0%)	0.437	0.430	-0.007 (-2%)
	D	0.011	0.011	0.000 (0%)	0.010	0.010	0.000 (0%)	0.008	0.009	0.001 (13%)	0.008	0.009	0.001 (13%)	0.010	0.010	0.000 (0%)	0.011	0.011	0.000 (0%)	0.442	0.429	-0.013 (-3%)
	C	0.013	0.013	0.000 (0%)	0.010	0.010	0.000 (0%)	0.009	0.010	0.001 (11%)	0.011	0.011	0.000 (0%)	0.011	0.011	0.000 (0%)	0.012	0.013	0.001 (8%)	0.389	0.379	-0.010 (-3%)
Georgiana Slough (Entry is adverse)	W	0.314	0.342	0.028 (9%)	0.293	0.295	0.002 (1%)	0.291	0.292	0.001 (0%)	0.292	0.293	0.001 (0%)	0.302	0.304	0.002 (1%)	0.307	0.311	0.004 (1%)	0.396	0.393	-0.003 (-1%)
	AN	0.395	0.401	0.006 (2%)	0.304	0.327	0.023 (8%)	0.292	0.293	0.001 (0%)	0.299	0.302	0.003 (1%)	0.336	0.360	0.024 (7%)	0.417	0.405	-0.012 (-3%)	0.420	0.402	-0.018 (-4%)
	BN	0.411	0.418	0.007 (2%)	0.396	0.400	0.004 (1%)	0.339	0.379	0.040 (12%)	0.391	0.417	0.026 (7%)	0.424	0.416	-0.008 (-2%)	0.433	0.422	-0.011 (-3%)	0.414	0.412	-0.002 (0%)
	D	0.415	0.419	0.004 (1%)	0.421	0.423	0.002 (0%)	0.382	0.400	0.018 (5%)	0.366	0.406	0.040 (11%)	0.416	0.411	-0.005 (-1%)	0.432	0.423	-0.009 (-2%)	0.415	0.403	-0.012 (-3%)
	C	0.387	0.384	-0.003 (-1%)	0.412	0.428	0.016 (4%)	0.418	0.416	-0.002 (0%)	0.431	0.429	-0.002 (0%)	0.440	0.434	-0.006 (-1%)	0.404	0.397	-0.007 (-2%)	0.363	0.347	-0.016 (-4%)
Head of Old River (Entry is adverse)	W	0.649	0.642	-0.007 (-1%)	0.580	0.322	-0.258 (-44%)	0.537	0.282	-0.255 (-47%)	0.534	0.323	-0.211 (-40%)	0.525	0.259	-0.266 (-51%)	0.527	0.259	-0.268 (-51%)	0.515	0.497	-0.018 (-3%)
	AN	0.663	0.661	-0.002 (0%)	0.616	0.349	-0.267 (-43%)	0.577	0.280	-0.297 (-51%)	0.560	0.264	-0.296 (-53%)	0.529	0.253	-0.276 (-52%)	0.537	0.252	-0.285 (-53%)	0.530	0.474	-0.056 (-11%)
	BN	0.679	0.667	-0.012 (-2%)	0.635	0.342	-0.293 (-46%)	0.602	0.353	-0.249 (-41%)	0.611	0.289	-0.322 (-53%)	0.559	0.264	-0.295 (-53%)	0.581	0.279	-0.302 (-52%)	0.504	0.412	-0.092 (-18%)
	D	0.667	0.662	-0.005 (-1%)	0.647	0.362	-0.285 (-44%)	0.634	0.371	-0.263 (-41%)	0.629	0.385	-0.244 (-39%)	0.597	0.322	-0.275 (-46%)	0.602	0.335	-0.267 (-44%)	0.467	0.377	-0.090 (-19%)
	C	0.642	0.639	-0.003 (0%)	0.638	0.405	-0.233 (-37%)	0.622	0.383	-0.239 (-38%)	0.594	0.398	-0.196 (-33%)	0.567	0.393	-0.174 (-31%)	0.580	0.383	-0.197 (-34%)	0.367	0.307	-0.060 (-16%)

Junction	Water Year Type	December			January			February			March			April			May			June		
		NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
Turner Cut (Entry is adverse)	W	0.176	0.173	-0.003 (-2%)	0.176	0.181	0.005 (3%)	0.191	0.187	-0.004 (-2%)	0.197	0.190	-0.007 (-4%)	0.180	0.189	0.009 (5%)	0.177	0.187	0.010 (6%)	0.190	0.183	-0.007 (-4%)
	AN	0.171	0.169	-0.002 (-1%)	0.167	0.174	0.007 (4%)	0.175	0.185	0.010 (6%)	0.182	0.185	0.003 (2%)	0.170	0.188	0.018 (11%)	0.167	0.186	0.019 (11%)	0.173	0.173	0.000 (0%)
	BN	0.177	0.172	-0.005 (-3%)	0.165	0.168	0.003 (2%)	0.169	0.181	0.012 (7%)	0.169	0.181	0.012 (7%)	0.164	0.182	0.018 (11%)	0.161	0.176	0.015 (9%)	0.163	0.164	0.001 (1%)
	D	0.168	0.167	-0.001 (-1%)	0.164	0.170	0.006 (4%)	0.161	0.170	0.009 (6%)	0.159	0.168	0.009 (6%)	0.157	0.170	0.013 (8%)	0.157	0.168	0.011 (7%)	0.160	0.160	0.000 (0%)
	C	0.161	0.161	0.000 (0%)	0.161	0.167	0.006 (4%)	0.158	0.166	0.008 (5%)	0.152	0.159	0.007 (5%)	0.150	0.157	0.007 (5%)	0.151	0.158	0.007 (5%)	0.153	0.153	0.000 (0%)
Columbia Cut (Entry is adverse)	W	0.169	0.166	-0.003 (-2%)	0.166	0.163	-0.003 (-2%)	0.171	0.161	-0.010 (-6%)	0.173	0.157	-0.016 (-9%)	0.155	0.157	0.002 (1%)	0.155	0.157	0.002 (1%)	0.169	0.161	-0.008 (-5%)
	AN	0.166	0.164	-0.002 (-1%)	0.161	0.162	0.001 (1%)	0.165	0.165	0.000 (0%)	0.166	0.158	-0.008 (-5%)	0.153	0.160	0.007 (5%)	0.151	0.159	0.008 (5%)	0.164	0.161	-0.003 (-2%)
	BN	0.171	0.167	-0.004 (-2%)	0.160	0.158	-0.002 (-1%)	0.162	0.165	0.003 (2%)	0.161	0.164	0.003 (2%)	0.151	0.160	0.009 (6%)	0.149	0.158	0.009 (6%)	0.157	0.156	-0.001 (-1%)
	D	0.164	0.163	-0.001 (-1%)	0.159	0.161	0.002 (1%)	0.156	0.160	0.004 (3%)	0.153	0.158	0.005 (3%)	0.149	0.156	0.007 (5%)	0.148	0.154	0.006 (4%)	0.154	0.152	-0.002 (-1%)
	C	0.158	0.157	-0.001 (-1%)	0.157	0.160	0.003 (2%)	0.152	0.158	0.006 (4%)	0.147	0.151	0.004 (3%)	0.144	0.148	0.004 (3%)	0.144	0.149	0.005 (3%)	0.147	0.147	0.000 (0%)
Middle River (Entry is adverse)	W	0.189	0.186	-0.003 (-2%)	0.183	0.178	-0.005 (-3%)	0.185	0.174	-0.011 (-6%)	0.184	0.168	-0.016 (-9%)	0.167	0.168	0.001 (1%)	0.169	0.169	0.000 (0%)	0.186	0.176	-0.010 (-5%)
	AN	0.190	0.187	-0.003 (-2%)	0.180	0.178	-0.002 (-1%)	0.182	0.180	-0.002 (-1%)	0.183	0.173	-0.010 (-5%)	0.170	0.175	0.005 (3%)	0.170	0.174	0.004 (2%)	0.183	0.180	-0.003 (-2%)
	BN	0.194	0.189	-0.005 (-3%)	0.182	0.175	-0.007 (-4%)	0.180	0.180	0.000 (0%)	0.181	0.179	-0.002 (-1%)	0.171	0.176	0.005 (3%)	0.170	0.175	0.005 (3%)	0.178	0.177	-0.001 (-1%)
	D	0.188	0.186	-0.002 (-1%)	0.181	0.180	-0.001 (-1%)	0.179	0.178	-0.001 (-1%)	0.177	0.178	0.001 (1%)	0.171	0.175	0.004 (2%)	0.170	0.174	0.004 (2%)	0.176	0.175	-0.001 (-1%)
	C	0.180	0.180	0.000 (0%)	0.179	0.179	0.000 (0%)	0.175	0.176	0.001 (1%)	0.171	0.172	0.001 (1%)	0.169	0.172	0.003 (2%)	0.169	0.172	0.003 (2%)	0.170	0.170	0.000 (0%)
Mouth of Old River (Entry is adverse)	W	0.178	0.174	-0.004 (-2%)	0.177	0.172	-0.005 (-3%)	0.181	0.170	-0.011 (-6%)	0.177	0.164	-0.013 (-7%)	0.162	0.161	-0.001 (-1%)	0.163	0.161	-0.002 (-1%)	0.174	0.167	-0.007 (-4%)
	AN	0.174	0.172	-0.002 (-1%)	0.173	0.171	-0.002 (-1%)	0.175	0.172	-0.003 (-2%)	0.173	0.164	-0.009 (-5%)	0.159	0.162	0.003 (2%)	0.159	0.161	0.002 (1%)	0.171	0.169	-0.002 (-1%)
	BN	0.177	0.173	-0.004 (-2%)	0.168	0.164	-0.004 (-2%)	0.169	0.169	0.000 (0%)	0.165	0.164	-0.001 (-1%)	0.158	0.162	0.004 (3%)	0.158	0.161	0.003 (2%)	0.167	0.167	0.000 (0%)
	D	0.171	0.170	-0.001 (-1%)	0.167	0.166	-0.001 (-1%)	0.165	0.165	0.000 (0%)	0.162	0.163	0.001 (1%)	0.158	0.161	0.003 (2%)	0.158	0.160	0.002 (1%)	0.166	0.164	-0.002 (-1%)
	C	0.166	0.165	-0.001 (-1%)	0.166	0.166	0.000 (0%)	0.163	0.163	0.000 (0%)	0.157	0.159	0.002 (1%)	0.155	0.156	0.001 (1%)	0.156	0.158	0.002 (1%)	0.161	0.161	0.000 (0%)

For the San Joaquin River, the assumption of 50% closure of the PP's HOR gate from January 1 to June 15, subject to RTO adjustments, led to appreciably less flow (~30–50%) entering Old River under the PP compared to NAA (Table 4.4-12). For Turner Cut, the next downstream junction, the proportion of flow entering the junction generally was greater under PP than NAA (median by water year type up to 11% greater, or 0.02 in absolute value), reflecting more flow remaining in the river main stem because of the HOR gate; this is consistent the observations of Cavallo et al. (2015), who estimated (based on DSM2-HYDRO modeling) that more fish would enter the HOR with higher flow—for the PP, the flow that otherwise would have gone into Old River progresses to Turner Cut, thus producing a similar effect at that location. With movement downstream to other junctions, differences in flow routing into the junctions between NAA and PP were less which, as noted by Cavallo et al. (2015) reflects greater tidal influence; where lower proportions of flow entered the junctions under PP, this probably reflected less south Delta export pumping than NAA.

Overall, the analysis suggested that spring-run Chinook salmon migrating down the Sacramento River would have somewhat greater potential to enter the interior Delta through Georgiana Slough, potentially resulting in adverse effects from the relatively low survival probability in that migration route. Minimization of this adverse effect would be undertaken with the installation of a nonphysical barrier at the Georgiana Slough junction (discussed in the next section). As previously noted, the summary of Delta hydrodynamic conditions based on DSM2 does not account for real-time operations that would be undertaken to limit potential operational effects, by assessing flow conditions in the context of fish presence. Juvenile salmonids migrating down the San Joaquin River would, based on flow routing, be expected to benefit from a HOR gate, which would considerably reduce entry into Old River and therefore reduce entrainment at the south Delta export facilities. Effects of the HOR gate in terms of near-field effects were discussed in Section 4.3.4.1.3.1.3 *Head of Old River Gate*.

4.4.4.1.2.2.1.4 Nonphysical Fish Barrier at Georgiana Slough

Installation of a nonphysical fish barrier at the Georgiana Slough junction would aim to minimize the potential for increased entry of fish into the junction caused by hydrodynamic changes because of the NDD, as described above. The probability of entry into Georgiana Slough is positively related to the location of the critical streakline, which is the streamwise division of flow vectors between the Sacramento River and Georgiana Slough (Perry et al. 2014). Occurrence of juvenile salmonids on the Sacramento River side of the critical streakline reduces the probability of entry into Georgiana Slough, so nonphysical barriers are installed such that their position increases the probability of juvenile salmonids remaining on the Sacramento River side of the critical streakline. The two types of nonphysical barrier with greatest potential for use at this junction are the Bio Acoustic Fish Fence (BAFF) and Floating Fish Guidance Structure (FFGS); both have been tested at this location, but only analyses for the former have been published, so the analysis here focuses on this technology. A BAFF consists of acoustic deterrence stimuli broadcast from loudspeakers and contained within a bubble curtain that is illuminated with strobe lights (to allow the fish to orient away from the sound stimulus better). A BAFF was tested at Georgiana Slough in 2011 and 2012, using acoustically tagged juvenile Chinook salmon. It was found that BAFF operations in 2011 reduced entry of late fall-run Chinook salmon into Georgiana Slough from 22.1% (0.221) to 7.4% (0.074), a reduction of around two thirds, and that operations in 2012 reduced entry of late fall-run Chinook salmon from 24.2% (0.242) to 11.8% (0.118) (see summary by California Department of Water Resources 2015b: 3-11 to 3-14). There is therefore potential to minimize adverse effects of hydrodynamic effects of the PP, given that the analysis of flow routing into Georgiana Slough based on DSM2-HYDRO data suggested potential increases in median proportional flow entry of up to 11–12% (Table 4.4-12) and some of the results of the through-Delta survival analyses show lower potential survival under the PP because of flow-survival relationships (see Section 4.3.4.1.2.2.1.5 *Through-Delta Survival*). Perry et al. (2013) illustrated that through-Delta survival of acoustically tagged juvenile late fall-run Chinook salmon could proportionally increase by 10-35% if interior Delta entry was eliminated, based on data for five of six releases they examined. This suggests that if an NPB reduced the probability of juvenile Chinook salmon taking the interior Delta pathway through Georgiana Slough by 50% (the lower of the two overall BAFF effectiveness estimates from 2011 and 2012), this could result in ~5-17% greater through-Delta survival.

However, it is important to consider several important limitations of the BAFF testing. First, the tested Chinook salmon were larger individuals (e.g., 110–140-mm fork length in 2011), which may result in better swimming ability and effectiveness of the BAFF relative to the smaller sizes of spring-run Chinook salmon that would encounter the BAFF. Second, all fish were hatchery-raised, and therefore may have behaved differently than wild fish would in response to a BAFF. Last, river flow in 2011 was very high, resulting in largely unidirectional, downstream flow, which could have improved BAFF effectiveness; however, the more variable flow conditions in 2012, including periods of reverse flow, illustrated that the BAFF has potential to be effective across a variety of environmental conditions if an engineering solution is desired.

In contrast to the BAFF, the FFGS tested at Georgiana Slough in 2014 showed limited effectiveness. At intermediate discharge (200-400 m^3/s; ~7,000-14,000 cfs), juvenile Chinook salmon entry into Georgiana Slough was five percentage points lower when the FFGS was turned on[44] (19.1% on; 23.9% off) (Romine et al. 2016). At higher discharge (>400 m^3/s), entry into Georgiana Slough was higher when the FFGS was turned on (19.3% on; 9.7% off), and at lower discharge (0-200 m^3/s) entry into Georgiana Slough was lower when the FFGS was turned on (43.7% on; 47.3% off). Overall entry into Georgiana Slough was 22% with the FFGS turned on, and 23% with the FFGS turned off. The results of the FFGS effectiveness study, coupled with the complex hydrodynamics of the Sacramento River-Georgiana Slough junction, suggest that dynamic deployment of an FFGS should be considered (Romine et al. 2016). For example, the greater entry into Georgiana Slough at higher flows could have been caused by turbulence around the structure, which could be decreased by angling the FFGS more toward shore at higher flows. Intermediate orientations, angles, lengths, and depths of FFGS could have resulted in different results. Overall, the results of the 2014 FFGS study suggest that this technology was less effective than the BAFF.

Effects of nonphysical barrier construction and near-field predation are discussed in Section 4.3.5.3, *Georgiana Slough Nonphysical Fish Barrier*.

---

[44] In this study, “on” = FFGS angled towards the river channel to guide downstream-migrating juvenile Chinook salmon to the Sacramento River side of the critical streakline, “off” = FFGS angled parallel to the river bank in order to minimize any potential guiding effects (i.e., to provide a contrast to the “turned on” position).

4.4.4.1.2.2.1.5 Through-Delta Survival

Various analytical tools were used to provide greater biological context for the previously described operations-related differences in Delta hydrodynamics between the NAA and PP. These included the Delta Passage Model, analyses based on Newman (2003) and Perry (2010), and the SalSim Through-Delta Survival Function. This section describes the principal results of these analyses. The tools were all focused on Chinook salmon.

4.4.4.1.2.2.1.6 Delta Passage Model

The Delta Passage Model (DPM) integrates operational effects of the NAA and PP that could influence survival of migrating juvenile[45] Sacramento River basin spring-run Chinook salmon through the Delta: differences in channel flows (flow-survival relationships), differences in routing based on flow proportions (e.g., entry into the interior Delta, where survival is lower), and differences in south Delta exports (export-survival relationships). Details of the DPM analysis are provided in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.2 *Delta Passage Model*). As with all such modeling tools, the DPM does not account for the results of the coordinated monitoring and research under the Collaborative Science and Adaptive Management program and real-time operational adjustments that would occur in relation to fish presence, for example. The analysis was not applied to San Joaquin River basin spring-run Chinook salmon because the results for San Joaquin River fall-run Chinook salmon illustrate that the DPM results are influenced by proposed PA operations that are very different than those that have been observed in reality and upon which the modeled relationships are based (see Appendix 5.E., *Essential Fish Habitat*, Section 5.E.5.3.1.2.1.2.1, *Indirect Mortality within the Delta* from ICF International [2016]). Instead, the SalSim through-Delta survival function was applied for estimating potential San Joaquin River basin spring-run Chinook salmon through-Delta survival (see Section 5.4.1.3.1.2.1.3.5, *SalSim Through-Delta Survival Function: San Joaquin River Basin Spring-Run Chinook Salmon*).

For spring-run Chinook salmon, the DPM results suggested that through-Delta survival under the PP would be similar to or lower than the NAA (Figure 4.4-4 and Table 4.4-13). Mean total through-Delta survival under the PP ranged from 0.22 in critical years to 0.42 in wet years, with a range of 1% less than NAA in wet and critical years to 4% less in dry years (Table 4.4-13**Error! Reference source not found.**). Mean survival down the mainstem Sacramento River route under the PP ranged from 0.23 in critical years to 0.44 in wet years, and the difference from NAA ranged from 1% less in critical years to 5% less in above normal and dry years, reflecting the influence of less river flow downstream of the NDD under the PP. Yolo Bypass entry was similar between NAA and PP scenarios (both assumed a notched weir), and survival was identical (because the random draws from the route-specific survival distribution [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.2.2.5.4 *Route-Specific Survival*] were the same for NAA and PP). A marginally (0–2%) lower proportion of fish entered Sutter and Steamboat Sloughs under the PP compared to NAA (reflecting the flow routing into junctions; see Table 4.4-13), and the difference in mean survival for this route between PP and NAA was

---

[45] As noted in Section 5.D.1.2.2.1 *Introduction* of Appendix 5.D in ICF International (2016), the DPM is a smolt survival model only, for consideration of effects to actively migrating fish >70 mm, with results based primarily on studies of larger (>140 mm) late fall-run Chinook salmon smolts.

similar to that of the mainstem Sacramento River, reflecting the similar flow-survival relationships in the relevant reaches (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.2.2.5 *Flow-Dependent Survival*). A similar or marginally greater (1-2%) proportion of fish used the interior Delta migration route under the PP compared to NAA (again reflecting the flow routing into junctions; see Table 4.4-13), and mean survival in this route was greater (11–19%) in wet and above normal years, which reflected appreciably less south Delta exports under the PP.

Seventy-five randomized iterations of the DPM allowed 95% confidence intervals to be calculated for the annual estimates of through-Delta survival (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.2.4 *Randomization to Illustrate Uncertainty*). The 95% confidence intervals for NAA and PP overlapped in all years (Figures 4.4-4 and 4.4-5), illustrating that the magnitude of differences could be difficult to detect statistically if field studies were undertaken during PP implementation to assess effects[46]. The spring-run Chinook salmon DPM results suggested very small differences in survival under the PP compared to NAA (Figure 4.4-6), whereas the analysis based on Newman (2003) (discussed in the next section) suggested that there would essentially be no difference in survival (despite the Delta same entry timing being used for both). This reflects model differences (with further discussion being provided for the analysis based on Newman [2003] in the next section): in the DPM, the benefits of less south Delta exports under the PP are only experienced by the proportion of the population entering the interior Delta (0.25-0.30 take this route), whereas for the analysis based on Newman (2003), the effect of exports is applied to the entire population; and in the DPM, the export-survival effect is weaker than the flow-survival effect (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.2.5.2.3 *Model Demonstration*) and is calculated as a ratio of survival in reach Sac3 (which is lower because of the NDD), whereas as discussed in the following section, in the analysis based on Newman (2003) the export-survival effect is similar in magnitude to the flow-survival effect—the "offsetting" of south and north Delta exports results in similar survival under PP and NAA for the analysis based on Newman (2003). Further discussion of these issues and the Sacramento River flow and south Delta exports during the spring-run Chinook salmon migration period used for the DPM are provided in the analysis based on Newman (2003), which is found in the next section. Overall, the DPM results suggested the potential for a marginal adverse effect on spring-run Chinook salmon juveniles from the PP but this analysis does not account for the results of the coordinated monitoring and research under the Collaborative Science and Adaptive Management program, including the real-time operational adjustments that would be made in response to fish presence, which will seek to maximize water supplies while limiting potential adverse effects as appropriate to avoid jeopardy; in so doing, this would limit the potential for take.

---

[46] To provide perspective on the actual number of fish that the 1-2% entering the interior Delta would represent, estimates of the number of juveniles entering the Delta are necessary. Such numbers are calculated on an annual basis by NMFS for the purposes of calculating allowable incidental take of winter-run Chinook salmon. NMFS estimated that between c. 124,500 and 3,739,000 juvenile winter-run Chinook salmon entered the Delta annually over the past decade (data from the NMFS [2014] Floating Fish Guidance Structure BiOp, plus updates for 2015 based on the 2016 NMFS letter to Reclamation estimating the JPE [Available: http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/Central_Valley/Water%20Operations/winter-run_juvenile_production_estimate__jpe__-_january_28__2016.pdf, accessed March 11, 2016]).

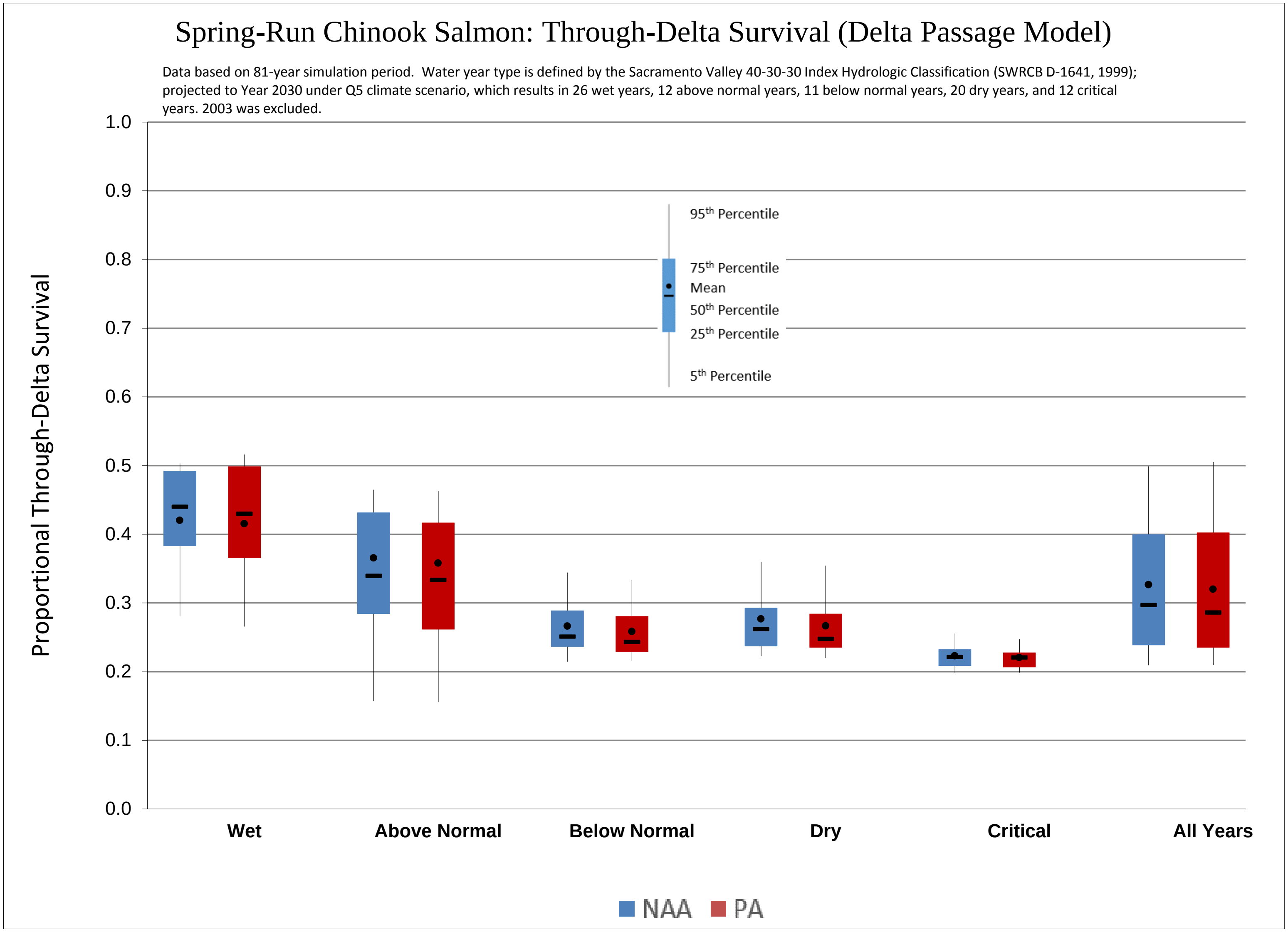


Figure 4.4-4. Box Plots of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Annual Through-Delta Survival Estimated from the Delta Passage Model, Grouped by Water Year Type.

Note: Broken lines indicate 95% confidence intervals from the 75 iterations of the DPM.

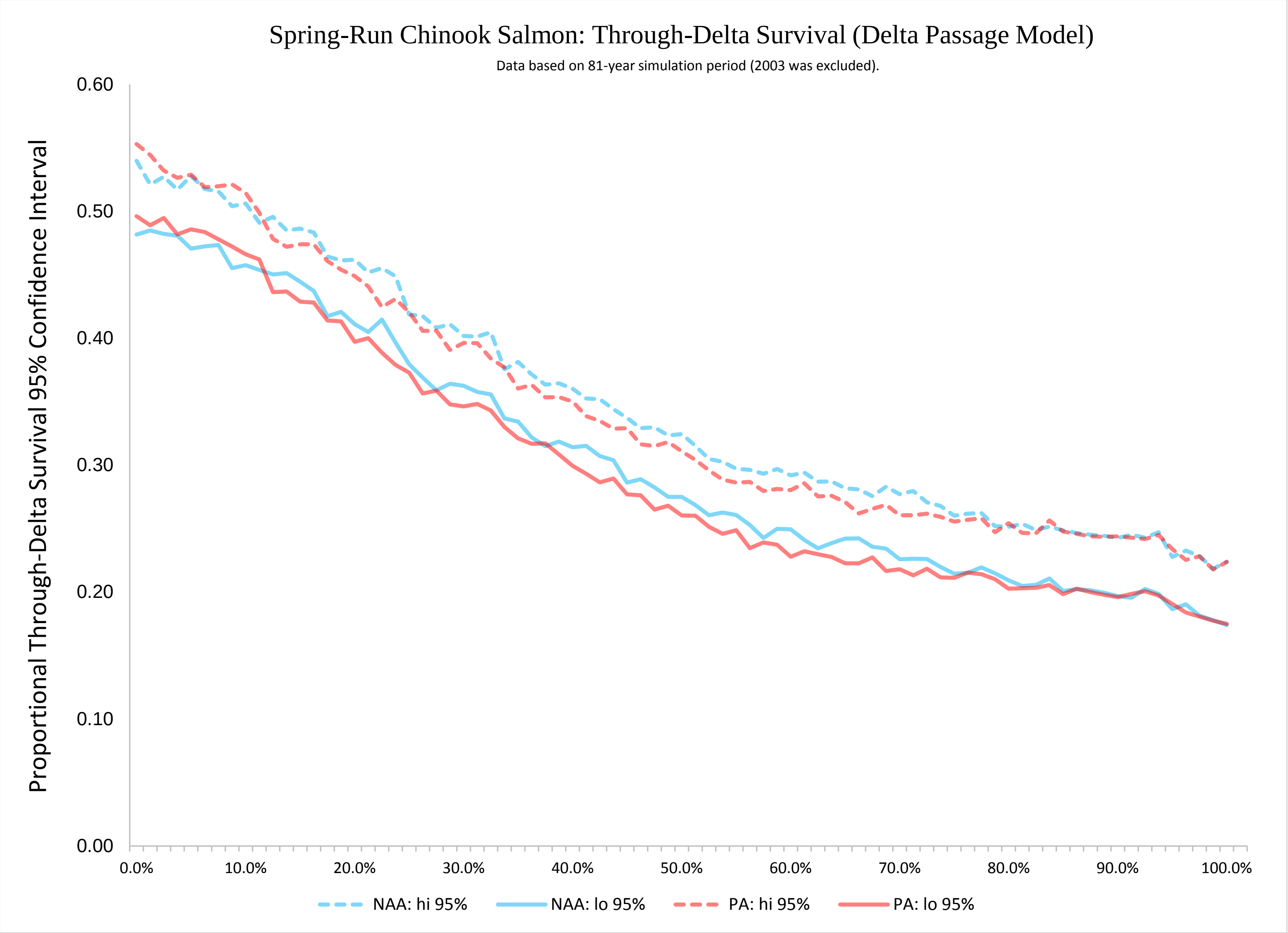


Figure 4.4-5. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Annual Through-Delta Survival Estimated from the Delta Passage Model.

Table 4.4-13. Delta Passage Model: Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Mean Through-Delta (Total) Survival, Mainstem Sacramento River survival, and Proportion Using and Surviving Other Migration Routes.

WY	Total Survival			Mainstem Sacramento River Survival			Yolo Bypass					
							Proportion Using Route			Survival		
	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
W	0.42	0.42	0.00 (-1%)	0.46	0.44	-0.02 (-4%)	0.19	0.19	0.00 (1%)	0.47	0.47	0.00 (0%)
AN	0.37	0.36	-0.01 (-2%)	0.39	0.37	-0.02 (-5%)	0.13	0.14	0.01 (5%)	0.47	0.47	0.00 (0%)
BN	0.27	0.26	-0.01 (-3%)	0.29	0.28	-0.01 (-4%)	0.04	0.04	0.00 (-2%)	0.47	0.47	0.00 (0%)
D	0.28	0.27	-0.01 (-4%)	0.30	0.28	-0.01 (-5%)	0.05	0.05	0.00 (-1%)	0.47	0.47	0.00 (0%)
C	0.22	0.22	0.00 (-1%)	0.24	0.23	0.00 (-1%)	0.03	0.03	0.00 (-2%)	0.47	0.47	0.00 (0%)

WY	Sutter/Steamboat Sloughs						Interior Delta (Via Georgiana Slough/DCC)					
	Proportion Using Route			Survival			Proportion Using Route			Survival		
	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
W	0.29	0.28	0.00 (-1%)	0.50	0.48	-0.02 (-4%)	0.26	0.26	0.00 (1%)	0.21	0.25	0.04 (19%)
AN	0.29	0.29	-0.01 (-2%)	0.43	0.41	-0.02 (-4%)	0.27	0.27	0.00 (1%)	0.19	0.21	0.02 (11%)
BN	0.30	0.30	0.00 (-1%)	0.32	0.31	-0.01 (-4%)	0.28	0.28	0.00 (1%)	0.15	0.15	0.00 (2%)
D	0.30	0.29	0.00 (-1%)	0.34	0.32	-0.01 (-4%)	0.28	0.28	0.00 (1%)	0.15	0.15	0.00 (1%)
C	0.28	0.28	0.00 (0%)	0.28	0.27	0.00 (-1%)	0.30	0.30	0.00 (0%)	0.13	0.13	0.00 (1%)

Note: Survival in Sutter/Steamboat Sloughs and Interior Delta routes includes survival in the Sacramento River prior to entering the channel junctions.

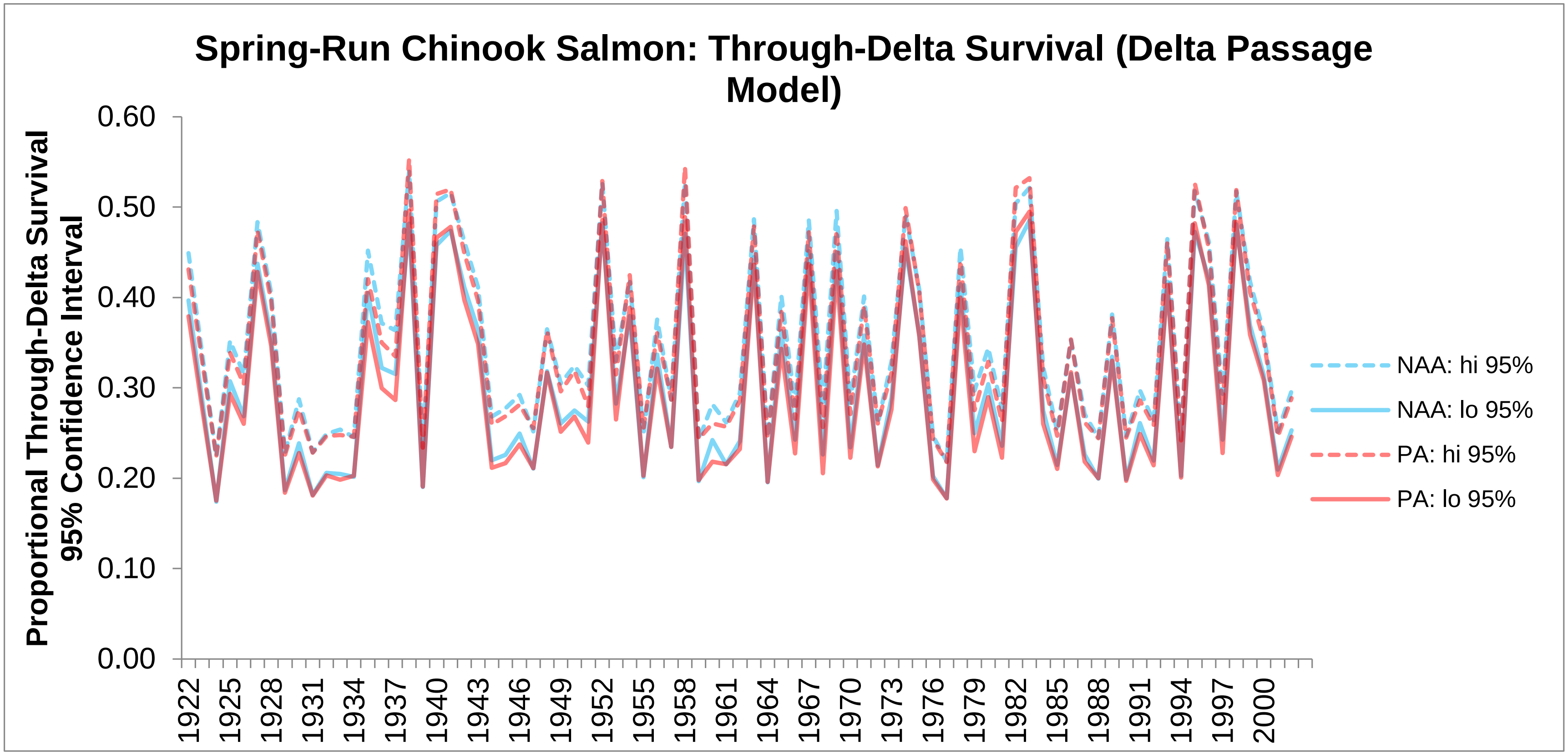


Figure 4.4-6. Time Series of Mean (With 95% Confidence Interval) Annual Juvenile Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Through-Delta Estimated from the Delta Passage Model.

4.4.4.1.2.2.1.7 Analysis Based on Newman (2003)

In addition to the DPM, an analysis based on Newman (2003) was undertaken to assess the potential effects of the PP on juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon migrating through the Delta from the Sacramento River basin. The method is described further in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.3 *Analysis Based on Newman (2003)*), but essentially allows estimation of through-Delta survival as a function of river flow (Sacramento River below the NDD, to capture flow-survival effects), south Delta exports, and other covariates, including salinity, turbidity, DCC position, and water temperature. Note that the analysis based on Newman (2003) does not include representation of near-field mortality effects from the NDD (e.g., predation or impingement at the NDD), but instead focuses on far-field effects.

The results of the analysis based on Newman (2003) suggest there would be very little difference in overall mean survival between the NAA and PP for spring-run Chinook salmon across all water year types (Figure 4.4-7; Figure 4.4-8; Figure 4.4-9). When examined by NDD bypass flow level, the minor differences between NAA and PP are also apparent (Table 4.4-14)[47].

The results are driven by several factors. The timing of spring-run Chinook salmon entry into the Delta is assumed to be the same as that used for the DPM, for which entry occurs during spring (March–May), with a pronounced unimodal peak in April (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Figure 5.D-42). During April under the PP, south Delta exports and Sacramento River flow downstream of the NDD are very similar in their absolute differences from the NAA (Table 4.4-15; for additional south Delta exports information, see also Figures 5.A.6-27-1 to 5.A.6-27-6, Figures 5.A.6-27-7 to 5.A.6-27-19, and Table 5.A.6-27 in *CalSim II Modeling and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.A]). In other words, less Sacramento River flow downstream of the NDD is offset by less south Delta exports. The analysis based on Newman (2003) includes a rate of change in juvenile Chinook salmon survival per unit of flow that is similar for the Sacramento River and south Delta exports (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Figure 5.D-61), so that a similar change in Sacramento River flows (less) and exports (less) results in similar survival, as the analysis showed.[48] As noted in the previous section describing the DPM results, this results in differences in the results compared to DPM results, for which survival under PP was marginally lower than under NAA.

---

[47] Based on agency request, an unweighted version of these data is presented in ICF International (2016), Appendix 5.D *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale*, Section 5.D.1.2.3.3 *Results* (Table 5.D-46), which again shows the similarity between NAA and PA.

[48] The relative effect of south Delta exports and Sacramento River flow downstream of the NDD are illustrated in Figure 5.D-64 in ICF International (2016), Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.3 *Analysis Based on Newman (2003)*.

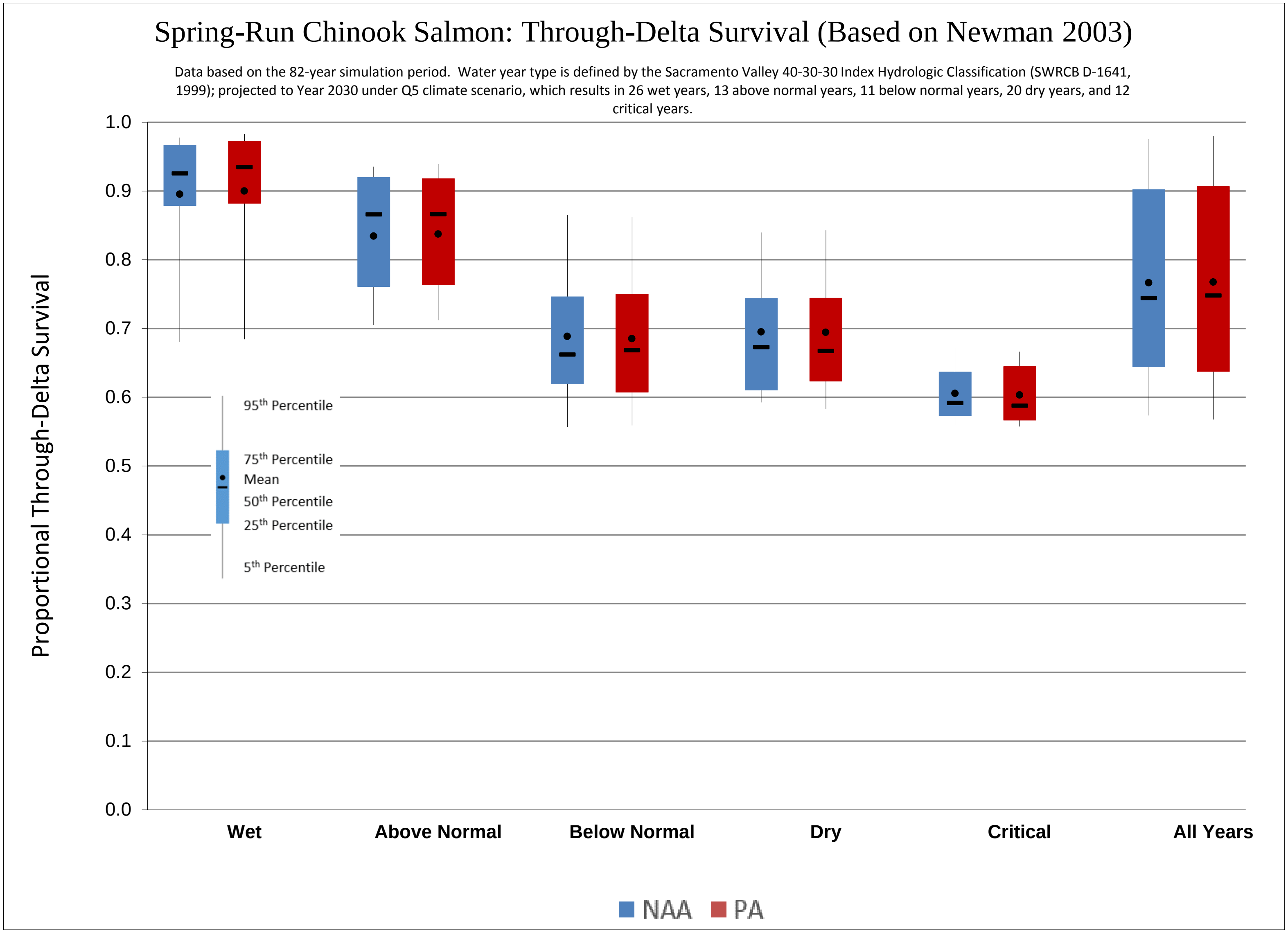


Figure 4.4-7. Box Plots of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Annual Through-Delta Survival Estimated from the Analysis Based on Newman (2003), Grouped by Water Year Type.

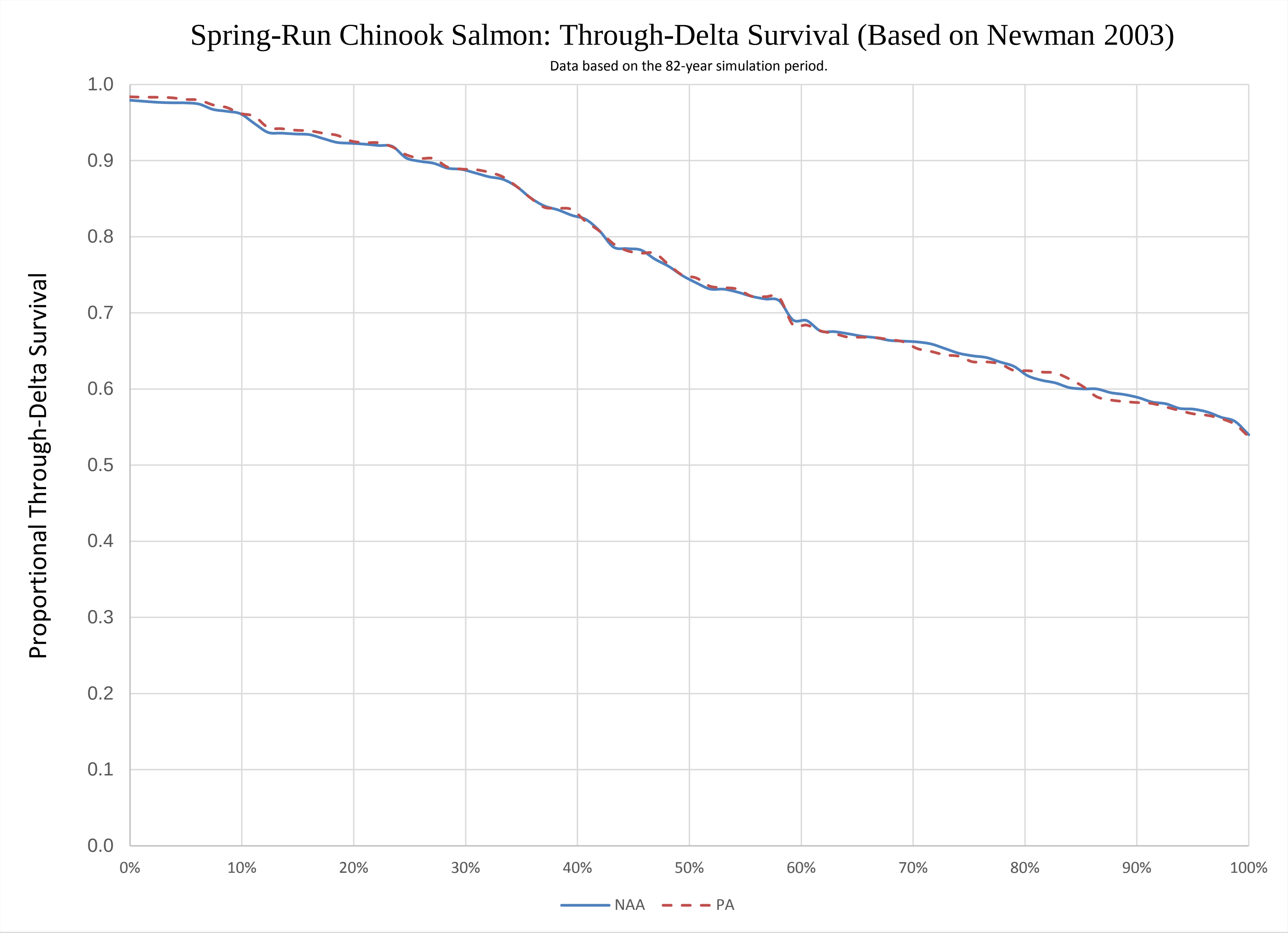


Figure 4.4-8. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Annual Through-Delta Survival Estimated from the Analysis Based on Newman (2003).

This page intentionally left blank.

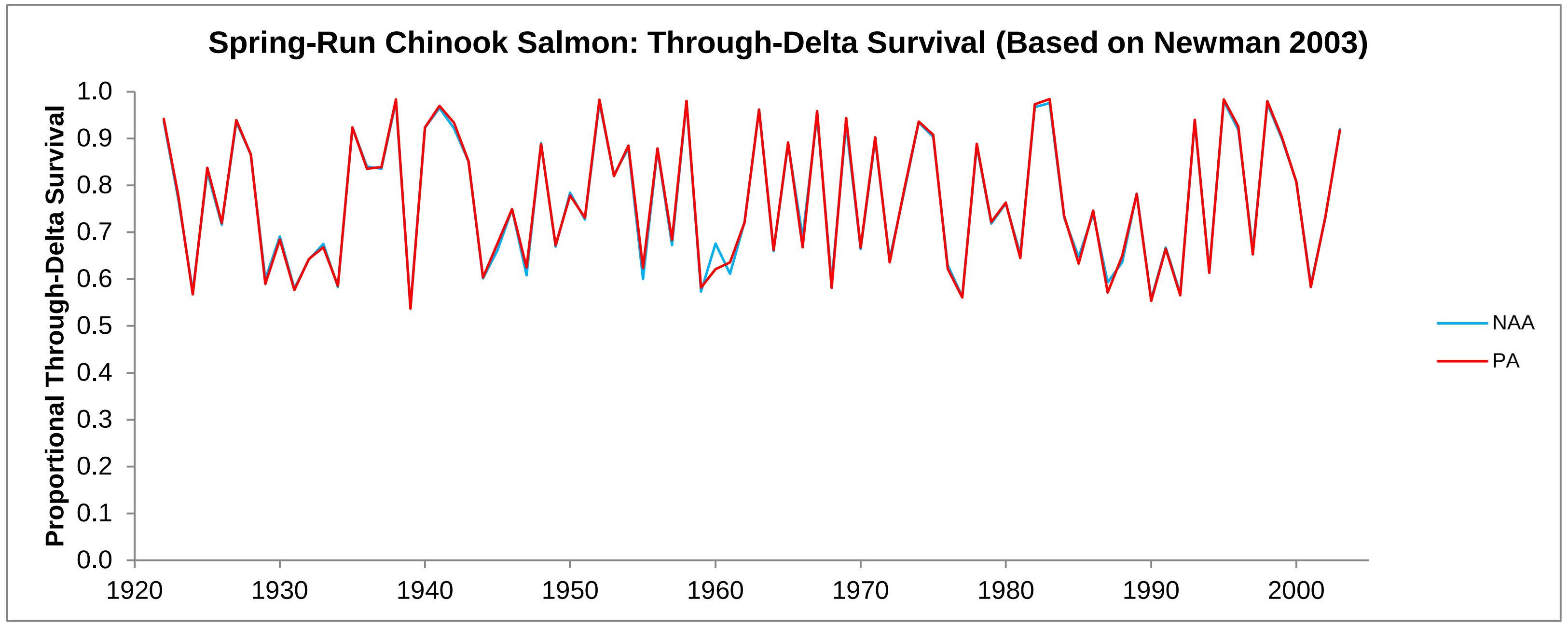


Figure 4.4-9. Time Series of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Annual Through-Delta Survival Estimated from the Analysis Based on Newman (2003).

Table 4.4-14. Mean Annual Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Weighted Annual Through-Delta Survival Estimated from the Analysis Based on Newman (2003), Divided into Each NDD Bypass Flow Level.

WY	Pulse protection flows			Level 1 bypass flows			Level 2 bypass flows			Level 3 bypass flows			Total		
	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
W	0.00	0.00	0.00 (0%)	0.00	0.00	0.00 (2%)	0.04	0.04	0.00 (1%)	0.85	0.85	0.00 (0%)	0.90	0.90	0.00 (0%)
AN	0.00	0.00	0.00 (1%)	0.01	0.01	0.00 (0%)	0.06	0.06	0.00 (2%)	0.77	0.77	0.00 (0%)	0.83	0.84	0.00 (0%)
BN	0.00	0.00	0.00 (0%)	0.25	0.24	0.00 (-1%)	0.31	0.31	0.00 (0%)	0.13	0.13	0.00 (-1%)	0.69	0.69	0.00 (0%)
D	0.00	0.00	0.00 (-1%)	0.21	0.21	0.00 (0%)	0.39	0.39	0.00 (0%)	0.09	0.09	0.00 (0%)	0.69	0.69	0.00 (0%)
C	0.01	0.01	0.00 (-1%)	0.51	0.50	0.00 (-1%)	0.09	0.09	0.00 (1%)	0.00	0.00	0.00 (0%)	0.61	0.60	0.00 (0%)

Table 4.4-15. Mean South Delta Exports and Sacramento River Flow Downstream of the NDD in March-May, by Water-Year Type.

WY	South Delta Exports									Sacramento River Flow Downstream of the NDD (Bypass Flows)								
	March			April			May			March			April			May		
	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
W	9,461	1,706	-7,755 (-82%)	2,977	395	-2,582 (-87%)	3,378	570	-2,808 (-83%)	47,988	40,145	-7,844 (-16%)	34,998	32,406	-2,592 (-7%)	29,839	26,747	-3,092 (-10%)
AN	7,826	902	-6,924 (-88%)	1,801	369	-1,432 (-80%)	1,720	411	-1,309 (-76%)	40,801	34,100	-6,700 (-16%)	24,080	22,944	-1,136 (-5%)	16,711	15,444	-1,266 (-8%)
BN	6,089	3,825	-2,264 (-37%)	1,774	1,340	-435 (-24%)	1,624	1,034	-590 (-36%)	18,542	15,051	-3,492 (-19%)	14,076	13,607	-469 (-3%)	12,460	12,027	-433 (-3%_
D	4,868	3,619	-1,249 (-26%)	2,052	1,493	-559 (-27%)	2,054	1,337	-717 (-35%)	21,284	17,259	-4,025 (-19%)	14,895	14,348	-547 (-4%)	11,633	11,382	-251 (-2%_
C	2,701	2,139	-561 (-21%)	1,430	1,267	-163 (-11%)	1,415	1,207	-208 (-15%)	12,529	11,683	-846 (-7%)	10,290	10,144	-147 (-1%)	8,214	8,031	-184 (-2%)

This page intentionally left blank.

4.4.4.1.2.2.1.8 Analysis Based on Perry (2010)

In addition to the DPM and the analysis based on Newman (2003), which both allow consideration of the through-Delta Sacramento River basin juvenile Chinook salmon survival changes in relation to the far-field effects of both north and south Delta exports simultaneously, a focused analysis based on Perry (2010) was undertaken to focus solely on the potential flow-survival effects of the NDD on juvenile survival, particularly with respect to Sacramento River flows bypassing the NDD (i.e., pulse protection flows and level 1–3 bypass flows). The method is described further in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.4), and allows estimation of through-Delta survival from the Sacramento River at Georgiana Slough to Chipps Island, based on the implementation of the Perry (2010) flow-survival relationship from the DPM. The analysis based on Perry (2010) does not include representation of near-field mortality effects from the NDD (e.g., predation or impingement at the NDD), but instead focuses on far-field effects.

The results of the analysis based on Perry (2010) suggest that annual through-Delta survival in the Sacramento River from Georgiana Slough to Chipps Island would be slightly lower under the PP relative to the NAA for juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon (Figure 4.4-10; Figure 4.4-11; **Error! Reference source not found.**Table 4.4-16; see also Figure 5.D-77 in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D]). For spring-run Chinook salmon, the greatest differences in overall survival (4–5% less under PP) were in above normal, below normal, and dry years (Table 4.4-16). However, the relative differences between NAA and PP for through-Delta survival of spring-run Chinook salmon were 1–3% less under the PP, depending on water year type.

Note that there is appreciable variability in the underlying relationship between Sacramento River flow and survival, as represented in the analysis based on Perry (2010) (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Figure 5.D-65). Plots of annual estimated weighted survival and 95% confidence intervals presented in Appendix 5.D show considerable overlap in the estimate for the NAA and PP scenarios: for spring-run Chinook salmon, the estimates of weighted survival for pulse-protection flows, level 1–3 bypass flows, and overall survival overlap in all pairs of NAA and PP scenarios across the 82 years that were included in the analysis (see Figures 5.D-66 to 5.D-70 and Figures 5.D-72 to 5.D-76 in ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D). This suggests that although the results discussed above show potentially less survival under the PP relative to the NAA, it might be challenging to statistically detect this small magnitude of difference during PP monitoring, for example.

Given that the analyses described above were for fixed spring-run Chinook salmon entry distributions, it also was of interest to examine the differences in juvenile Chinook salmon survival based on Perry (2010) when assuming an equal daily weighting for entry distribution during December-June, the main juvenile Chinook salmon Delta entry period. Although the entry distribution to the Delta was assumed to be the same on each day (i.e., equal daily weighting), the patterns from this analysis were similar: lower survival under the PP relative to NAA (Figure 4.4-12; Figure 4.4-13; Table 4.4-17), with the relative differences between PP and NAA increasing with the movement from pulse protection flows (0–2%), to level 1 bypass flows (1–4%), to level 2 bypass flows (2–4%), to level 3 bypass flows (3–6%). In addition, the 95%

confidence intervals for through-Delta survival estimates under all flow levels overlapped in every year between the NAA and PP scenarios (see Figures 5.D-78 to 5.D-82 in ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.2.4.3 *Results*), again suggesting that it might be challenging to statistically detect the small magnitude of the PP effect during monitoring of implementation.

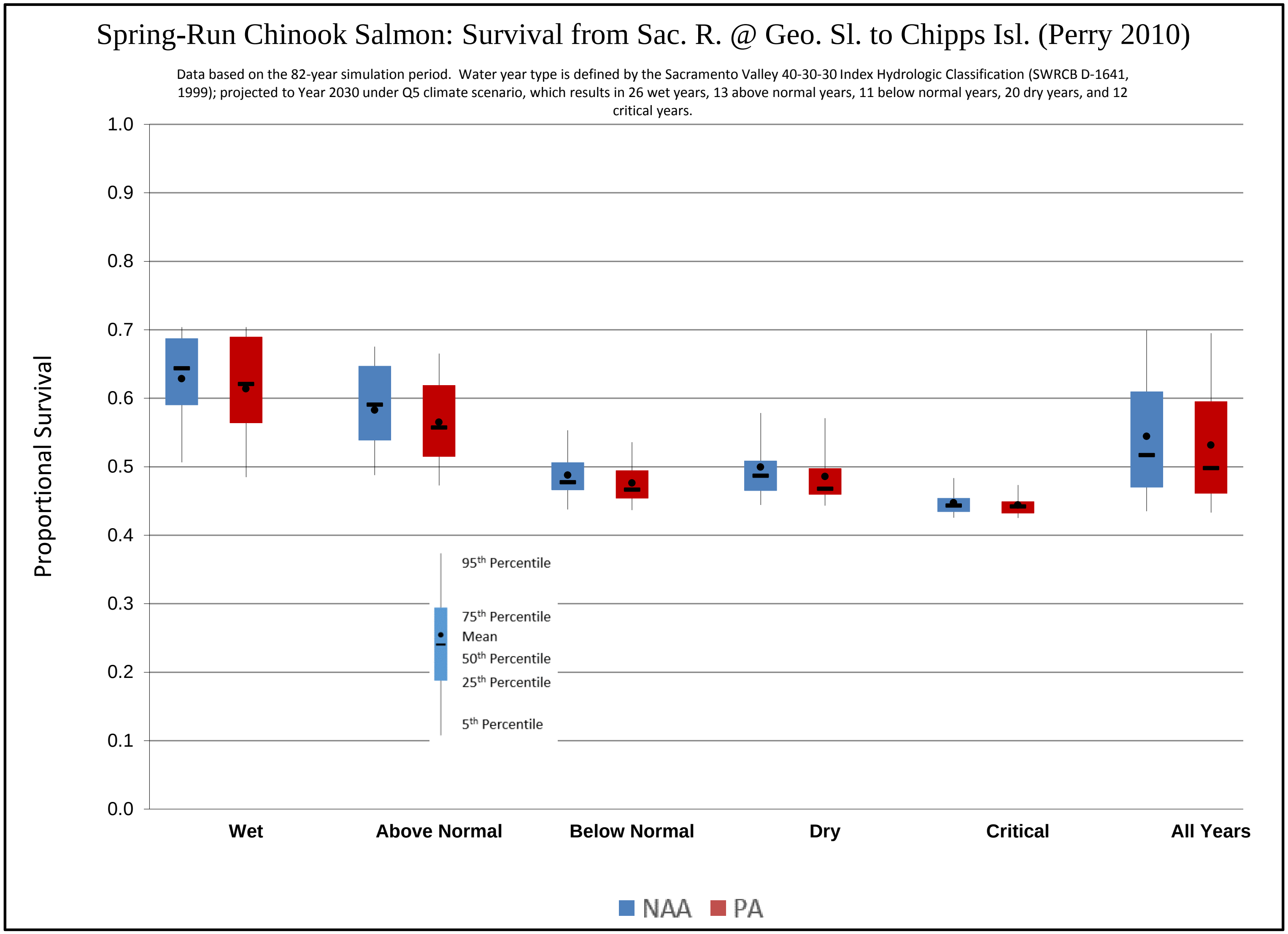
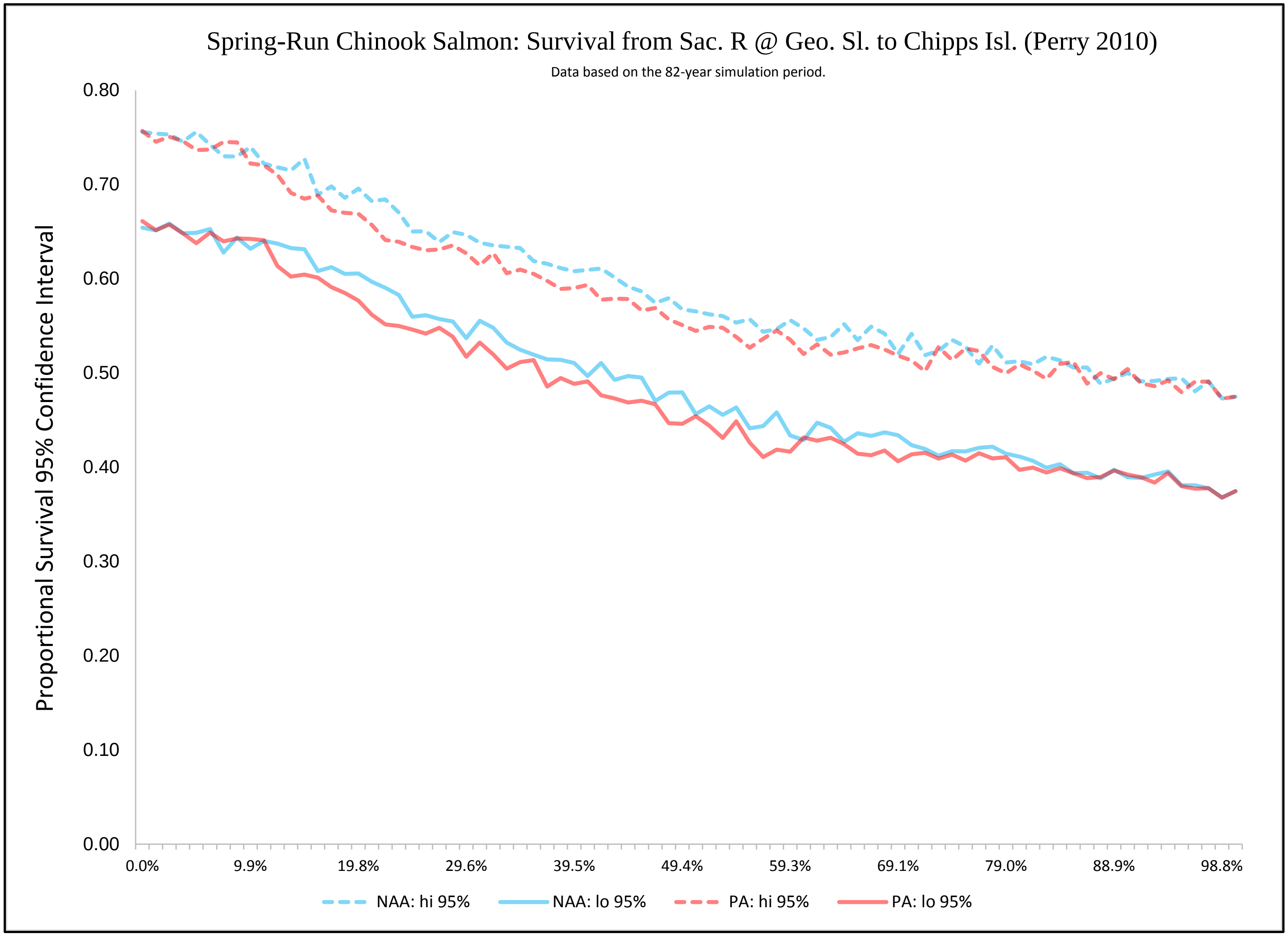


Figure 4.4-10. Box Plots of Juvenile Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Annual Total Survival from the Sacramento River at Georgiana Slough to Chipps Island, Estimated from the Analysis Based on Perry (2010), Grouped by Water Year Type.



Note: Data are sorted by mean estimate, with only 95% confidence intervals shown.

Figure 4.4-11. Exceedance Plot of Juvenile Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Annual Total Survival from the Sacramento River at Georgiana Slough to Chipps Island, Estimated from the Analysis Based on Perry (2010).

Table 4.4-16. Mean Annual Juvenile Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Weighted Survival from the Sacramento River at Georgiana Slough to Chipps Island By Water Year Type, Estimated from the Analysis Based on Perry (2010), Divided into Each NDD Bypass Flow Level.

WY	Pulse protection flows			Level 1 bypass flows			Level 2 bypass flows			Level 3 bypass flows			Total		
	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
W	0.04	0.04	0.00 (0%)	0.12	0.12	0.00 (-4%)	0.06	0.06	0.00 (-3%)	0.39	0.38	-0.01 (-3%)	0.62	0.60	-0.02 (-3%)
AN	0.03	0.03	0.00 (-1%)	0.15	0.15	0.00 (-3%)	0.07	0.07	0.00 (-2%)	0.32	0.31	-0.01 (-4%)	0.57	0.55	-0.02 (-3%)
BN	0.03	0.03	0.00 (0%)	0.25	0.24	-0.01 (-2%)	0.16	0.16	-0.01 (-4%)	0.06	0.05	0.00 (-5%)	0.50	0.48	-0.01 (-3%)
D	0.02	0.02	0.00 (-1%)	0.27	0.27	-0.01 (-3%)	0.16	0.15	0.00 (-3%)	0.04	0.04	0.00 (-6%)	0.49	0.48	-0.01 (-3%)
C	0.02	0.02	0.00 (-2%)	0.39	0.39	-0.01 (-1%)	0.04	0.04	0.00 (-2%)	NA	NA	NA	0.45	0.45	-0.01 (-1%)

Note: Survival for a given flow level is weighted by the proportion of the juvenile population occurring during that flow level. NA indicates there were no level 3 bypass flows in critical years.

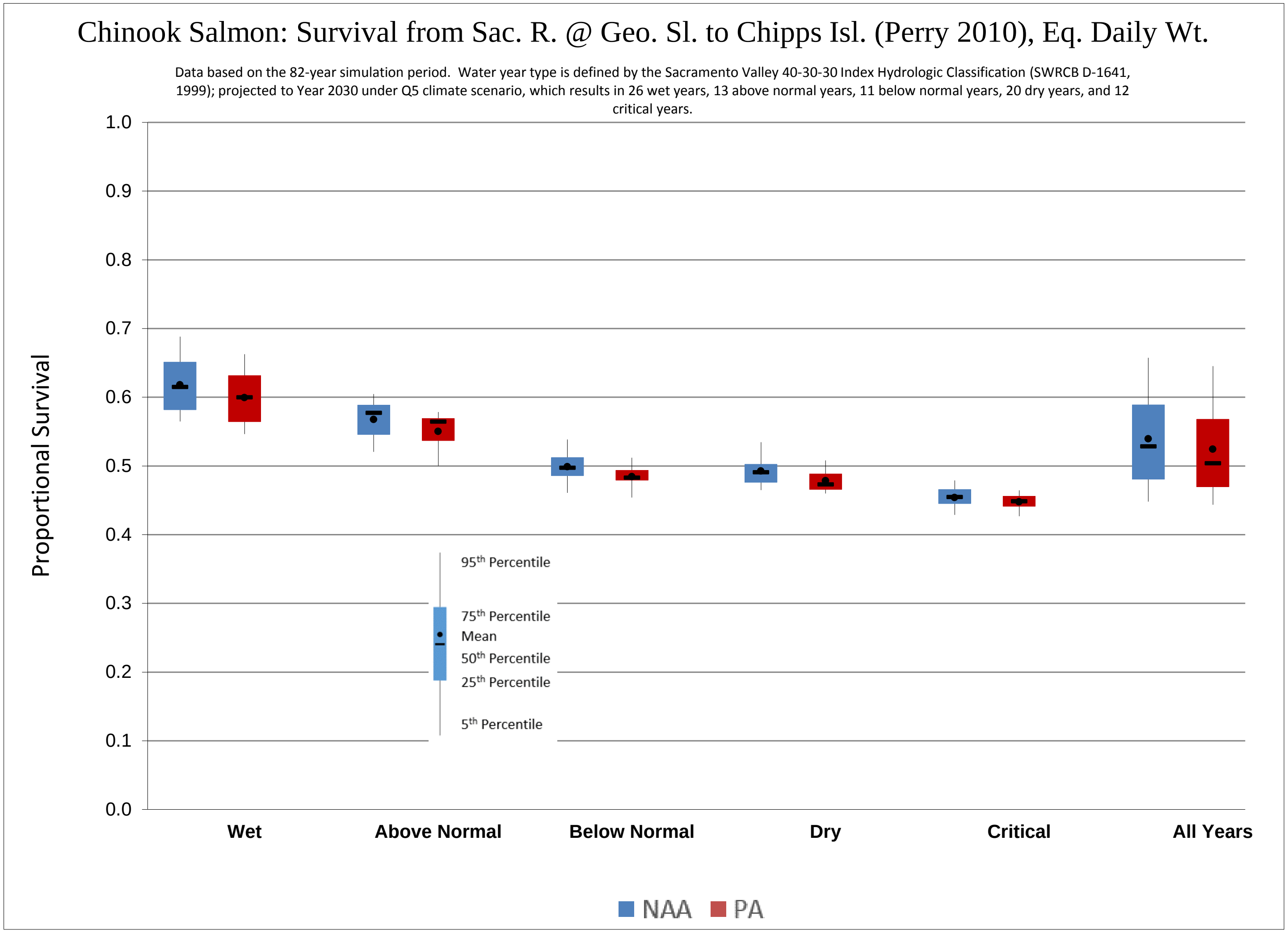


Figure 4.4-12. Box Plots of Juvenile Chinook Salmon Annual Total Survival from the Sacramento River at Georgiana Slough to Chipps Island, Estimated from the Analysis Based on Perry (2010), Grouped by Water Year Type, Assuming Equal Daily Weighting from December to June.

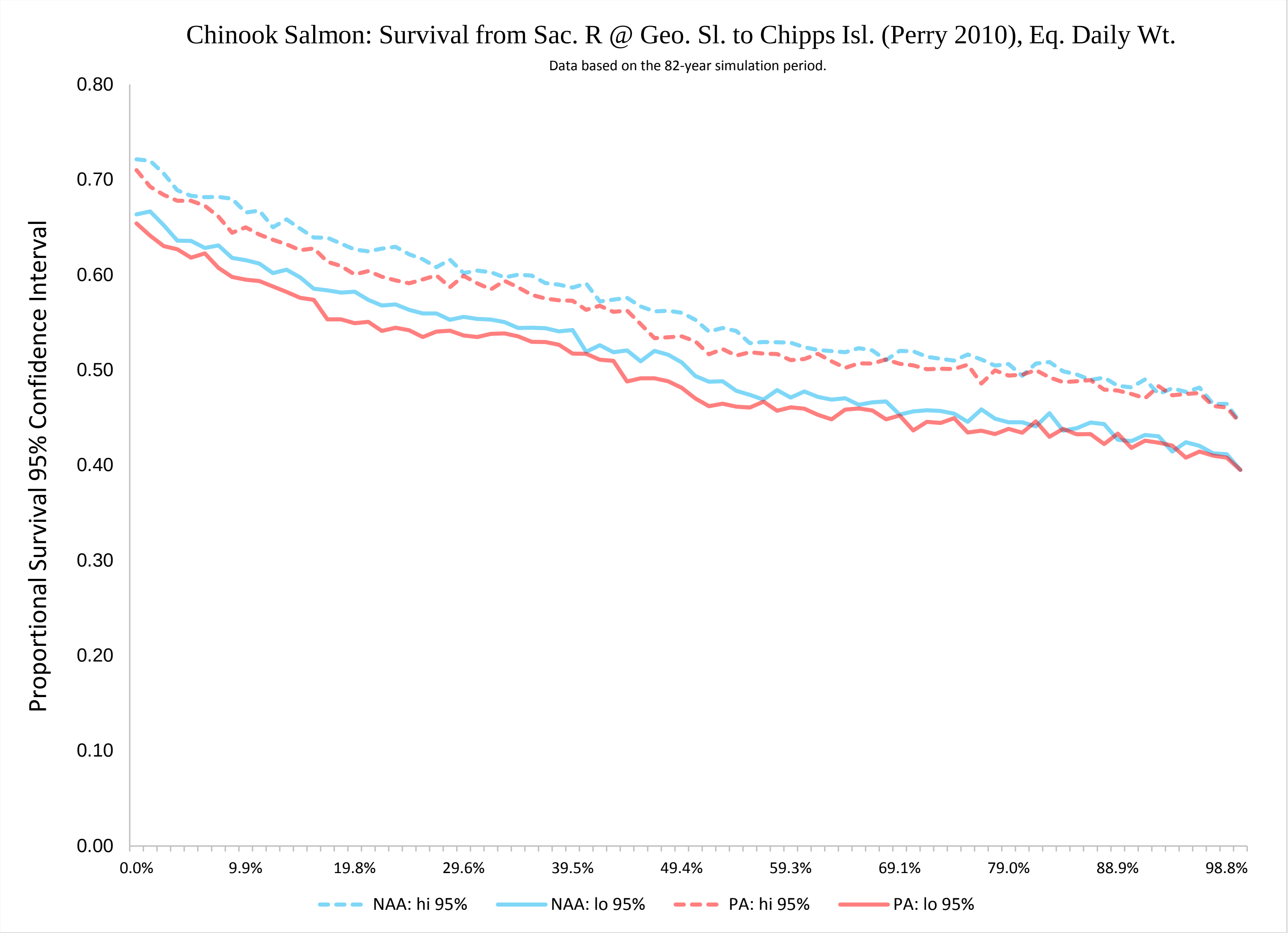


Figure 4.4-13. Exceedance Plot of Juvenile Chinook Salmon Annual Total Survival from the Sacramento River at Georgiana Slough to Chipps Island, Estimated from the Analysis Based on Perry (2010), Assuming Equal Daily Weighting from December to June.

Table 4.4-17. Mean Annual Juvenile Chinook Salmon Weighted Survival from the Sacramento River at Georgiana Slough to Chipps Island By Water Year Type, Estimated from the Analysis Based on Perry (2010), Divided into Each NDD Bypass Flow Level, Assuming Equal Daily Weighting from December to June.

WY	Pulse protection flows			Level 1 bypass flows			Level 2 bypass flows			Level 3 bypass flows			Total		
	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
W	0.04	0.04	0.00 (0%)	0.12	0.12	0.00 (-4%)	0.06	0.06	0.00 (-3%)	0.39	0.38	-0.01 (-3%)	0.62	0.60	-0.02 (-3%)
AN	0.03	0.03	0.00 (-1%)	0.15	0.15	0.00 (-3%)	0.07	0.07	0.00 (-2%)	0.32	0.31	-0.01 (-4%)	0.57	0.55	-0.02 (-3%)
BN	0.03	0.03	0.00 (0%)	0.25	0.24	-0.01 (-2%)	0.16	0.16	-0.01 (-4%)	0.06	0.05	0.00 (-5%)	0.50	0.48	-0.01 (-3%)
D	0.02	0.02	0.00 (-1%)	0.27	0.27	-0.01 (-3%)	0.16	0.15	0.00 (-3%)	0.04	0.04	0.00 (-6%)	0.49	0.48	-0.01 (-3%)
C	0.02	0.02	0.00 (-2%)	0.39	0.39	-0.01 (-1%)	0.04	0.04	0.00 (-2%)	NA	NA	NA	0.45	0.45	-0.01 (-1%)

Note: Survival for a given flow level is weighted by the proportion of the juvenile population occurring during that flow level. NA indicates there were no level 3 bypass flows in critical years.

4.4.4.1.2.2.1.9 SalSim Through-Delta Survival Function

Through-Delta survival for spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin was estimated using the survival function from the Juvenile Delta Module of the Salmon Simulator (SalSim; AD Consultants 2014). Whereas SalSim is a standalone life cycle modeling tool, the coefficients of the survival function from its Delta Module were used in a spreadsheet to compare potential survival differences between NAA and PP. The details of the method as applied for fall-run Chinook salmon are described in the *SalSim Through-Delta Survival Function: Fall-Run Chinook Salmon* subsection of Appendix 5.E., *Essential Fish Habitat*, Section 5.E.5.3.1.2.1.2.1, *Indirect Mortality within the Delta* from ICF International (2016). The DPM timing for spring-run Chinook salmon entering the Delta from the Sacramento River basin was assumed for this analysis to be representative of the timing for entry of San Joaquin River spring-run Chinook salmon.

The results of the analysis based on the SalSim through-Delta survival function suggested that the through-Delta survival of San Joaquin River spring-run Chinook salmon would be greater under the PP than NAA (Figure 5.4-24 and Figure 5.4-25, and Table 5.4-20 in ICF International [2016]). This is the result of the implementation of the HOR gate, which was modeled to be 50% closed during the main period of spring-run Chinook salmon migration, with the result that flow into the Stockton Deepwater Ship Channel is considerably greater under the PP (Table 5.4-20 in ICF International [2016]). The relative differences in survival between NAA and PP were greatest in intermediate water-year types (above normal, below normal, and dry), as a result of two factors. First, the HOR gate would not be closed when Vernalis flow is greater than 10,000 cfs; this results in the top 5% of survival estimates being identical between NAA and PP (Figure 5.4-25 in ICF International [2016]), which limits the overall differences in wet years. Second, in critical years when flows are very low and water temperature would be high, the rate of change in survival is considerably less than with more flow and lower temperature, as shown in the flatness of the flow-survival curve in Appendix 5.E, *Essential Fish Habitat* in ICF International (2016). Overall, the analysis based on the SalSim Juvenile Delta Module survival function suggested that the PP would likely have a positive effect on San Joaquin River spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta.

4.4.4.1.2.2.2 Habitat Suitability

4.4.4.1.2.2.2.1 Bench Inundation

Channel margin habitat in the Delta, and in much of the Sacramento/San Joaquin Rivers in general, has been considerably reduced because of the construction of levees and the armoring of their banks with riprap (Williams 2009). This has reduced the extent of high-value rearing habitat for rearing juvenile Chinook salmon, for such shallow-water habitat provides refuge from unfavorable hydraulic conditions and predation, as well as foraging habitat. Although the benefits of such habitat are most often associated with smaller, rearing individuals (McLain and Castillo 2009; H.T. Harvey & Associates with PRBO Conservation Science 2011), good quality channel margin habitat also functions as holding areas during downstream migration (Burau et al. 2007; Zajanc et al. 2013), thereby improving connectivity between higher value habitats along the migration route. Whereas, historically, riverbank protection from erosion was undertaken with riprap alone, in recent years there has been an emphasis from DWR and USACE to install bank protection that incorporates riparian and wetland benches, as well as other habitat features, to restore habitat function (HT Harvey and PRBO Conservation Science 2011). These benches are shallow areas along the channel margins that have relatively gentle slopes (e.g., 10:1 instead of the customary 3:1) and are designed to be wetted or flooded during certain parts of the year to provide habitat for spring-run Chinook salmon and other species. Wetland benches are at lower elevations where more frequent wetting and inundation may be expected, and riparian benches occupy higher portions of the slope where inundation is restricted to high-flow events. These benches were planted and often secured with riprap or other materials.

4.4.4.1.2.2.2.2 Operational Effects

Several levee improvements projects along the Sacramento River have been implemented by the USACE and others, and have included the restoration of benches intended to be inundated under specific flows during certain months to provide suitable habitat for spring-run Chinook salmon. Restored benches in the north Delta could potentially be affected by the PP because of changes in water level; for example, less water in the Sacramento River below the NDD could result in riparian benches being inundated less frequently. This possibility was examined by calculating bench inundation indices for juvenile Chinook salmon (see detailed method description in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.3.1 *Bench Inundation*). These indices range from 0 (no availability of bench habitat) to 1 (water depth on the bench is optimal for juvenile Chinook salmon all of the time). The analysis was undertaken for a number of riparian and wetland benches in five geographic locations within the north Delta, by linking bench elevation data to DSM2-HYDRO-simulated water surface elevation.

The bench inundation analysis suggested that the effects of changes in water surface elevation caused by PP operations would vary by location and bench type (Table 4.4-18). As noted above, wetland benches are located at lower elevation than riparian benches and are intended to be inundated much of the time; this results in relatively high bench inundation indices in all water year types, and makes them less susceptible to differences in water levels that could be caused by the NDD, as reflected by the small differences between NAA and PP in all locations and water year types. In the Sacramento River above the NDD, the wetland bench inundation indices were greater in drier than wetter years, reflecting the water depth becoming shallower and therefore moving toward the optimum for juvenile Chinook salmon (i.e., 2.2-2.5 feet; see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.1.3.1 *Bench Inundation*).

In contrast to wetland benches, riparian benches are at higher elevations and are intended to be inundated only for portions of winter/spring. Riparian bench inundation indices were higher in wetter years and were smaller in drier years, particularly in spring. Although there were some large *relative* differences in bench inundation indices between NAA and PP (e.g., ~40–90% lower under PP in below normal to critical years in the Sacramento River below the NDD to Sutter/Steamboat sloughs), these differences occurred in drier years when there was little habitat value under either PP or NAA. The greatest differences during the periods when the riparian benches would provide more than minimal habitat value (assumed here, based on best professional judgment, to be a bench inundation index > 0.05[49]) were:

- 29% lower riparian bench inundation index under PP in the Sacramento River from Sutter Steamboat sloughs to Rio Vista in spring of above normal years;
- 24% lower riparian bench inundation index under PP in the Sacramento River below the NDD to Sutter/Steamboat sloughs in spring of above normal years
- 19% lower riparian bench inundation index under PP in Sutter/Steamboat Sloughs in spring of wet years.

Channel margin enhancement would be implemented to offset these deficits, as described in the following section.

This analysis does not include an assessment of the potential effects of the PP on channel margin bench habitat in the project area related to future habitat enhancement projects. If these habitat enhancement projects are implemented, there may be effects from reduced flows downstream of the NDD (as discussed in Section 4.4.4.2.2.2.1) and at that time DWR will work with CDFW and NMFS to identify a means of assessing potential adverse effects found to occur at such features, as a result of the PP. As a result of this analysis, additional CESA compliance, in coordination with potential additional ESA compliance, may be required.

---

[49] A bench inundation index of 0.05 equates to optimal depth (suitability = 1) 5% of the time within a season (with no other inundation occurring); or equates to poor depth (suitability = 0.05) 100% of the time within a season; or in reality, equates to a combination of time and depth between these ranges. It is acknowledged that an index of 0.05 is an arbitrary choice, but one that seemed reasonable.

This page intentionally left blank.

Table 4.4-18. Mean Bench Inundation Index by Location, Bench Type, Water Year Type, and Season, for NAA and PP.

Location	Bench Type (Total Length)	Water Year Type	Winter (December-February)				Spring (March-June)		
			NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA		NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
Cache Slough	Riparian (2,950 ft)	W	0.011	0.010	-0.001 (-6%)		0.003	0.003	0.000 (-9%)
		AN	0.004	0.004	0.000 (-6%)		0.001	0.001	0.000 (-8%)
		BN	0.003	0.003	0.000 (-4%)		0.000	0.000	0.000 (-7%)
		D	0.002	0.002	0.000 (-8%)		0.000	0.000	0.000 (-6%)
		C	0.002	0.002	0.000 (-4%)		0.000	0.000	0.000 (-4%)
	Wetland (3,992 ft)	W	0.232	0.229	-0.003 (-1%)		0.189	0.186	-0.003 (-2%)
		AN	0.202	0.199	-0.003 (-2%)		0.158	0.157	-0.001 (-1%)
		BN	0.181	0.178	-0.002 (-1%)		0.135	0.134	-0.001 (-1%)
		D	0.176	0.173	-0.003 (-2%)		0.139	0.138	-0.001 (-1%)
		C	0.158	0.157	-0.002 (-1%)		0.132	0.132	0.000 (0%)
Sacramento River above NDD	Riparian (18,521 ft)	W	0.170	0.186	0.016 (9%)		0.186	0.180	-0.007 (-4%)
		AN	0.162	0.169	0.007 (4%)		0.105	0.103	-0.001 (-1%)
		BN	0.100	0.100	0.000 (0%)		0.015	0.009	-0.005 (-35%)
		D	0.111	0.112	0.000 (0%)		0.023	0.017	-0.006 (-28%)
		C	0.038	0.038	0.000 (0%)		0.004	0.003	-0.001 (-27%)
	Wetland (3,766 ft)	W	0.360	0.364	0.004 (1%)		0.398	0.412	0.014 (3%)
		AN	0.398	0.396	-0.002 (-1%)		0.471	0.470	0.000 (0%)
		BN	0.447	0.450	0.003 (1%)		0.493	0.492	-0.001 (0%)
		D	0.424	0.429	0.005 (1%)		0.489	0.489	0.000 (0%)
		C	0.475	0.466	-0.009 (-2%)		0.393	0.391	-0.002 (-1%)
Sacramento River below NDD to Sutter/Steamboat Sl.	Riparian (3,037 ft)	W	0.247	0.227	-0.020 (-8%)		0.180	0.142	-0.039 (-21%)
		AN	0.210	0.175	-0.035 (-17%)		0.084	0.064	-0.020 (-24%)
		BN	0.116	0.098	-0.018 (-15%)		0.002	0.000	-0.002 (-77%)
		D	0.144	0.123	-0.020 (-14%)		0.008	0.005	-0.003 (-40%)
		C	0.041	0.036	-0.004 (-11%)		0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%*)
	Wetland (3,115 ft)	W	0.318	0.331	0.013 (4%)		0.357	0.343	-0.014 (-4%)
		AN	0.319	0.322	0.003 (1%)		0.289	0.280	-0.009 (-3%)
		BN	0.281	0.276	-0.006 (-2%)		0.203	0.192	-0.011 (-5%)
		D	0.281	0.278	-0.003 (-1%)		0.212	0.199	-0.014 (-6%)
		C	0.226	0.221	-0.005 (-2%)		0.171	0.168	-0.003 (-2%)
Sacramento River from Sutter/Steamboat Sl. to Rio Vista	Riparian (1,685 ft)	W	0.257	0.219	-0.039 (-15%)		0.171	0.126	-0.045 (-26%)
		AN	0.206	0.159	-0.047 (-23%)		0.075	0.053	-0.022 (-29%)
		BN	0.118	0.092	-0.025 (-22%)		0.002	0.000	-0.001 (-75%)
		D	0.146	0.115	-0.031 (-21%)		0.006	0.004	-0.003 (-43%)
		C	0.044	0.036	-0.008 (-18%)		0.000	0.000	0.000 (0%**)
	Wetland (2,430 ft)	W	0.410	0.421	0.011 (3%)		0.437	0.420	-0.017 (-4%)
		AN	0.412	0.409	-0.003 (-1%)		0.362	0.350	-0.013 (-3%)
		BN	0.361	0.354	-0.007 (-2%)		0.265	0.254	-0.012 (-4%)
		D	0.365	0.360	-0.005 (-1%)		0.276	0.262	-0.014 (-5%)
		C	0.295	0.290	-0.005 (-2%)		0.230	0.226	-0.003 (-1%)
Sutter/Steamboat Sloughs	Riparian (5,235 ft)	W	0.262	0.233	-0.028 (-11%)		0.196	0.159	-0.037 (-19%)
		AN	0.220	0.186	-0.034 (-15%)		0.103	0.085	-0.018 (-17%)
		BN	0.138	0.117	-0.020 (-15%)		0.024	0.021	-0.003 (-12%)
		D	0.160	0.135	-0.025 (-16%)		0.030	0.026	-0.004 (-14%)
		C	0.066	0.059	-0.007 (-11%)		0.019	0.018	-0.001 (-4%)
	Wetland (2,670 ft)	W	0.515	0.528	0.014 (3%)		0.562	0.548	-0.014 (-2%)
		AN	0.528	0.526	-0.001 (0%)		0.499	0.486	-0.013 (-3%)
		BN	0.488	0.482	-0.006 (-1%)		0.401	0.387	-0.014 (-3%)
		D	0.487	0.483	-0.004 (-1%)		0.414	0.397	-0.017 (-4%)
		C	0.420	0.415	-0.005 (-1%)		0.356	0.352	-0.004 (-1%)

Notes: *Value was changed from -92% because absolute change was extremely small. **Value was changed from -80% because absolute change was extremely small.

This page intentionally left blank.

4.4.4.1.2.2.2.3 Channel Margin Enhancement

As described above, PP operations have the potential to reduce riparian bench inundation, which would reduce habitat suitability for juvenile Chinook salmon from the Sacramento River basin. Channel margin enhancement would be undertaken in order to mitigate for the deficits created by PP operations. Channel margin enhancement would be coordinated with NMFS, would occur at sites currently containing poor habitat, and would accommodate the range of water stage elevations necessary to provide appropriate water depth and other habitat features for juvenile Chinook salmon. Additional discussion of channel margin enhancement is provided in Section 4.3.5.1 *Tidal, Channel Margin, and Riparian Habitat Protection and Restoration*.

4.4.4.1.2.2.2.4 Water Temperature (DSM2-QUAL)

Kimmerer (2004: 19-20) noted that the water temperature in the San Francisco Estuary depends mainly on air temperature, and that even in the Delta the relationship between air and water temperature is only slightly affected by freshwater inflow. He further noted that at Freeport high inflow reduces water temperature on cool days, presumably because water reaches the Delta before its temperature equilibrates with air temperature; at Antioch low inflow increases water temperature on cool days, probably because of the moderating effect of warmer estuarine water moving farther upstream. USFWS (2008: 194) suggested, based on Kimmerer (2004) that water temperatures at Freeport can be cooled up to about 3°C by high Sacramento River flows, but only by very high river flows that cannot be sustained by CVP/SWP operations. In general, flow-related effects on Delta water temperature are expected to be minor (Wagner *et al.* 2011). However, operational changes under the PP with respect to less south Delta export pumping and less Sacramento River inflow because of the proposed NDD mean that it is prudent to investigate whether water temperature is expected to differ between the NAA and the PP, and if so, why. DSM2-QUAL modeling was undertaken to examine water temperature differences between NAA and PP scenarios at four locations, in response to requests from NMFS and USFWS for locations with biological relevance to listed fishes based on likely occurrence: Sacramento River at Rio Vista, San Joaquin River at Prisoners Point, Stockton Deep Water Ship Channel, and San Joaquin River at Brandt Bridge. Detailed methods are presented in Attachment 5.B.A.4 of *DSM2 Methods and Results* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.B), and results are presented in Section 5.B.5 of that appendix. In general, DSM2-QUAL modeling suggested that there would be only very slight differences in water temperature between NAA and PP. For the Sacramento River at Rio Vista, water temperature differences were most apparent during July to November (see, for example, the temperature exceedance plots in *DSM2 Methods and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.B, Figure 5.B.5.40-1]). This period is essentially outside the main juvenile migration period for juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon in the Delta. However, the results suggest the greatest difference between NAA and PP scenarios was at the 20% exceedance level, and was ~0.3°C greater under the PP (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.B, Section 5.B.5: Figure 5.B.5.40-1); such differences may not be of biological significance, whereas a difference of 0.5–1°C would be of more importance.

The water temperature results on the San Joaquin River have relevance for spring-run Chinook salmon migrating through the Delta from the San Joaquin River basin. Differences between the NAA and PP scenarios varied by location. At Brandt Bridge, the most upstream station examined (river km 72, i.e., just below the Old River divergence), there was little to no difference in temperature between NAA and PA (see exceedance plots in ICF International [2016] Appendix

5.B, *DSM2 Methods and Results*, Section 5.B.5: Figure 5.B.5.42-1), as would be expected given that the main source of water is the San Joaquin River under both scenarios. At the Stockton Deep Water Ship Channel, differences were apparent from January to June, which may reflect a greater proportion of warmer San Joaquin River water under the PP as a combined result of the presence of the HOR gate and less south Delta exports. The greatest differences occurred in the cold months of January and February, which suggests that there would be little issue for spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin at this time because water temperatures are not limiting in these months. Slightly higher water temperatures during April-June would not be expected to greatly affect juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon, for which temperatures above 19-20°C are above optimal (Moyle et al. 2008). At Prisoners Point, similar patterns to the Stockton Deep Water Ship Channel were evident for January to April, whereas in May and June, there was little difference between the NAA and PP, which is more similar to the pattern at Rio Vista and reflects general warming and a lesser influence of operations on water temperature with movement downstream. In general it is expected that air temperature is the main driver on water temperature in the Delta, as shown by detailed temperature modeling that does not include the effects of flow and has higher correspondence with observed temperatures than DSM2-QUAL estimates (Wagner et al. 2011)

4.4.4.1.2.2.2.5 Selenium

The increase in the proportion of San Joaquin River water entering the Delta because of less south Delta exports under the PP would be expected to increase the selenium concentration in Delta water. However, the analyses of potential effects on trophic level 3 species, which are representative of juvenile salmonids, showed essentially no difference between PP and NAA scenarios in particulate, invertebrate, or whole-body estimates of selenium concentration (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.F *Selenium Analysis*). Therefore, there would be no adverse effect of the PP in terms of selenium on salmonids. Therefore, the PP is not likely to increase exposure of salmonids to selenium toxicity.

4.4.4.1.2.2.2.6 Olfactory Cues for Upstream Migration

Attraction flows and the importance of olfactory cues to adult Chinook salmon were well described by Marston et al. (2012):

> Chinook salmon rely primarily on olfactory cues to successfully migrate through the Delta’s maze of waterways to home back to their natal river (Groves et al. 1968; Mesick 2001). Juvenile salmon imprint by acquiring a series of chemical waypoints at every major confluence that enables them to relocate their river of origin (Quinn 1997 ; Williams 2006).

Marston et al. (2012) used recoveries of coded-wire tags from hatchery-origin Chinook salmon to estimate stray rates of adults. Fish released further upstream in-river had considerably lower straying rates than fish released downstream (including in San Francisco Bay) presumably because the fish released downstream had imprinted on fewer waypoints. For the Sacramento River, the stray rate for fish released upstream of the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers was very low (average 0.1%, range 0 to 6.7%; Marston et al. 2012 [Methods Appendix:10])—If this rate is representative of wild populations spawned upstream, then it suggests a very low rate of straying for fish emigrating from natal tributaries in the Sacramento

River basin with the existing flows through the Delta. As noted by Marston et al. (2012:18), Quinn (1997) suggested that background levels of straying for hatchery-origin salmon are 2 to 5%, although few studies have been conducted on wild-origin Chinook salmon; one such study for wild-origin Mokelumne River Chinook salmon—albeit a population with appreciable hatchery influence—reported a stray rate of over 7% (Williams 2006).

Sacramento River flows downstream of the proposed NDD generally would be lower under PP operations relative to NAA, with differences between water-year types because of differences in the relative proportion of water being exported from the NDD and south Delta export facilities. As assessed by DSM2-QUAL fingerprinting analysis, the average percentage of Sacramento River–origin water at Collinsville, where the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers converge in the west Delta, was estimated to be always slightly lower under PP than NAA (Table 4.4-19). However, during the fall/winter/spring periods of interest for upstream migrating salmonids, Sacramento River water formed the majority of water in the confluence area. In any case, the reductions in percentage of Sacramento River water resulting from the PP were consistently less than 20% (absolute value), which, in experiments with adult sockeye salmon, was the lowest level of dilution of homestream water with water from a different stream that the sockeye salmon first detected and behaviorally responded to (Fretwell 1989). Therefore, it is concluded that there would be little effect from changes in olfactory cues for upstream migrating adult spring-run Chinook salmon from the Sacramento River basin.

Less use of the south Delta export facilities under the PA would result in a greater amount of San Joaquin River reaching the confluence area (Table 5.4-23 in ICF International [2016]), which may increase the olfactory cues available for upstream migrating adult spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin. As shown by Marston et al. (2012), relatively small changes in the ratio of south Delta exports to San Joaquin River inflow may affect the straying rate of upstream migrating adult fall-run Chinook salmon[50]. The several-fold increase in San Joaquin River flow reaching the confluence area under the PA (Table 5.4-23 in ICF International [2016]) has the potential to improve homing of adult salmonids, including spring-run Chinook salmon, to the San Joaquin River basin.

---

[50] There is uncertainty in the relative or combined importance of San Joaquin River flow and south Delta exports explaining straying rates better (Marston et al. 2012); as noted by Marston et al. (2012), statistically speaking, the results of their analysis suggested San Joaquin River flows were more important than south Delta exports (with the latter not being statistically significant at $P < 0.05$), but because little if any pulse flow leaves the Delta when south Delta exports are elevated, exports in combination with pulse flow may be of importance.

Table 4.4-19. Mean Percentage of Water at Collinsville Originating in the Sacramento River, from DSM2-QUAL Fingerprinting

Month	Wet				Above Normal				Below Normal				Dry				Critical		
	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA		NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA		NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA		NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA		NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
Jan	71.8	71.4	0 (0%)		71.7	70.5	-1 (-2%)		72.8	70.7	-2 (-3%)		72.3	69.4	-3 (-4%)		71.9	71.3	-1 (-1%)
Feb	65.4	59.1	-6 (-11%)		74.4	69.2	-5 (-8%)		80.6	76.2	-4 (-6%)		81.0	78.7	-2 (-3%)		80.1	78.6	-1 (-2%)
Mar	69.2	58.9	-10 (-17%)		77.6	69.1	-9 (-12%)		83.4	76.6	-7 (-9%)		82.1	76.9	-5 (-7%)		80.7	78.4	-2 (-3%)
Apr	70.7	63.0	-8 (-12%)		79.0	70.0	-9 (-13%)		81.9	76.5	-5 (-7%)		81.4	77.5	-4 (-5%)		77.0	75.4	-2 (-2%)
May	73.8	67.3	-6 (-10%)		75.2	68.4	-7 (-10%)		74.5	70.7	-4 (-5%)		73.9	71.8	-2 (-3%)		68.4	66.8	-2 (-2%)
Jun	71.7	60.2	-11 (-19%)		67.4	60.1	-7 (-12%)		67.2	64.0	-3 (-5%)		68.7	66.0	-3 (-4%)		60.4	59.0	-1 (-2%)
Jul	74.3	59.8	-14 (-24%)		75.8	63.2	-13 (-20%)		73.1	63.7	-9 (-15%)		62.3	57.7	-5 (-8%)		54.3	52.3	-2 (-4%)
Aug	67.0	56.3	-11 (-19%)		71.3	62.9	-8 (-13%)		68.5	61.0	-7 (-12%)		60.3	55.4	-5 (-9%)		51.2	48.6	-3 (-5%)
Sep	88.9	83.6	-5 (-6%)		79.8	76.6	-3 (-4%)		58.5	51.0	-8 (-15%)		53.6	48.7	-5 (-10%)		48.9	46.8	-2 (-4%)
Oct	86.6	80.9	-6 (-7%)		76.1	75.0	-1 (-1%)		53.4	56.9	4 (6%)		50.1	54.7	5 (8%)		42.8	46.5	4 (8%)
Nov	86.0	73.7	-12 (-17%)		76.5	70.1	-6 (-9%)		57.6	57.9	0 (0%)		56.4	57.9	1 (3%)		41.4	43.9	3 (6%)
Dec	77.1	70.7	-6 (-9%)		75.5	69.3	-6 (-9%)		67.7	65.0	-3 (-4%)		67.6	65.6	-2 (-3%)		59.4	57.5	-2 (-3%)

4.4.4.1.2.2.2.7 Microcystis

The toxic blue-green alga *Microcystis* has been shown to have negative effects on the aquatic foodweb of the Delta (Brooks et al. 2012), principally in the south Delta and the middle to upper portions of the west/central Delta near locations such as Collinsville, Antioch, and Franks Tract (Lehman et al. 2010). *Microcystis* blooms generally occur from June to October, when water temperature is at least 19°C (Lehman et al. 2013). Lehman et al. (2013) suggested that streamflow is probably the most important factor maintaining *Microcystis* blooms, with longer residence times allowing the slow-growing colonies to accumulate into blooms. The summer/fall timing of *Microcystis* generally would be expected to avoid the period of occurrence of juvenile and adult spring-run Chinook salmon. *Microcystis* could, however, coincide with the occurrence of upstream-migrating adult salmonids, particularly those returning to the San Joaquin River basin that pass through the channels in the south Delta, where *Microcystis* is often abundant (Lehman et al. 2013). Quantitative analyses presented in detail for Delta Smelt in Section 6.1.3.5.5, *Microcystis*, showed that, based on analysis of flow in the lower San Joaquin River, conditions may be less favorable for *Microcystis* under the PP because of less south Delta exports and greater San Joaquin River flow past Jersey Point (QWEST). However, there are portions of the south Delta where residence time would be greater under the PP, which could give greater potential for *Microcystis* occurrence under the PP, although there has been no detailed study of *Microcystis* occurrence specifically in relation to residence time. Adult salmonids may be migrating through the Delta toward natal tributaries somewhat rapidly and without feeding, so the potential for ingestion of contaminated prey over longer periods would be limited; there is evidence that ingestion of prey contaminated by *Microcystis* can have effects on fish within the Delta (Lehman et al. 2010). Laboratory exposure of yearling rainbow trout to water containing *Microcystis* cell concentrations representative of bloom conditions did not give lethal effects or evidence of liver damage, suggesting that there is negligible entry of toxins through the gills or skin (Tencalla et al. 1994); however, it is possible for the toxins to enter fish guts passively during swimming (De Magalthaes et al. 2001, as cited by Lehman et al. 2010). Overall, this analysis suggests that is unlikely that there would be adverse effects to salmonids from changes in *Microcystis* under the PP relative to the NAA. Under the assumption that the migration timing of San Joaquin River spring-run Chinook salmon is similar to that of Sacramento River basin spring-run, this suggests that most individuals would occur in the Delta during winter/spring and therefore would avoid the season of *Microcystis* occurrence. However, yearling juveniles migrating downstream could occur in the fall and therefore have some overlap with *Microcystis*. The risk to yearling San Joaquin River spring-run Chinook salmon associated with the mixed effects of the PP on *Microcystis*, including potential greater occurrence of *Microcystis* in some areas, is uncertain. As described in ICF International (2016) Section 6.1.3.5.5.5.2 *Population-Level Effects* for Delta Smelt, there is potential to mitigate effects on *Microcystis* through preferential south Delta export pumping: the modeling currently assumes that in the summer months (July–September), the first 3,000 cfs of exports would be from the south Delta, with any additional allowable exports able to be diverted from either the north or the south Delta; it would be possible to shift to additional south Delta pumping as opposed to north Delta pumping in order to reduce water residence time, for example. Subsequent monitoring will confirm to what extent the yearling life history trait occurs for San Joaquin River basin spring-run Chinook salmon.

4.4.4.2 Upstream Hydrologic Changes

For purposes of this analysis, "upstream" refers to waterways upstream of the legal Delta where flows, reservoir storage, and water temperatures and, as a result, spring-run Chinook salmon may be affected by implementation of the PP. Therefore, this section assesses potential effects on spring-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento River and its tributaries upstream of the Delta. However, as noted in Chapter 3, this assessment does not include effects on spring-run Chinook salmon in the Feather River because the Oroville Complex (Oroville Dam and related facilities, including the Feather River Fish Hatchery) are not part of the Proposed project (PP). The effects of the Oroville Complex are considered in a separate and ongoing NMFS consultation related to FERC licensing of the Oroville facility. The potential effects on Chinook salmon in the Delta resulting from the PP are described in Section 4.3.4.1 *Proposed Delta Exports and Related Hydrodynamics*.

A preliminary screening analysis was conducted using model outputs of exceedance plots and mean reservoir storage, monthly flows, and water temperatures, where available, in the Trinity, Sacramento, American, San Joaquin, and Stanislaus Rivers and Clear Creek to determine whether modeled flows, storage, and water temperatures in any of these waterways would be clearly not affected by the PP and, therefore, no further analyses of effects on spring-run Chinook salmon would be necessary in the waterway.

Results of this preliminary analysis indicated that there would be no effect of the PP on operations in the Trinity, San Joaquin, and Stanislaus Rivers and on Clear Creek (*Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results* [ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.C]). Accordingly, it was concluded that these areas are not part of the project area. This preliminary analysis indicates that there is the potential for changes in reservoir operations, instream flows, and water temperatures in the Sacramento River and American River. Spring-run Chinook salmon, however, do not occur in the American River. Therefore, the analysis of potential effects is described here for the Sacramento River only.

4.4.4.2.1 Sacramento River

4.4.4.2.1.1 Overview

The PP could cause changes in cold-water pool storage in Shasta Reservoir and in operations of Shasta Dam, which could cause changes to instream flows and water temperatures in the Sacramento River. Changes under the PP in the magnitude, duration, frequency, timing, and rate of change of flows in the Sacramento River can all affect habitat characteristics of the life stages of spring- run Chinook salmon.

For spawning, egg incubation, and alevins, this analysis evaluates flow-related effects on weighted usable area (WUA) of spawning habitat, redd dewatering, and redd scour. Changes in flow rates can affect the amount of WUA of spawning habitat, which is characterized by velocity, depth, and substrate type (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2003b, 2005a, 2006). Redd dewatering occurs when flows are reduced while eggs and alevins are still in the gravel after a spawning event (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2006). Redd scour and entombment can occur when flood flows are of a high enough magnitude to mobilize the gravel, although attempts are made to spread out flood control releases when possible.

For fry and juveniles, this analysis evaluates flow-related effects on WUA of rearing habitat and juvenile stranding. Changes in flow rates can affect the amount of WUA of rearing habitat, which is characterized by velocity, depth, and substrate type (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2005b). Juvenile stranding can occur when flows are reduced rapidly and individuals are unable to escape an area that becomes isolated from the main channel or dewatered, often leading to mortality (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2006). *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D), provides detail on the methods used to evaluate flow effects of the PP.

As cold-water species, salmonids are sensitive to water temperatures. Changes to water temperatures may influence the suitability of habitat for each life stage present in the Sacramento River and can lead to sublethal impairments that include reduced growth, inhibited smoltification, altered migration, disease, and ultimately death. ICF International (2016, Appendix 5.D) provides detail on the methods used to evaluate water temperature effects of the PP.

4.4.4.2.1.2 Assess Species Exposure

Implementation of the PP has the potential to expose spring-run Chinook salmon to different flows and water temperatures than those predicted to occur under the NAA throughout their presence in the Sacramento River upstream of the Delta. Table 4.4-20 presents the timing of the upstream presence of each life stage for spring-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento River upstream of the Delta.

Table 4.4-20. Temporal Occurrence of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon by Life Stage, Sacramento River Upstream of the Delta.

Life Stage	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Spawning, egg incubation, and alevins[1]								▨	■	■	▨	░
Fry and Juvenile rearing[2]	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	▨	■	■
Juvenile emigration[3]	▨	░	▨	■	▨					■	■	■
Adult immigration[4]			▨	▨	■	■	▨	▨	░			
Adult holding[5]				▨	■	■	■	■	░			

	■	High	▨	Med	░	Low

Sources: [1] Moyle 2002; CDFW aerial redd surveys; [2] Snider and Titus 2000; Poytress et al 2014; [3] California Department of Fish and Game 1998, Snider and Titus 2000; Poytress et al 2014; specific to Red Bluff Diversion Dam;[4] Yoshiyama et al. 1998, Moyle 2002; [5] Inferred based on timing of adjacent life stages

Spring-run Chinook salmon may spawn in the Sacramento River between RBDD and Keswick Dam in very low densities with only a total of 449 redds documented from 2001 through 2014 (average 35/year; range= 0-105; no data available for 2009 or 2011) in CDFW aerial redd surveys. Eggs and alevins remain in the gravel primarily between August and December, with a peak between September and October. The vast majority (more than 91%) of spawning between 2003 and 2014 occurred upstream of Battle Creek (River Mile 272; Table 4.4-21).

Table 4.4-21. Spatial Distribution of Spawning Redds in the Sacramento River Based on Aerial Redd Surveys, Spring-Run Chinook Salmon, 2003–2014 (Source: CDFW)

Reach	Mean Annual Percent of Total Redds Sighted
Keswick Dam to ACID Dam	12.4
ACID Dam to Highway 44 Bridge	32.8
Highway 44 Bridge to Airport Road Bridge	27.7
Airport Road Bridge to Balls Ferry Bridge	10.9
Balls Ferry Bridge to Battle Creek	7.3
Battle Creek to Jelly's Ferry Bridge	1.5
Jelly's Ferry Bridge to Bend Bridge	2.6
Bend Bridge to Red Bluff Diversion Dam	0.8
Downstream of Red Bluff Diversion Dam	4.1

ACID = Anderson-Cottonwood Irrigation District

Juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon rear in the Sacramento River year-round, with a peak between November and December. Fry and juvenile rearing occur from Keswick to the Delta. Juveniles begin moving downstream towards the ocean beginning in October and continue until May, with peak migration periods of April and October through December. The peak of spring-run juvenile emigration at Knights Landing is February through May (Snider and Titus 2000), although this is not reflected in Table 4.4-20.

Adult spring-run Chinook salmon migrate upstream primarily as early as March with a peak between May and June. Temperatures in the mainstem and Delta are likely too warm for migrating salmon by summer, although holding spring-run Chinook likely hold and move throughout the upper Sacramento once they have ascended the river. Adults display these behaviors from approximately April through September until they spawn in September. It is uncertain how late into summer spring-run Chinook salmon migrate into the Sacramento River. On tributaries, typically spring-run Chinook salmon cannot ascend to cooler water later than May or early June. On the Feather River, hatchery spring run Chinook salmon are identified as fish entering the ladder no later than June. While Red Bluff Diversion Dam once blocked spring-run Chinook passage and significantly delay migration of spring run Chinook such that they passed throughout the summer, this broad migration pattern is likely not natural given spring-run Chinook migration patterns from Northern Valley tributaries and the Feather River.

4.4.4.2.1.2.1 Assess Species Response to the Proposed Project

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.1 Spawning, Egg Incubation, and Alevins

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.1.1 Flow-Related Effects

Mean monthly flow rates and reservoir storage volumes were examined for the PP and NAA during the August through December spawning and incubation period, with peak occurrence during September and October, for spring-run Chinook salmon (Table 4.4-20). Changes in flow can affect the instream area available for spawning and egg incubation, along with the quality of the habitat, and can result in dewatering or scour of the redds. Shasta Reservoir storage volume at the end of September influences flow rates below the dam during much of the spring-run spawning and egg incubation period. Mean Shasta September storage under the PP would be similar (less than 5% difference) to storage under NAA for all water year types, except for 7% higher mean storage during critical water years under the PP (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results*, Table 5.A.6-3). Mean flow due to the PP at the Keswick Dam and Red Bluff locations in the Sacramento River would be lower than flow under the NAA during November of all except critical water year types, with 26% lower flows under the PP than under the NAA for wet and above normal water year types at Keswick Dam and 21% lower flows at Red Bluff (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results*, Table 5.A.6-10 and Table 5.A.635). During the majority of the remaining months and water year types of the spawning period, changes in mean flow would be insignificant (less than 5% difference). However, flows under the PP would be 10% lower in August of below normal water years, up to 11% lower in September of above normal and below normal water year types, and up to 11% lower in October of wet years. Flows under the PP in October of below normal year types and November of critical years would be up to 17% greater than flows under the NAA (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results*, Table 5.A.6-10 and Table 5.A.6-35). During the September and October peak spring-run spawning period, flow reductions would be greater than 5% for several water year types. The results given here indicate that the PP would reduce flow in some months and water year types, although this does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5, *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta*, and Section 3.3.3, *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process*, that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects. Further discussion regarding flow-related effects during the June through November period is provided in Section 4.3.4.2.2, *Summary of Upstream Effects*.

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.1.2 Spawning WUA

Because, as described in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.2 *Spawning Flows Methods*), spawning habitat for spring-run Chinook salmon was not estimated directly by USFWS (2003b, 2006) and no spring-run Chinook salmon WUA curves are provided, spring-run Chinook salmon spawning habitat was modeled using the WUA curves provided for fall-run Chinook salmon. The spawning WUA curves for fall-run Chinook salmon were used because the spawning and incubation period of fall-run is similar to that of spring-run, and because this substitution follows previous practice (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.3 *Rearing Flows Methods*). However, as noted by USFWS (2003a), the validity of using the fall-run WUA curves to characterize spring-run spawning habitat is uncertain. To evaluate the effects of the PP on spring-run spawning habitat, spring-run spawning WUA was estimated for flows during the August through December spawning period under the NAA and the PP in Segment 4 (Battle Creek to the confluence with Cow Creek), Segment 5 (Cow Creek to the A.C.I.D. Dam), and Segment 6 (A.C.I.D. Dam to Keswick Dam). According to the CDFW aerial surveys (Table 4.4-22), about 12% of spring-run redds occur within Segment 6, over 60% are found within Segment 5, and over 7% are in Segment 4.

Differences in spring-run spawning WUA under the PP and NAA were examined using exceedance plots of monthly mean WUA for the spring-run spawning period in each of the river segments for each water year type and all water year types combined (Figure 4.4-14 through Figure 4.4-31).

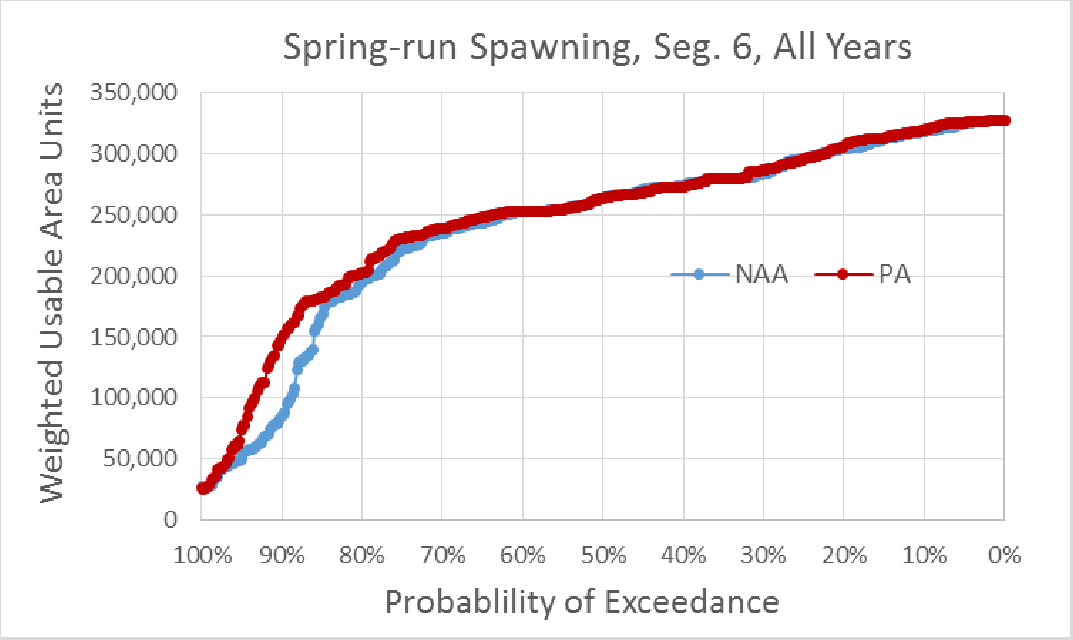


Figure 4.4-14. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, All Water Years

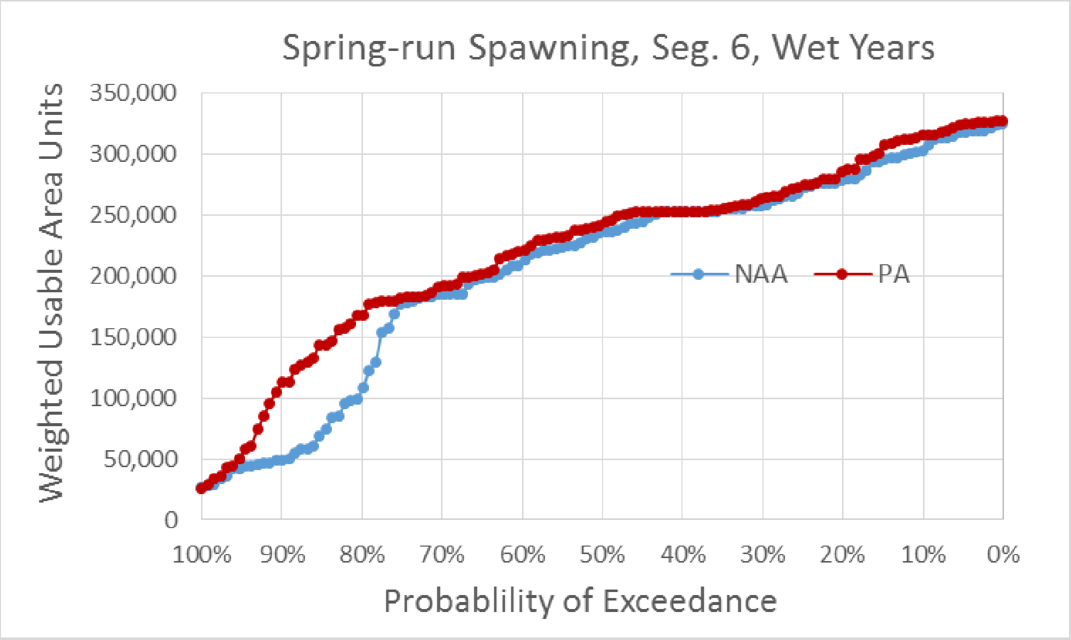


Figure 4.4-15. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Wet Water Years

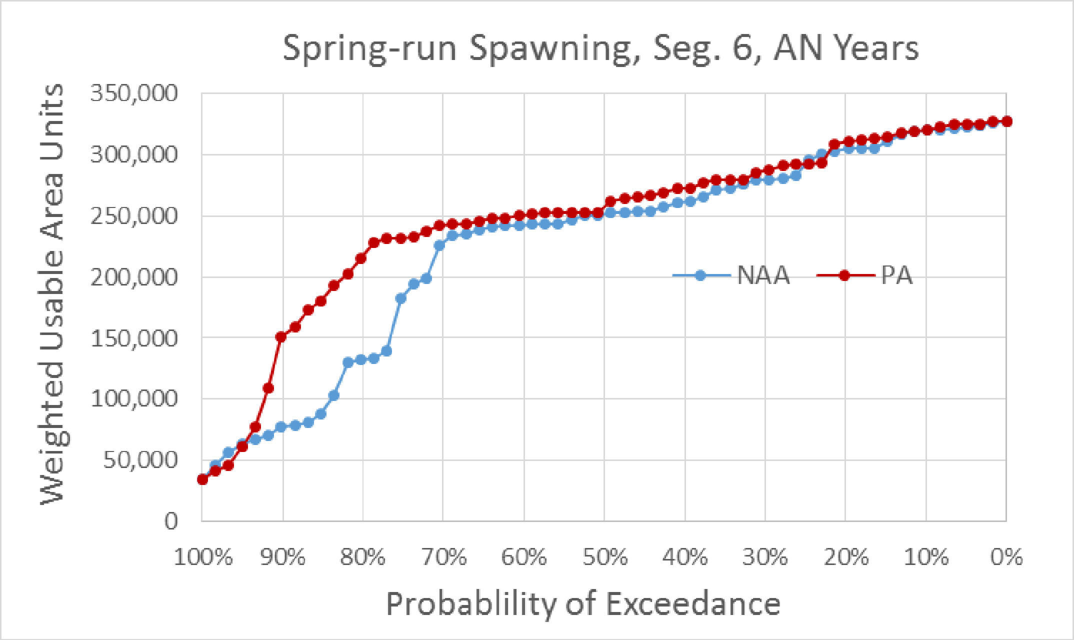


Figure 4.4-16. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Above Normal Water Years

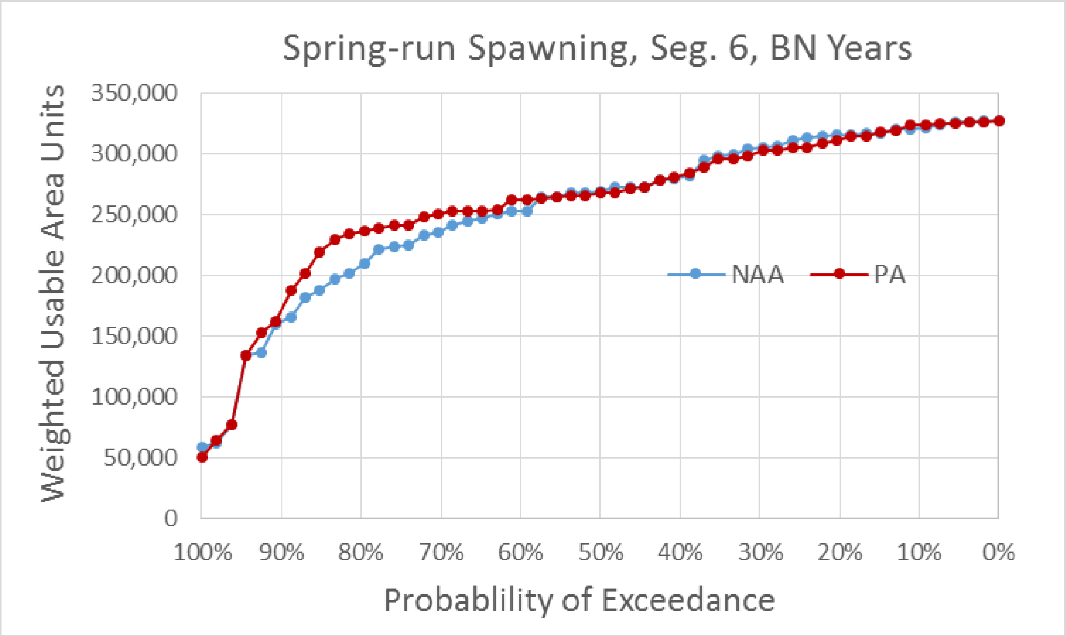


Figure 4.4-17. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Below Normal Water Years

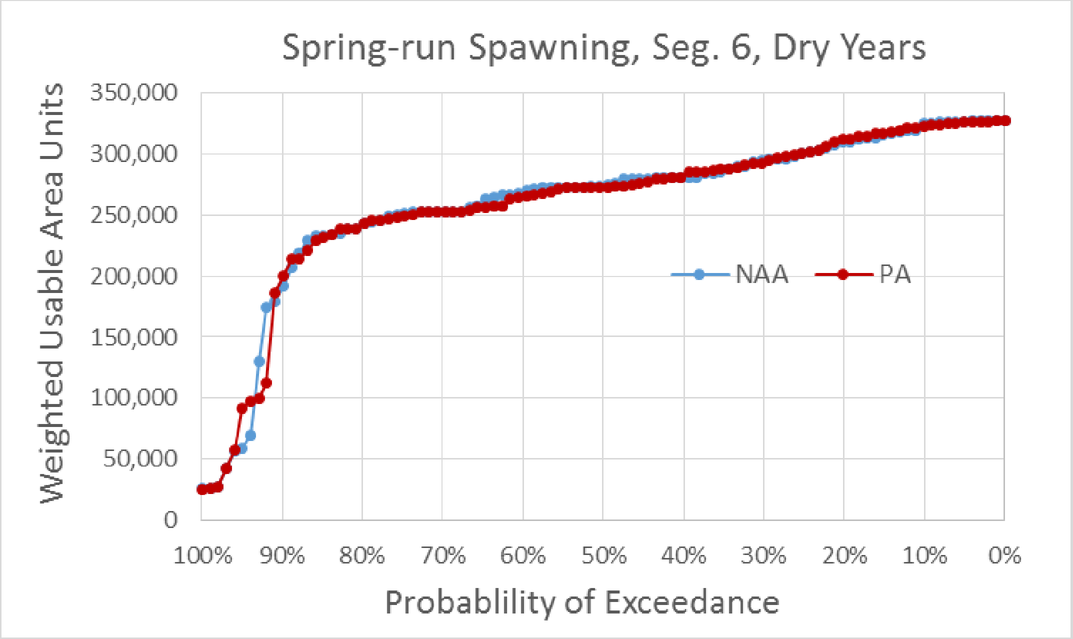


Figure 4.4-18. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Dry Water Years

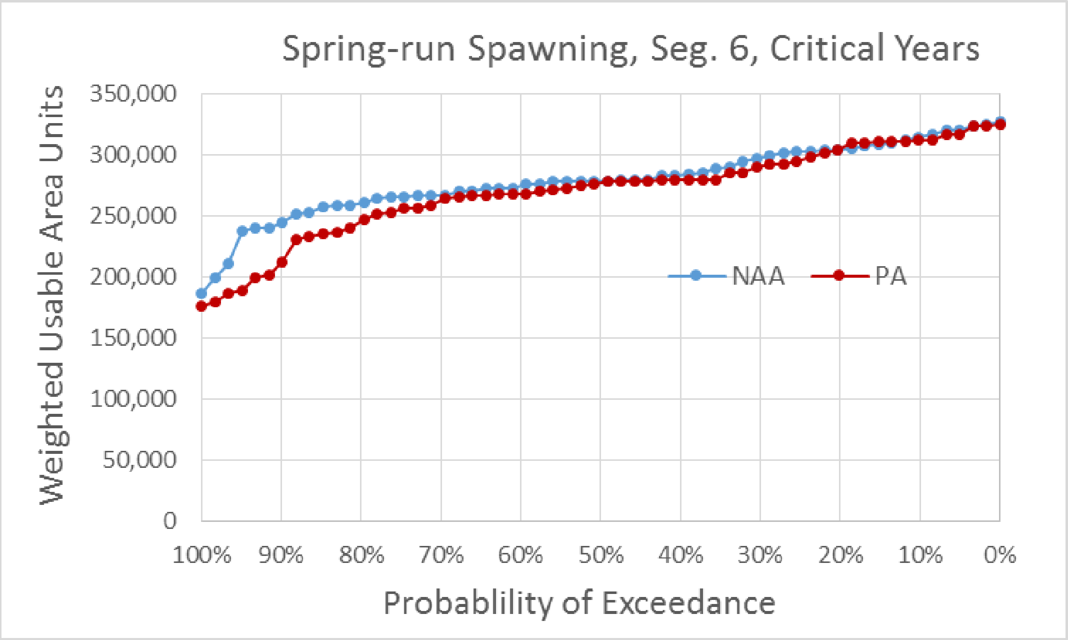


Figure 4.4-19. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Critical Water Years

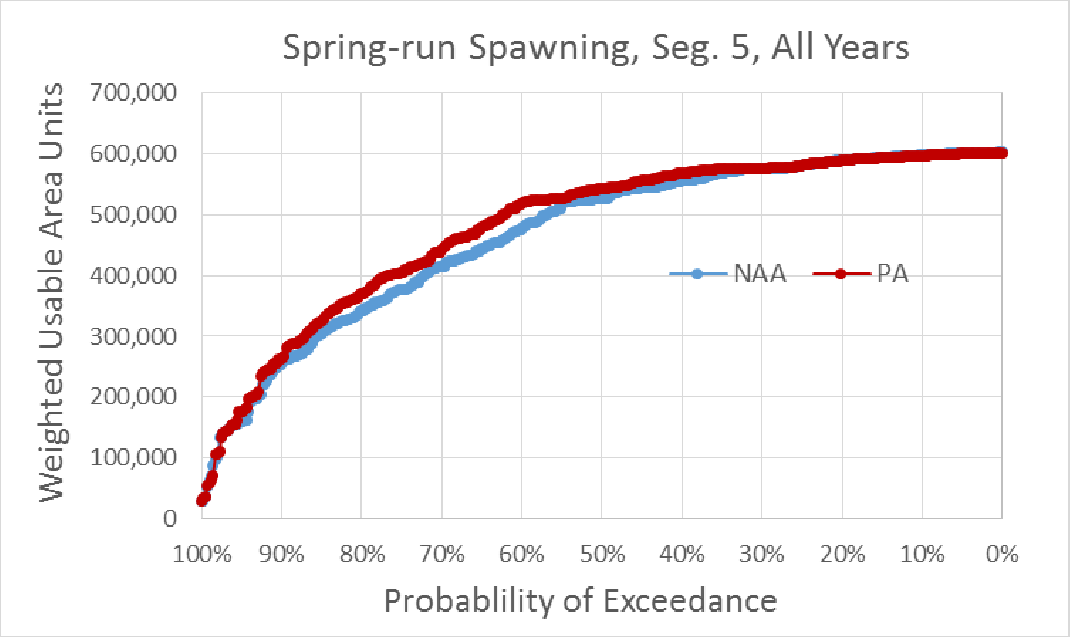


Figure 4.4-20. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, All Water Years

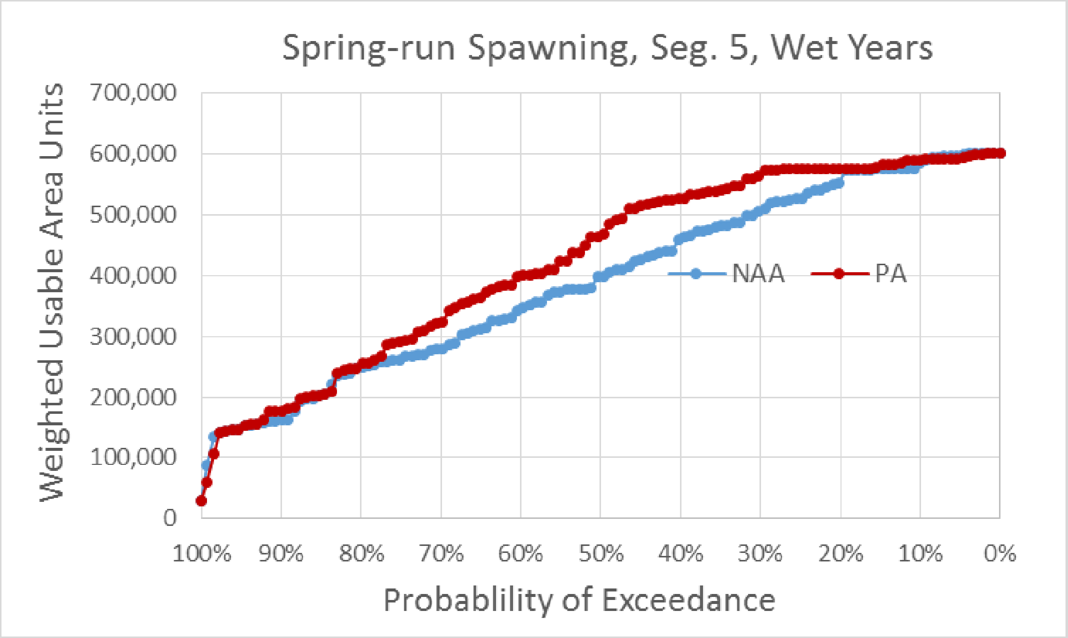


Figure 4.4-21. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Wet Water Years

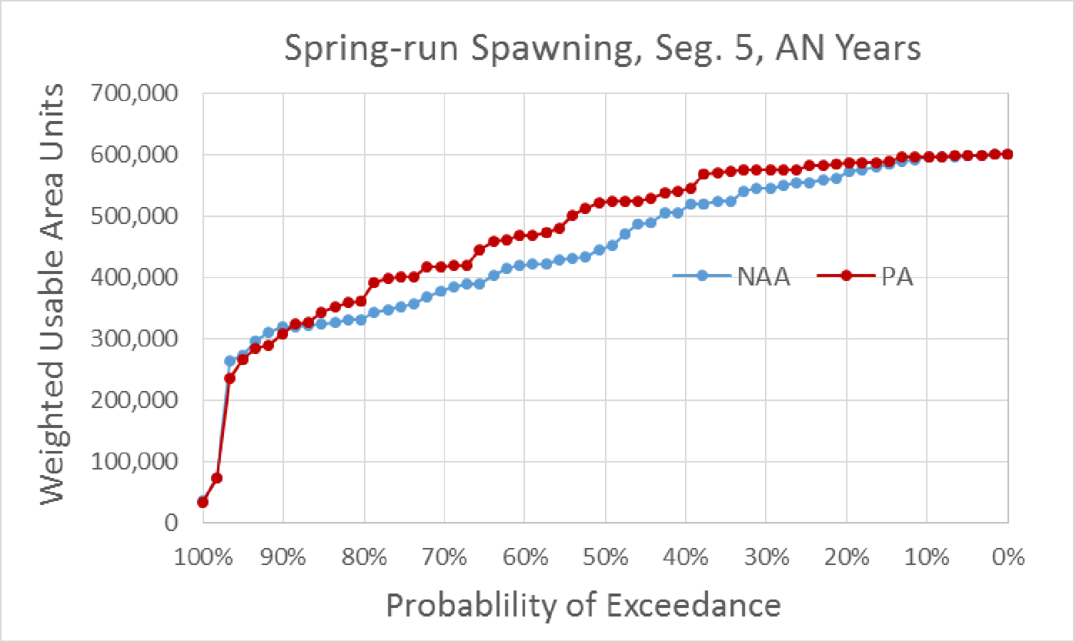


Figure 4.4-22. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Above Normal Water Years

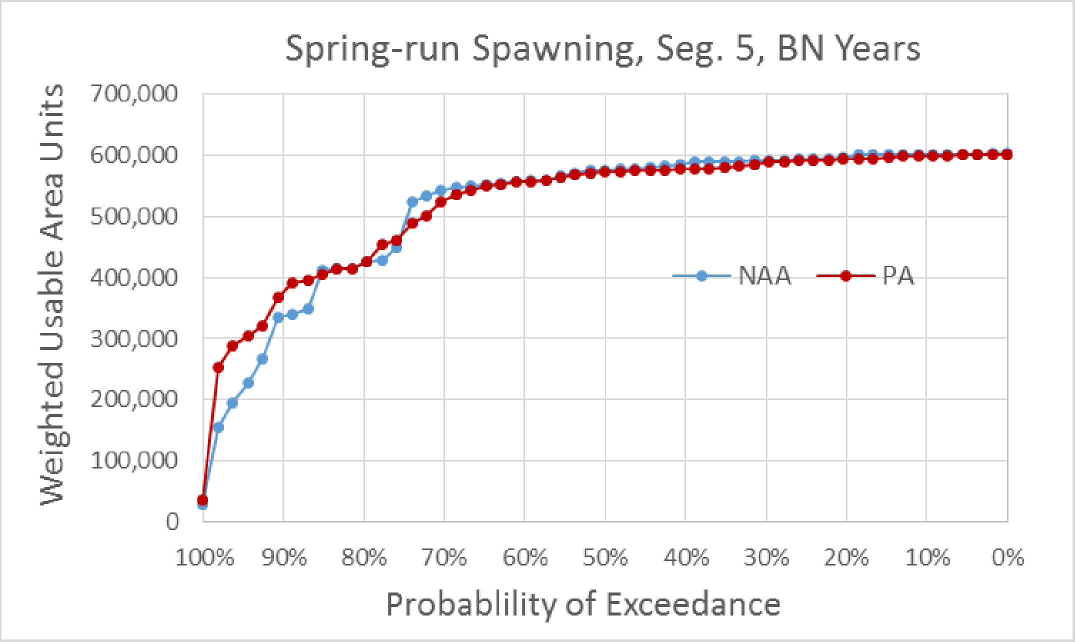


Figure 4.4-23. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Below Normal Water Years

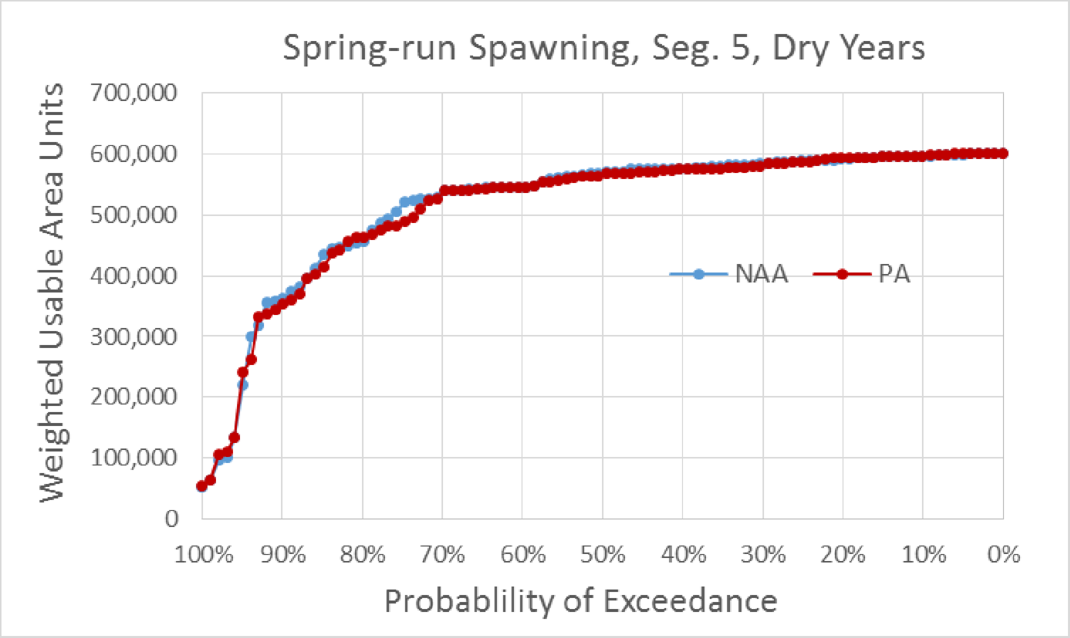


Figure 4.4-24. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Dry Water Years

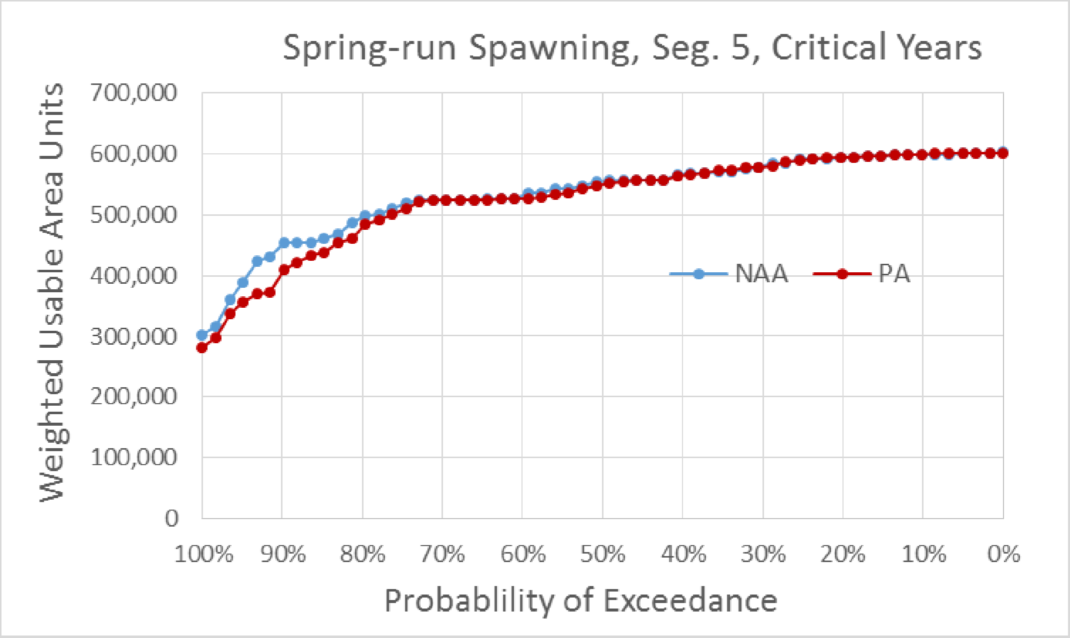


Figure 4.4-25. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Critical Water Years

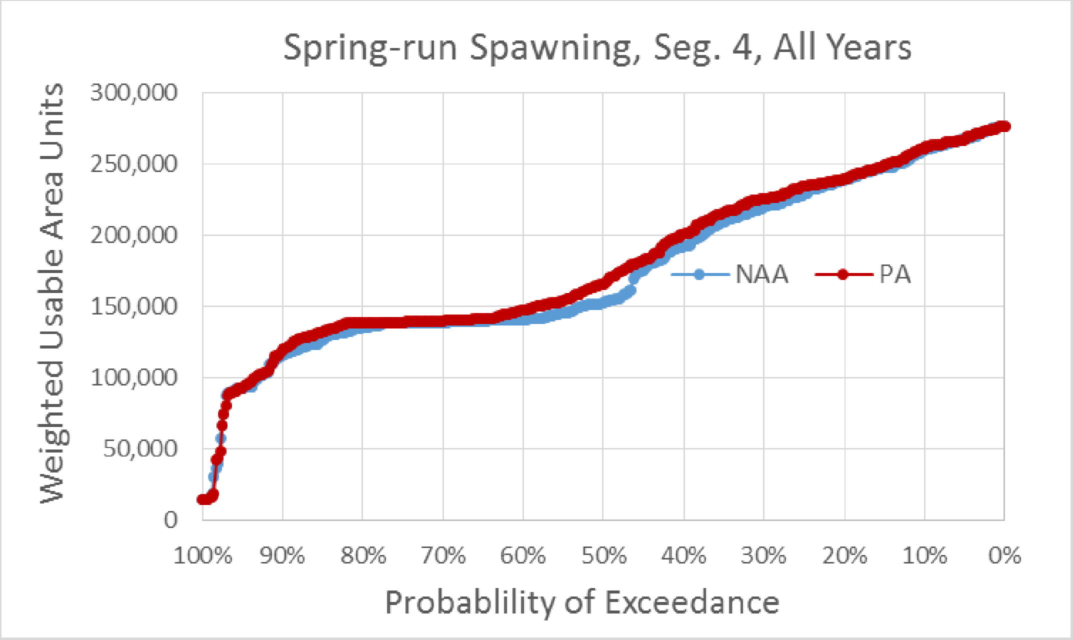


Figure 4.4-26. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, All Water Years

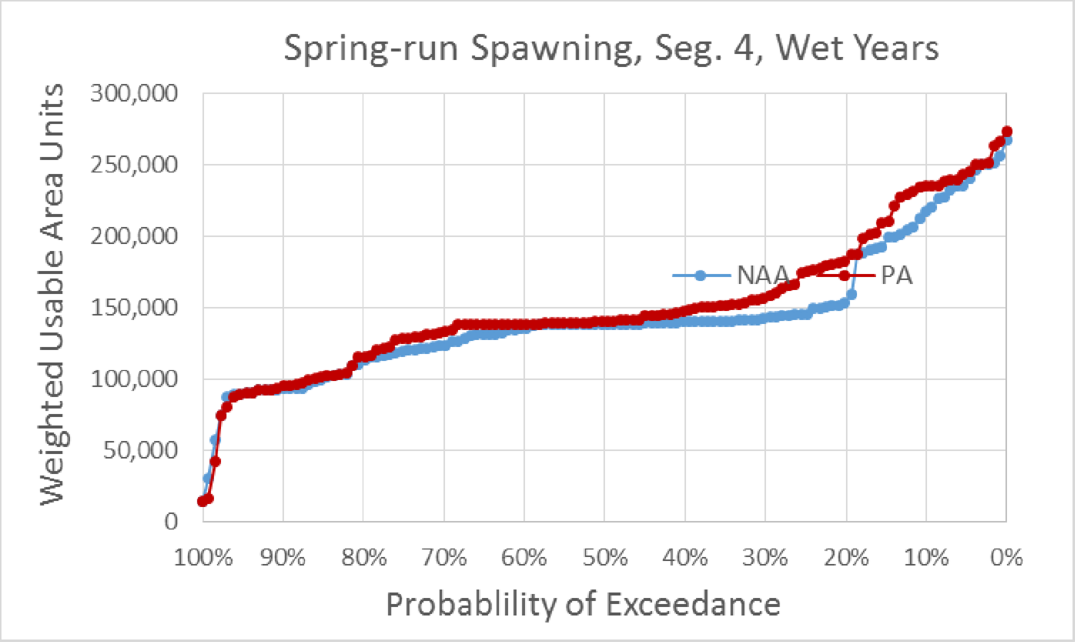


Figure 4.4-27. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Wet Water Years

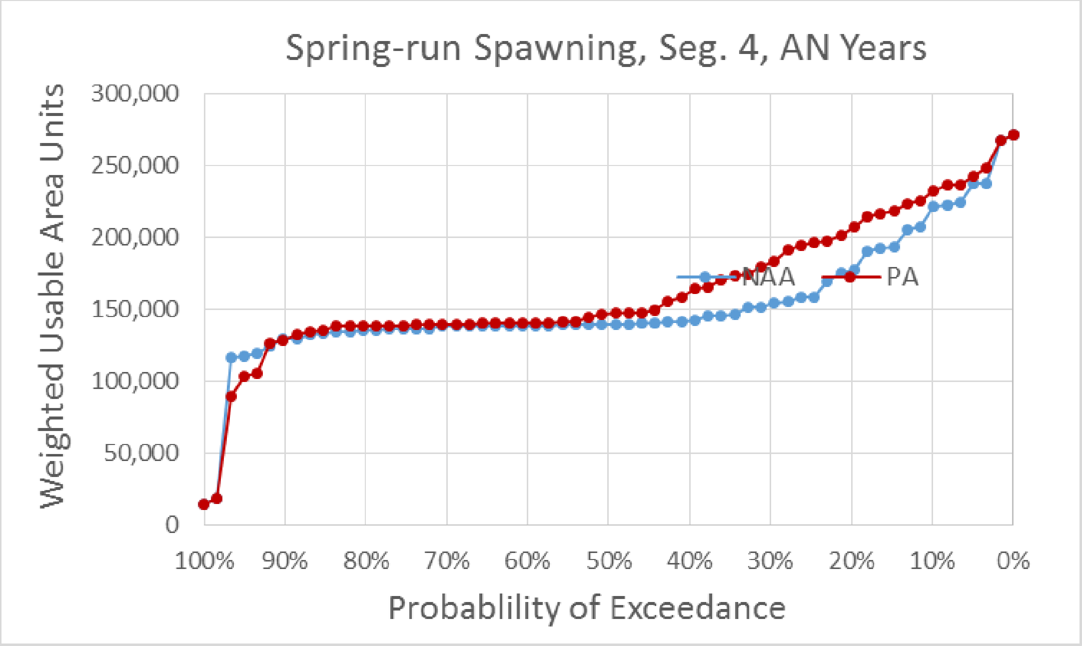


Figure 4.4-28. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Above Normal Water Years

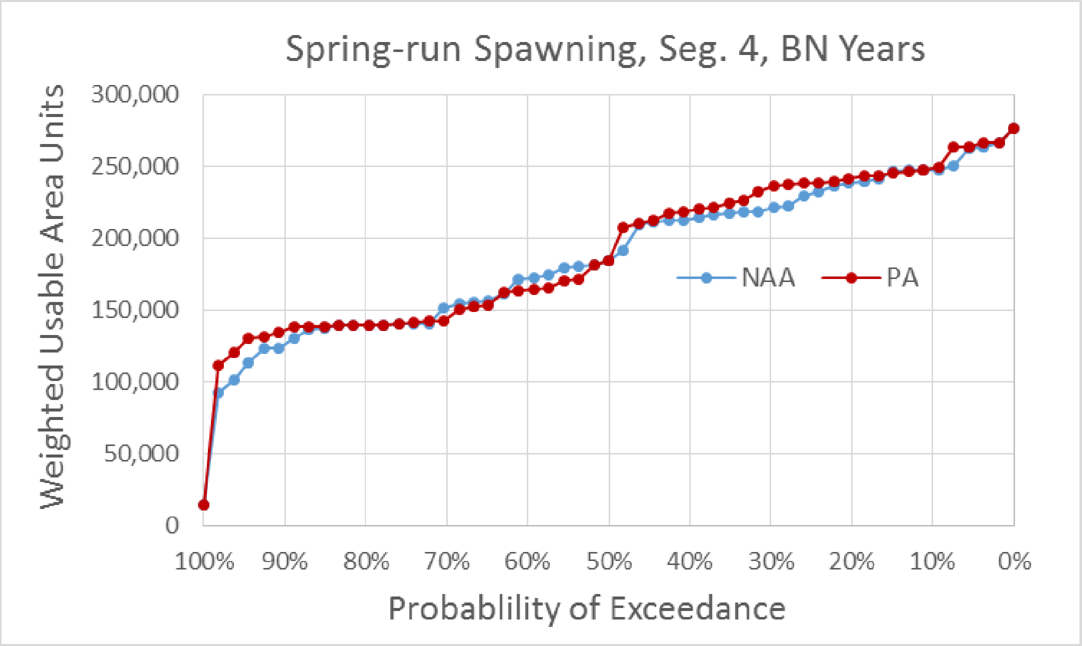


Figure 4.4-29. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Below Normal Water Years

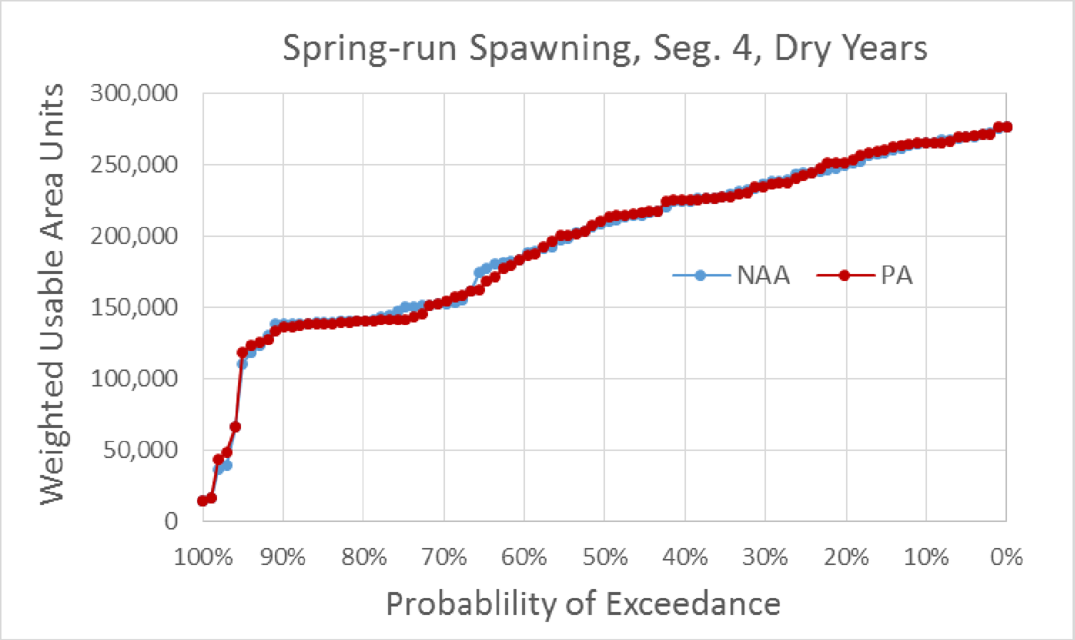


Figure 4.4-30. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Dry Water Years

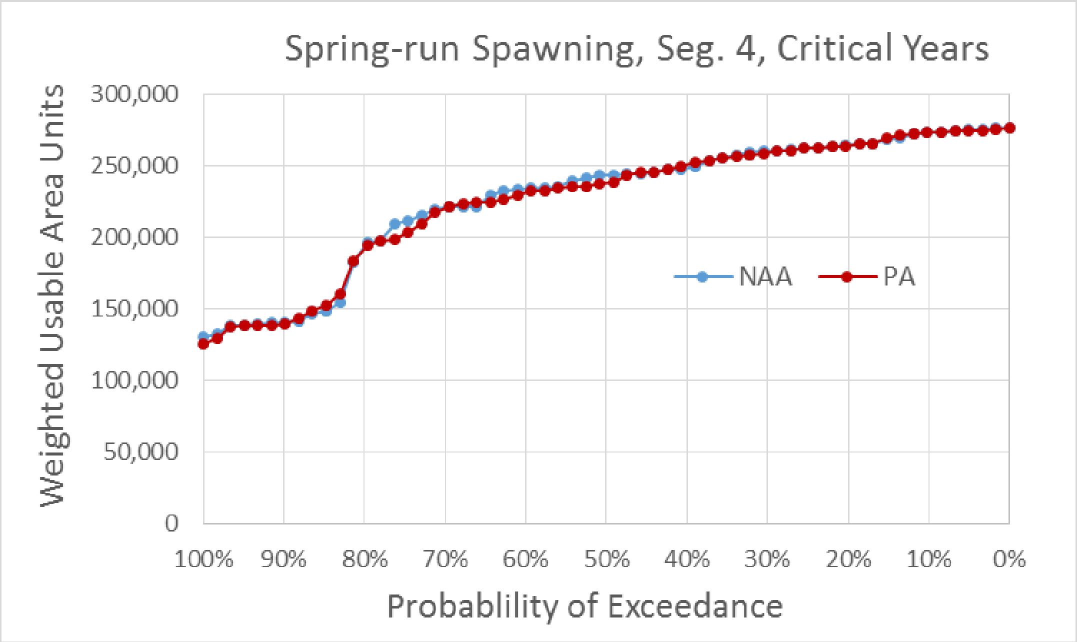


Figure 4.4-31. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Critical Water Years

Differences in spawning WUA in each river segment under the PP and NAA were also examined using the grand mean spawning WUA for each month of the spawning period under each water year type and all water year types combined (Table 4.4-22 to Table 4.4-24). Mean WUA would increase under the PP during November of wet and above normal years in all three segments by 18% to 84%. As noted above, mean flows in the Sacramento River are expected to be 21% to 26% lower under the PP during November of wet and above normal years, showing that reduced flow may enhance spawning WUA under some conditions. Mean WUA would be 5% lower under the PP than under the NAA during September of critical year types in Segment 6, and up to 13% lower during October of below normal and dry water year types in Segment 4. September and October are the peak spawning months for spring-run Chinook salmon.

Table 4.4-22. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) and Differences (Percent Differences) in River Segment 6 between Model Scenarios (green indicates PP is at least 5% higher [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% lower)

Month	WYT	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
August	Wet	251,743	250,121	-1,622 (-0.6%)
	Above Normal	249,843	249,892	50 (0.02%)
	Below Normal	242,565	260,419	17,854 (7%)
	Dry	275,674	268,798	-6,876 (-2%)
	Critical	278,675	272,849	-5,826 (-2%)
	All	259,988	259,347	-641 (-0.2%)
September	Wet	211,699	214,296	2,598 (1%)
	Above Normal	276,118	295,892	19,774 (7%)
	Below Normal	310,740	302,440	-8,300 (-3%)
	Dry	297,451	292,461	-4,990 (-2%)
	Critical	295,609	280,631	-14,979 (-5%)
	All	268,392	267,828	-564 (0%)
October	Wet	299,153	309,714	10,561 (4%)
	Above Normal	314,152	310,779	-3,373 (-1%)
	Below Normal	315,959	316,970	1,010 (0.3%)
	Dry	304,903	313,978	9,075 (3%)
	Critical	285,343	276,228	-9,115 (-3%)
	All	303,031	306,949	3,918 (1.3%)
November	Wet	85,349	144,206	58,856 (69%)
	Above Normal	98,745	181,551	82,805 (84%)
	Below Normal	205,611	218,534	12,923 (6%)
	Dry	226,866	229,131	2,266 (1%)
	Critical	263,119	246,772	-16,348 (-6%)
	All	164,944	195,997	31,052 (19%)
December	Wet	189,341	192,905	3,565 (2%)
	Above Normal	186,103	186,289	186 (0.1%)
	Below Normal	198,802	198,407	-395 (-0.2%)
	Dry	192,969	189,522	-3,447 (-2%)
	Critical	274,875	276,177	1,303 (0.5%)
	All	203,713	204,173	460 (0.2%)

Table 4.4-23. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) and Differences (Percent Differences) in River Segment 5 between Model Scenarios (green indicates PP is at least 5% higher [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% lower)

Month	WYT	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
August	Wet	357,991	352,739	-5,253 (-1%)
	Above Normal	349,522	350,996	1,474 (0.4%)
	Below Normal	331,458	384,187	52,730 (16%)
	Dry	430,234	408,673	-21,561 (-5%)
	Critical	441,885	425,204	-16,681 (-4%)
	All	382,986	380,928	-2,058 (-0.5%)
September	Wet	236,285	242,981	6,696 (3%)
	Above Normal	430,088	490,178	60,089 (14%)
	Below Normal	585,549	589,389	3,840 (0.7%)
	Dry	579,037	577,758	-1,280 (-0.2%)
	Critical	579,158	563,100	-16,058 (-3%)
	All	447,637	457,140	9,502 (2.1%)
October	Wet	498,680	538,887	40,207 (8%)
	Above Normal	552,311	545,589	-6,721 (-1%)
	Below Normal	585,179	557,994	-27,185 (-5%)
	Dry	572,802	575,143	2,341 (0.4%)
	Critical	567,178	551,594	-15,584 (-3%)
	All	546,822	553,309	6,488 (1.2%)
November	Wet	380,656	520,050	139,394 (37%)
	Above Normal	422,460	533,933	111,473 (26%)
	Below Normal	587,346	586,203	-1,143 (-0.2%)
	Dry	564,042	569,862	5,820 (1%)
	Critical	539,474	552,498	13,024 (2%)
	All	483,727	548,197	64,470 (13%)
December	Wet	475,398	457,821	-17,577 (-4%)
	Above Normal	493,732	461,657	-32,075 (-6%)
	Below Normal	475,415	470,507	-4,908 (-1%)
	Dry	432,047	432,627	580 (0.1%)
	Critical	535,780	532,304	-3,475 (-0.6%)
	All	476,358	464,926	-11,432 (-2%)

Table 4.4-24. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning Weighted Usable Area (WUA) and Differences (Percent Differences) in River Segment 4 between Model Scenarios (green indicates PP is at least 5% higher [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% lower)

Month	WYT	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
August	Wet	134,404	133,896	-508 (-0.4%)
	Above Normal	136,051	136,053	2 (0%)
	Below Normal	127,707	136,842	9,135 (7%)
	Dry	142,402	140,006	-2,396 (-2%)
	Critical	148,854	149,882	1,029 (0.7%)
	All	137,832	138,463	631 (0%)
September	Wet	110,983	111,256	272 (0.2%)
	Above Normal	146,690	152,626	5,936 (4%)
	Below Normal	219,170	240,628	21,457 (10%)
	Dry	242,792	252,590	9,798 (4%)
	Critical	242,618	252,566	9,948 (4%)
	All	182,569	190,321	7,751 (4%)
October	Wet	155,097	167,335	12,237 (8%)
	Above Normal	168,198	169,618	1,420 (0.8%)
	Below Normal	194,636	169,106	-25,530 (-13%)
	Dry	203,681	188,415	-15,266 (-7%)
	Critical	233,616	231,468	-2,148 (-1%)
	All	186,036	182,620	-3,416 (-2%)
November	Wet	131,699	156,053	24,354 (18%)
	Above Normal	131,743	172,295	40,553 (31%)
	Below Normal	198,448	210,003	11,555 (6%)
	Dry	211,308	216,165	4,858 (2%)
	Critical	261,540	245,589	-15,950 (-6%)
	All	179,662	193,893	14,231 (8%)
December	Wet	182,846	186,060	3,215 (2%)
	Above Normal	183,340	184,920	1,579 (0.9%)
	Below Normal	193,754	192,608	-1,146 (-0.6%)
	Dry	176,833	179,354	2,521 (1%)
	Critical	248,662	250,069	1,407 (0.6%)
	All	192,666	194,607	1,941 (1%)

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.1.3 Redd scour

The probability of flows occurring under the PP and the NAA that would be high enough to mobilize sediments and scour spring-run Chinook salmon redds was estimated from CALSIM II estimates of mean monthly flows, using a relationship determined from the historical record between actual mean monthly flow and maximum daily flow (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.2 *Spawning Flows Methods*). The actual monthly and daily flow data used in the analysis are from gage records just below Keswick Dam and at Bend Bridge, and the CALSIM II estimates used to compare probabilities of redd scour for the PP and the NAA are for the Keswick Dam and Red Bluff locations. As discussed in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.2 *Spawning Flows Methods*), 40,000 cfs is treated as the minimum daily flow at which redd scour occurs in the Sacramento River. The analysis of the Keswick Dam gage data shows that for months with a mean monthly flow of at least 27,300 cfs, the maximum daily flow in that month is always at least 40,000 cfs. The Bend Bridge gage data show that for months with a mean flow of at least 21,800 cfs, the maximum daily flow in that month is always 40,000 cfs. Therefore, redd scour probabilities for the PP and the NAA were evaluated by comparing frequencies of CALSIM II flows greater than 27,300 cfs at Keswick Dam or greater than 21,800 cfs at Red Bluff during the spring-run August through December spawning and incubation period. Further information on the redd scour analysis methods is provided in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.2 *Spawning Flows Methods*).

Table 4.4-25 shows that fewer than 5% of months in the CALSIM II record during the spawning and incubation period of spring-run Chinook salmon (August through December) would have flows of more than 27,300 cfs at Keswick Dam or more than 21,800 cfs at Red Bluff. This was expected, given that all of the months of the spring-run spawning and incubation period except December rarely experience such high flows. There would be little difference between the PP and the NAA in the percentage of scouring flows at either location.

Note that SALMOD also predicts redd scour risk for spring-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento River, although it is combined with redd dewatering and the combination is reported as "Incubation" mortality. See Table 4.4-27 for these results.

Table 4.4-25. Percent of Months during Spawning and Incubation Periods with CALSIM II Flow Greater than Redd Scouring Threshold Flow at Keswick Dam (27,300 cfs) and Red Bluff (21,800 cfs) between Model Scenarios

Species/Race	Keswick Dam			Red Bluff		
	NAA	PA	PA vs. NAA	NAA	PA	PA vs. NAA
Spring-run Chinook salmon	0.7	0.5	-0.2 (-25%)	2.6	2.8	0.2 (7%)

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.1.4 Redd Dewatering

The percentage of spring-run Chinook salmon redds dewatered by reductions in Sacramento River flow was estimated from CALSIM II estimates of monthly mean flows during the 3 months following each of the months that spring-run spawn (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.2 *Spawning Flows Methods,* Table 5.D-54). This analysis employed functional relationships developed in field studies by USFWS (2006) that predicted percentages of redds dewatered from an array of paired spawning and dewatering flows. As described above for the spawning WUA analyses, redd dewatering for spring-run was modeled using the relationship developed for fall-run Chinook salmon. Because, as noted in Section 4.4.4.2.1.3.2.1.2 *Spawning WUA*, spring-run spawning has peaked, on average, in river Segment 5 based on recent redd surveys, the Segment 5 CALSIM II flows were used to estimate redd dewatering under the PP and NAA. The CALSIM II flows for Segments 4 and 6 are similar to those for Segment 5, so redd dewatering estimates using the Segment 4 and Segment 6 flows differ little from those for Segment 5 (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 2.6 *Redd Dewatering Results*, *Sacramento River Segments 4 and 6*). Further information on the redd dewatering analysis methods is provided in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.2, *Spawning Flows Methods*).

Differences in spring-run redd dewatering under the PP and NAA were examined using exceedance plots of mean monthly percent dewatered for the August through October months that spring-run spawn. The exceedance curves for the PP generally show slightly higher redd dewatering percentages than those for the NAA for all water year types combined, and substantially higher dewatering percentages for above normal and below normal water year types in particular (Figure 4.4-32 through Figure 4.4-37). The biggest differences in the dewatering curves are predicted for above normal water years, with about 24% of all months having greater than 20% of redds dewatered under the NAA, but about 43% of all months having greater than 20% of redds dewatered under the PP.

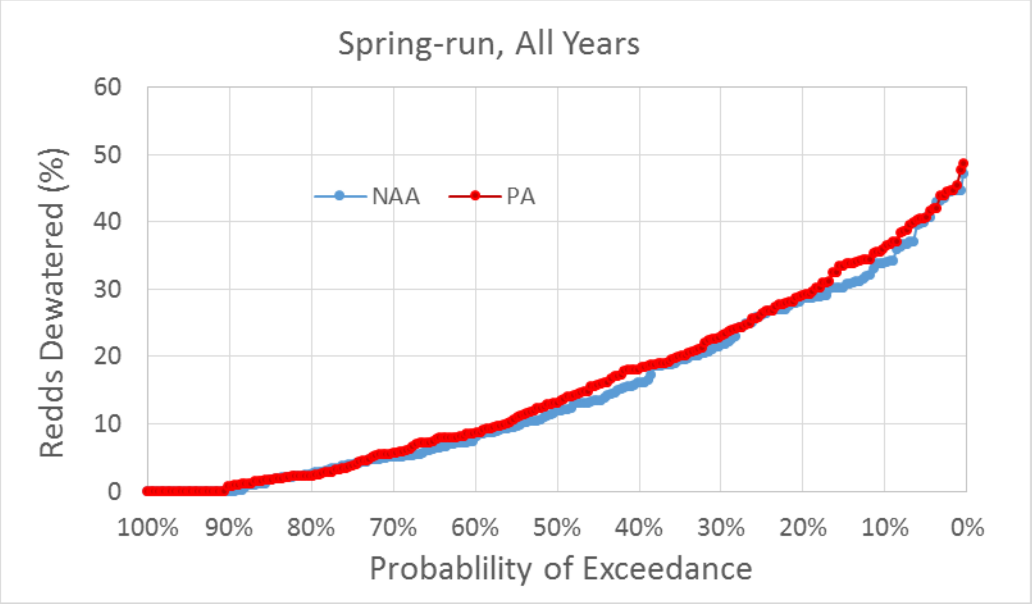


Figure 4.4-32. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Percent of Redds Dewatered for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, All Water Years

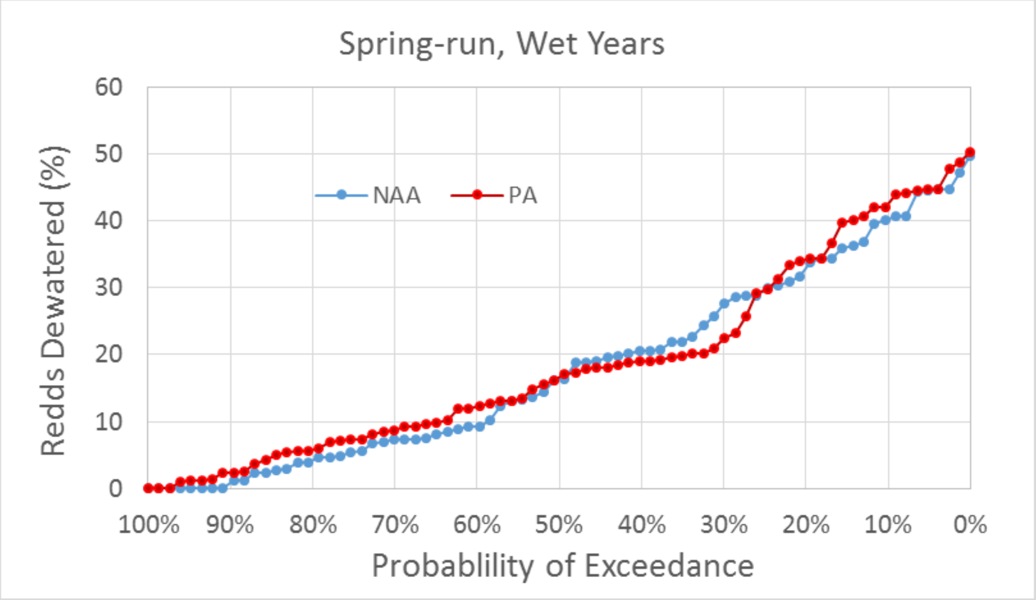


Figure 4.4-33. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Percent of Redds Dewatered for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Wet Water Years

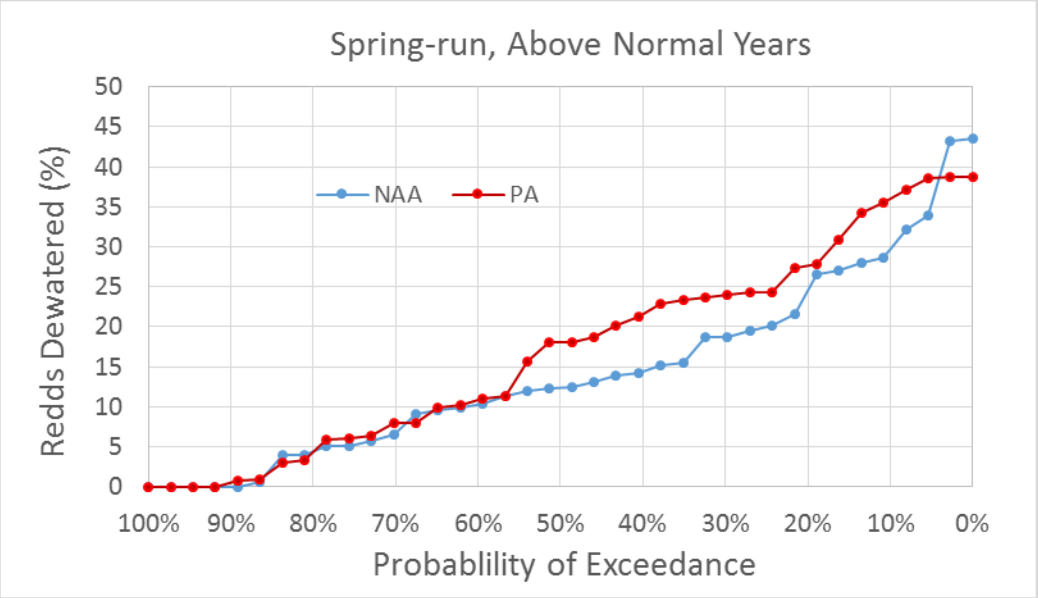


Figure 4.4-34. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Percent of Redds Dewatered for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Above Normal Water Years

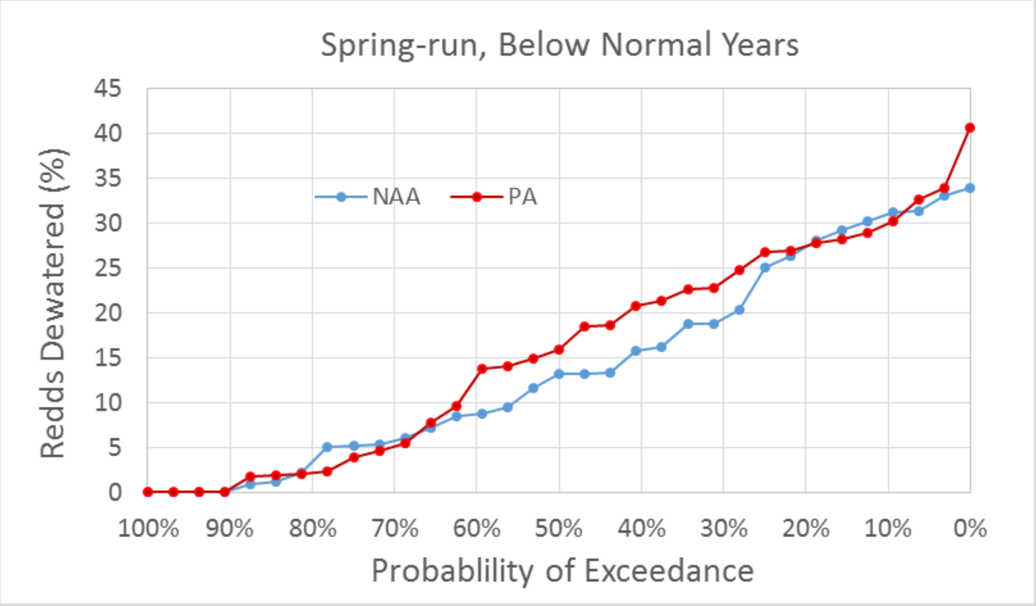


Figure 4.4-35. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Percent of Redds Dewatered for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Below Normal Water Years

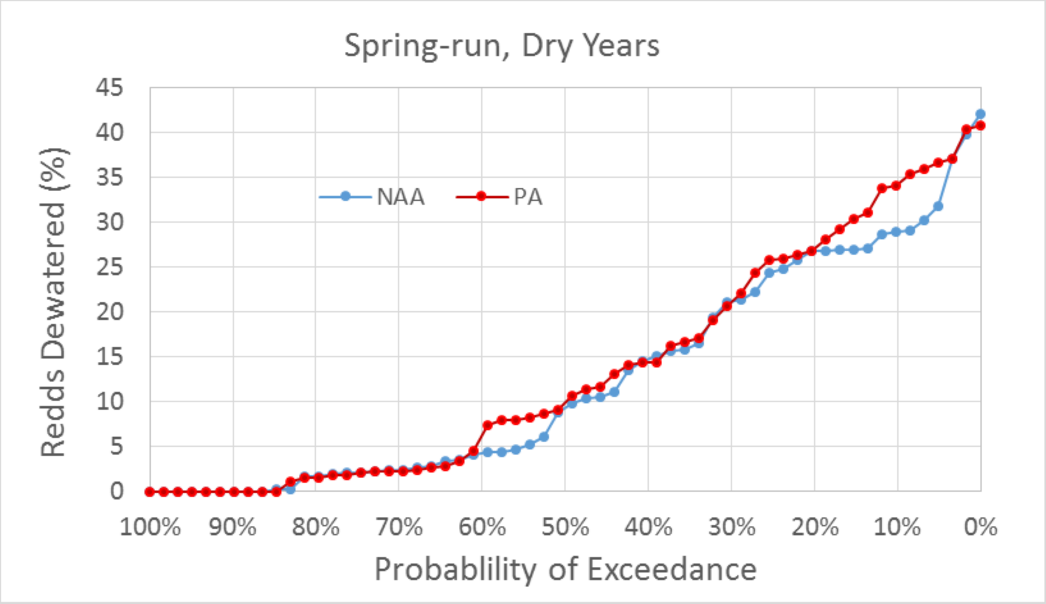


Figure 4.4-36. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Percent of Redds Dewatered for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Dry Water Years

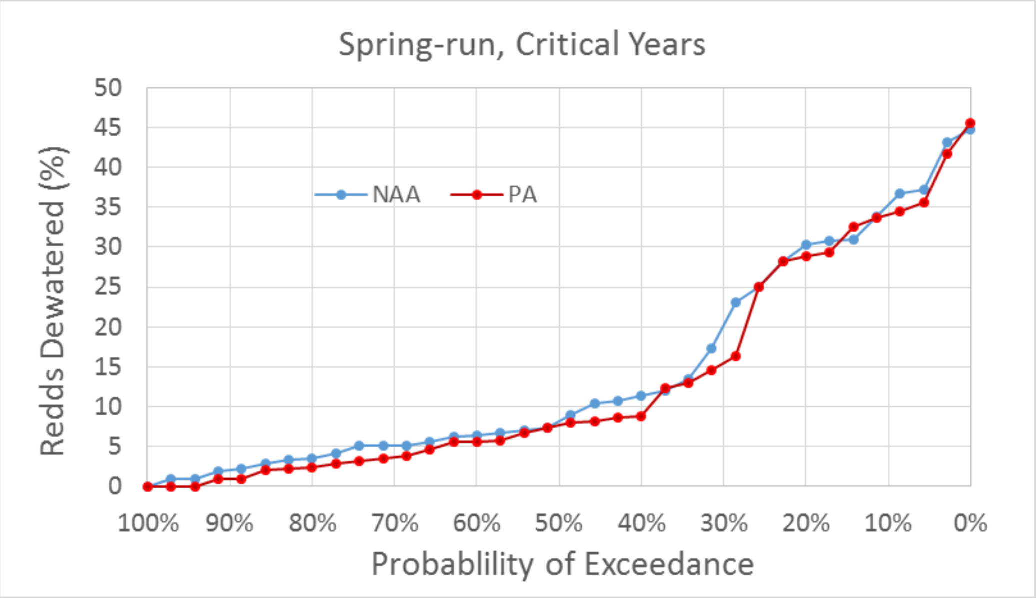


Figure 4.4-37. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Percent of Redds Dewatered for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Critical Water Years

Differences in redd dewatering between the PP and NAA were also examined using the grand mean percentages of redds dewatered for each month of spawning under each water type and all water year types combined (Table 4.4-26). During August, the mean percent of redds dewatered would be 5% and 8% greater under the PP than under the NAA in wet and above normal water years, respectively. During October, the mean under the PP would be 5% lower in wet years and 6% higher in below normal years. During September of below normal water years, the mean percent of redds dewatered would be up to 3% lower under the PP than under the NAA. The percent differences between the PP and the NAA in the percent of redds dewatered are generally large, but for many months and water year types this is an artifact of the low percentages of redds dewatered under both scenarios. These results indicate that, in general, a moderately greater percentage of spring-run Chinook salmon redds would be dewatered in August under the PP, but there would be an insignificant difference between the PP and the NAA during September and October. Further discussion regarding flow-related effects during the June through November period is provided in Section 4.3.4.2.2 *Summary of Upstream Effects*.

Table 4.4-26. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Percent of Redds Dewatered (Percent of Total Redds) and Differences (Percent Differences) between Model Scenarios (green indicates PP is at least 5% lower [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% higher)

Month	WYT	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
August	Wet	10.0	15.0	5 (50%)
	Above Normal	13.0	21.4	8 (64%)
	Below Normal	27.9	29.4	1 (5%)
	Dry	27.1	29.4	2 (9%)
	Critical	30.9	29.7	-1 (-4%)
	All	20.1	23.6	3 (17%)
September	Wet	30.2	31.9	2 (6%)
	Above Normal	17.9	16.5	-1 (-8%)
	Below Normal	5.6	2.7	-3 (-52%)
	Dry	3.1	1.9	-1 (-38%)
	Critical	6.0	4.4	-2 (-26%)
	All	14.8	14.2	-0.6 (-4%)
October	Wet	14.5	9.9	-5 (-32%)
	Above Normal	12.4	13.1	1 (5%)
	Below Normal	9.1	15.4	6 (70%)
	Dry	7.9	9.9	2 (26%)
	Critical	6.7	6.1	-1 (-9%)
	All	10.7	10.6	-0.1 (-1%)

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.1.5 SALMOD Flow-related Outputs

The SALMOD model provides predicted flow-related mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon spawning, eggs, and alevins in the Sacramento River. The SALMOD results for flow-related mortality are presented in Table 4.4-27, together with results for the other sources of mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon predicted by SALMOD and discussed in other sections of this document. The flow-related mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon spawning, eggs, and alevins is split up as “incubation” (which refers to redd dewatering and scour) and “superimposition” (of redds) mortality (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Attachment 5.D.2 *SALMOD Model*, for full model description). The annual exceedance plot of flow-related mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon spawning, eggs, and alevins is presented in Figure 4.4-38. These results indicate that there would be moderate increases in flow-related mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon spawning, eggs, and alevins from incubation-related factors under the PP relative to the NAA for all water year types except dry years. The largest increases, about 30%, would be for wet, above normal and below normal water year types. No mortality is predicted from redd superimposition for either scenario. It should be noted, however, that SALMOD predicts redd superimposition for each race of salmon without consideration of redd densities of the other races. SALMOD predicts no superimposition for spring-run because numbers of spring-run spawners are low. However, the spring-run spawning period (August to December) considerably overlaps that of fall-run Chinook salmon (September through January) and the spawning reaches also overlap, so the SALMOD prediction of low superimposition of spring-run redds may be unreliable.

Table 4.4-27. Mean Annual Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Mortality[1] (# of Fish/Year) Predicted by SALMOD

	Spawning, Egg Incubation, and Alevins							Fry and Juvenile Rearing									
	Temperature-Related Mortality			Flow-Related Mortality				Temperature-Related Mortality				Flow-Related Mortality					
Analysis Period	Pre-Spawn	Eggs	Subtotal	Incubation	Super-imposition	Subtotal	Life Stage Total	Fry	Pre-smolt	Immature Smolt	Subtotal	Fry	Pre-smolt	Immature Smolt	Subtotal	Life Stage Total	Grand Total
All Water Year Types[2]																	
NAA	46,032	124,013	170,045	1,905	0	1,905	171,950	1	0	0	1	2,265	0	0	2,265	2,265	174,215
PP	50,462	107,473	157,935	2,118	0	2,118	160,053	0	0	0	0	2,273	0	0	2,273	2,273	162,325
Difference	4,431	-16,540	-12,110	212	0	212	-11,898	-1	0	0	-1	8	0	0	8	7	-11,890
Percent Difference[3]	10	-13	-7	11	0	11	-7	-100	0	0	-100	0	0	0	0	0	-7
Water Year Types[4]																	
Wet (32.5%)																	
NAA	116	6,530	6,646	1,336	0	1,336	7,983	0	0	0	0	2,614	0	0	2,614	2,614	10,597
PP	117	5,835	5,952	1,748	0	1,748	7,699	0	0	0	0	2,815	0	0	2,815	2,815	10,514
Difference	1	-695	-695	411	0	411	-283	0	0	0	0	200	0	0	200	200	-83
Percent Difference	0	-11	-10	31	0	31	-4	0	0	0	NA[5]	8	0	0	8	8	-1
Above Normal (12.5%)																	
NAA	78	4,181	4,258	1,162	0	1,162	5,420	0	0	0	0	2,703	0	0	2,703	2,703	8,124
PP	65	3,888	3,953	1,509	0	1,509	5,463	0	0	0	0	2,354	0	0	2,354	2,354	7,816
Difference	-12	-293	-305	347	0	347	42	0	0	0	0	-350	0	0	-350	-350	-307
Percent Difference	-16	-7	-7	30	0	30	1	0	0	0	NA	-13	0	0	-13	-13	-4
Below Normal (17.5%)																	
NAA	154	34,929	35,084	1,300	0	1,300	36,384	0	0	0	0	2,634	0	0	2,634	2,634	39,018
PP	309	41,242	41,551	1,711	0	1,711	43,262	0	0	0	0	2,591	0	0	2,591	2,591	45,853
Difference	155	6,313	6,467	411	0	411	6,878	0	0	0	0	-43	0	0	-43	-43	6,835
Percent Difference	100	18	18	32	0	32	19	0	0	0	NA	-2	0	0	-2	-2	18
Dry (22.5%)																	
NAA	1,093	66,312	67,406	3,652	0	3,652	71,058	0	0	0	0	2,468	0	0	2,468	2,468	73,526
PP	995	64,050	65,045	3,422	0	3,422	68,467	0	0	0	0	2,438	0	0	2,438	2,438	70,905
Difference	-98	-2,263	-2,361	-230	0	-230	-2,591	0	0	0	0	-30	0	0	-30	-30	-2,621
Percent Difference	-9	-3	-4	-6	0	-6	-4	0	0	0	NA	-1	0	0	-1	-1	-4
Critical (15%)																	
NAA	304,677	671,412	976,089	1,670	0	1,670	977,759	3	0	0	3	408	0	0	408	411	978,170
PP	334,238	560,737	894,976	1,835	0	1,835	896,811	0	0	0	0	463	0	0	463	463	897,274
Difference	29,562	-110,675	-81,113	165	0	165	-80,949	-3	0	0	-3	55	0	0	55	52	-80,897
Percent Difference	10	-16	-8	10	0	10	-8	-100	0	0	-100	14	0	0	14	13	-8

1 Mortality values do not include base mortality

2 Based on the 80-year simulation period

3 Relative difference of the Annual average

4 As defined by the Sacramento Valley 40-30-30 Index Water Year Hydrologic Classification (State Water Resources Control Board 1995). Water years may not correspond to the biological years in SALMOD.

5 NA = Unable to calculate because dividing by 0

This page intentionally left blank.

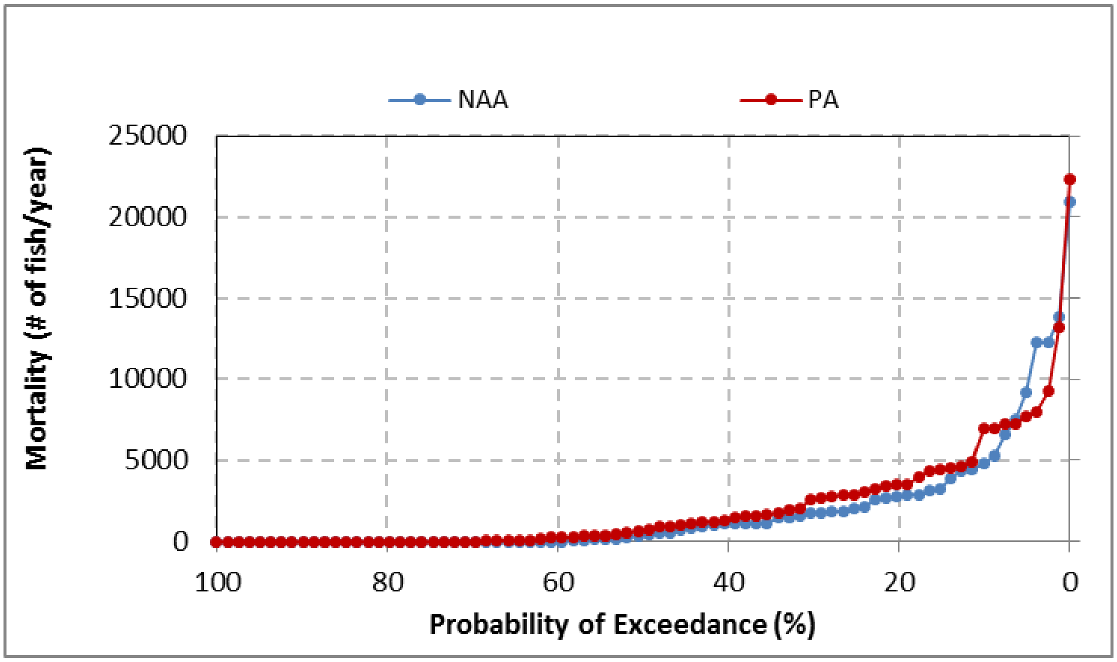


Figure 4.4-38. Exceedance Plot of Annual Flow-Based Mortality (#of Fish/Year) of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning, Egg Incubation, and Alevins

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.1.6 Water Temperature-Related Effects

Modeled mean monthly water temperatures during the August through December spawning and incubation period for spring-run Chinook salmon are presented in *Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C, Section 5.C.7 *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results*, Table 5.C.7-3, Table 5.C.7-4, Table 5.C.7-5, Table 5.C.7-7, and Table 5.C.7-8). Overall, the PP would change mean water temperatures very little (predominantly less than 1°F, or approximately 1%) throughout the spawning reach of Keswick Dam to Red Bluff in all months of the period and water year types. The largest increase in mean monthly water temperatures under the PP relative to NAA would be 0.6°F, or up to 1.1%, and would occur at Red Bluff in above normal years during August, and above- and below normal years during September; and at Bend Bridge in below normal years during September. These largest increases during September would occur during the period of peak presence of spawners, eggs, and alevins.

Exceedance plots of monthly mean water temperatures were examined during each month throughout the spawning and incubation period (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C *Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results*, Section 5.C.7 *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results*, Figure 5.C.7.3-7, Figure 5.C.7.4-7, Figure 5.C.7.5-7, Figure 5.C.7.7-7, and Figure 5.C.7.8-7). The values for the PP in these exceedance plots generally match those of the NAA. Further examination of above normal water years during August (Figure 4.4-39**Error! Reference source not found.**) and September (Figure 4.4-40)**Error! Reference source not found.** at Red Bluff, below normal years during September at Red Bluff (Figure 4.4-41**Error! Reference source not found.**), and below-normal years during September at Bend Bridge (Figure 4.4-42**Error! Reference source not found.**), where the largest increases in mean monthly water temperatures were seen, reveals that there is a general trend towards marginally higher temperatures under the PP but that the difference of 0.6°F in mean monthly temperatures between NAA and PP would cause no substantial differences between curves for the NAA and PP in each exceedance plot.

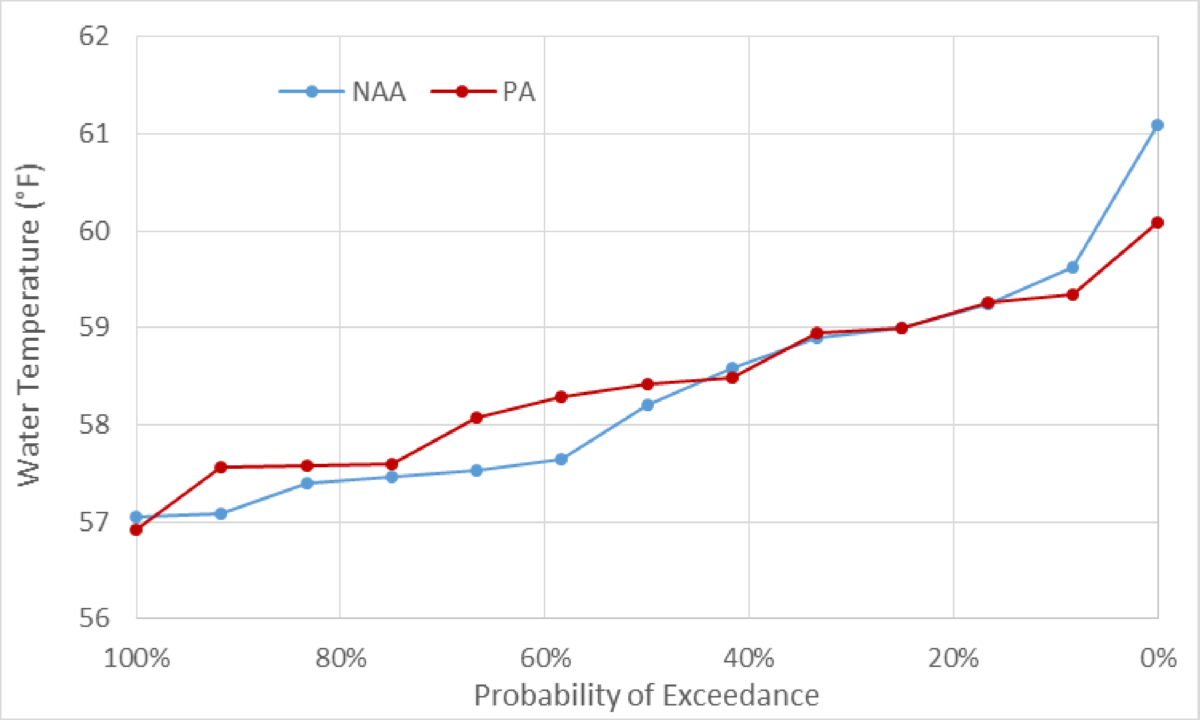


Figure 4.4-39. Exceedance Plot of Mean Monthly Water Temperatures (°F) in the Sacramento River at Red Bluff in August of Above Normal Water Years

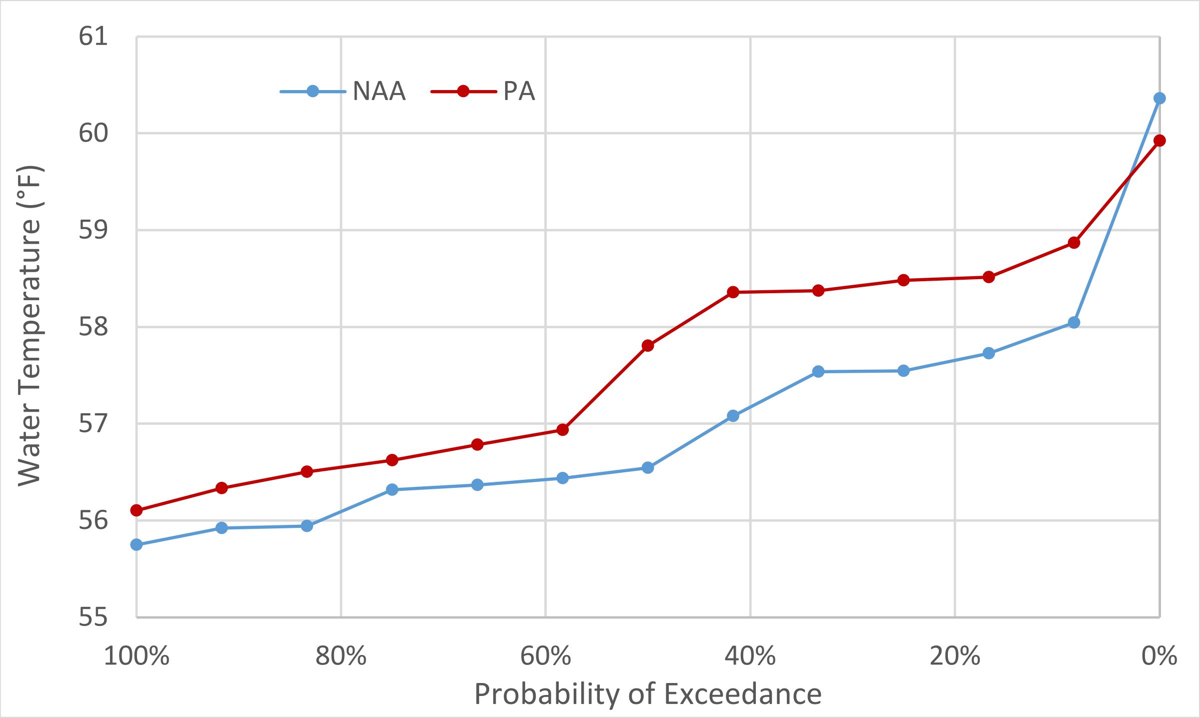


Figure 4.4-40. Exceedance Plot of Mean Monthly Water Temperatures (°F) in the Sacramento River at Red Bluff in September of Above Normal Water Years

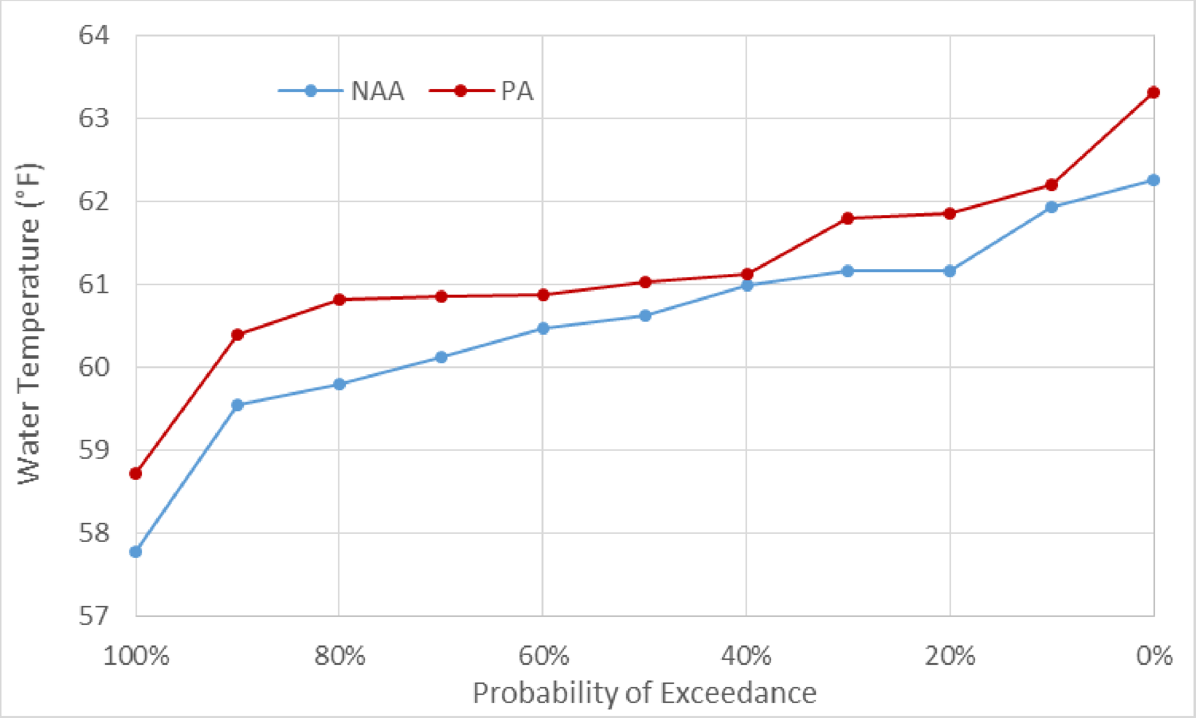


Figure 4.4-41. Exceedance Plot of Mean Monthly Water Temperatures (°F) in the Sacramento River at Red Bluff in September of Below Normal Water Years

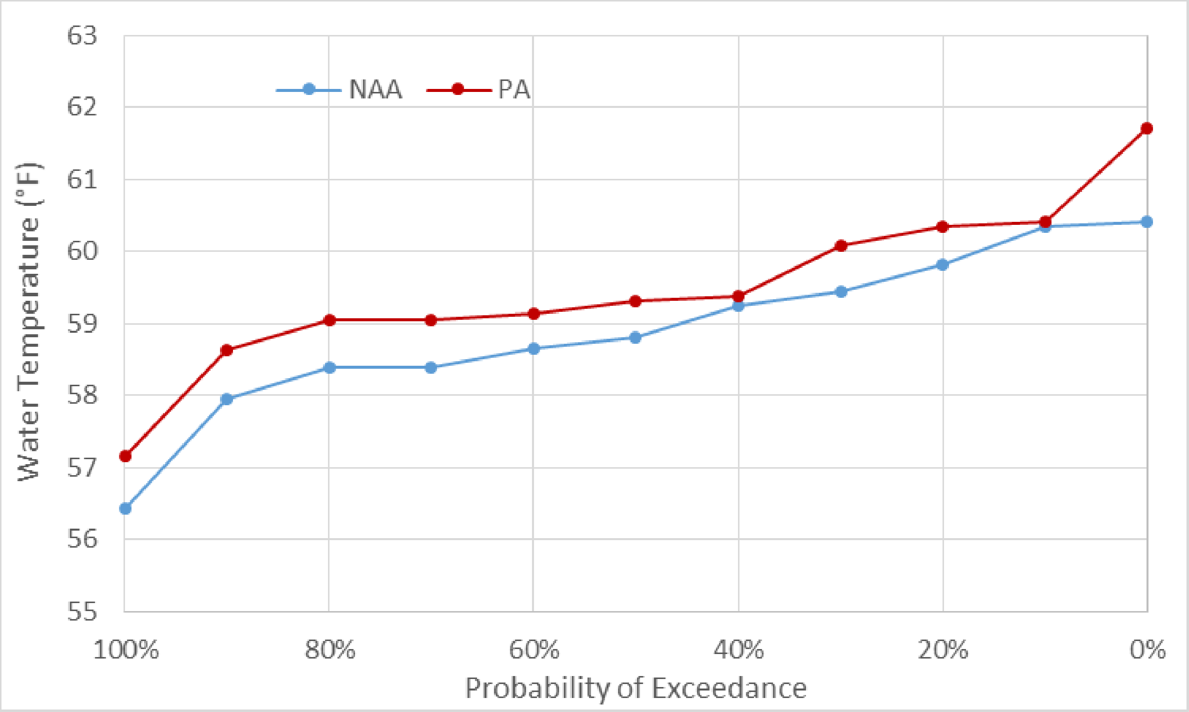


Figure 4.4-42. Exceedance Plot of Mean Monthly Water Temperatures (°F) in the Sacramento River at Bend Bridge in September of Below Normal Water Years

The exceedance of temperature thresholds in the Sacramento River presented in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1 *Water Temperature Analysis Methods*, Table 5.D-49) by modeled daily water temperatures were evaluated according to temperature thresholds identified from the literature including the USEPA's temperature water quality guidance (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency 2003). As described in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1.2.2 *Water Temperature Threshold Analysis*), the analysis evaluates both the frequency and magnitude of exceedance above a threshold. A *biologically meaningful* effect for the water temperature threshold analysis was defined as the months and water year types in which water temperature results met two criteria: (1) the difference between NAA and PP in frequency of exceedance of the threshold was greater than 5%, and (2) the difference between NAA and PP in average daily exceedance was greater than 0.5°F. The 5% criterion was based on best professional judgment of fisheries biologists from NMFS, CDFW, DWR, and Reclamation. The 0.5°F criterion was based on: (1) a review of the water temperature-related mortality rates for steelhead eggs and juveniles (D. Swank, pers. comm.), and (2) a reasonable water temperature differential that could be resolved through real-time reservoir operations.

For spawning and egg/alevin incubation, the threshold used was from the USEPA's 7-day average daily maximum (7DADM) value of 55.4°F, converted by month to function with daily model outputs for each month separately (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1 *Water Temperature Analysis Methods*, Table 5.D-51).

Results of the water temperature thresholds analysis are presented in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-80 through Table 5.D-84). At Keswick Dam, there would be no months or water year types in which there would be 5% more days under the PP compared to the NAA on which temperatures would exceed the threshold (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-80). There would be two instances in which the percent of days exceeding the threshold would be lower under the PP relative to the NAA: November of wet (5.9%) and above normal (13.3%) years. However, in no case would there be a more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance. Therefore, it was concluded that there would be no biologically meaningful effect at Keswick Dam.

In the Sacramento River at Clear Creek, the percent of days exceeding the 55.4°F 7DADM threshold under the PP would be more than 5% higher than under the NAA during May (6.2%), August (7.6%), and September (6.4%) of below normal years, and October of dry years (7.3%) (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-64). There would be a concurrent difference between the

NAA and PP in average daily exceedance of more than 0.5°F during May of below normal years only (1.3°F). It was concluded that there would be no biologically meaningful effect in these other months based on the criteria described in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1.2.2 *Water Temperature Threshold Analysis*). For May of below normal years, a closer examination of the exceedance plot (Figure 4.4-43) reveals that this appears to be due to CALSIM II attempting to balance storage levels among the CVP reservoirs. This effect is due entirely to 1 year (1923) during which temperatures would be much higher, and there is no practical reason why actual operations under the PP would be different from those under the NAA in this 1 year. Therefore, it was concluded that this result is due to modeling limitations.

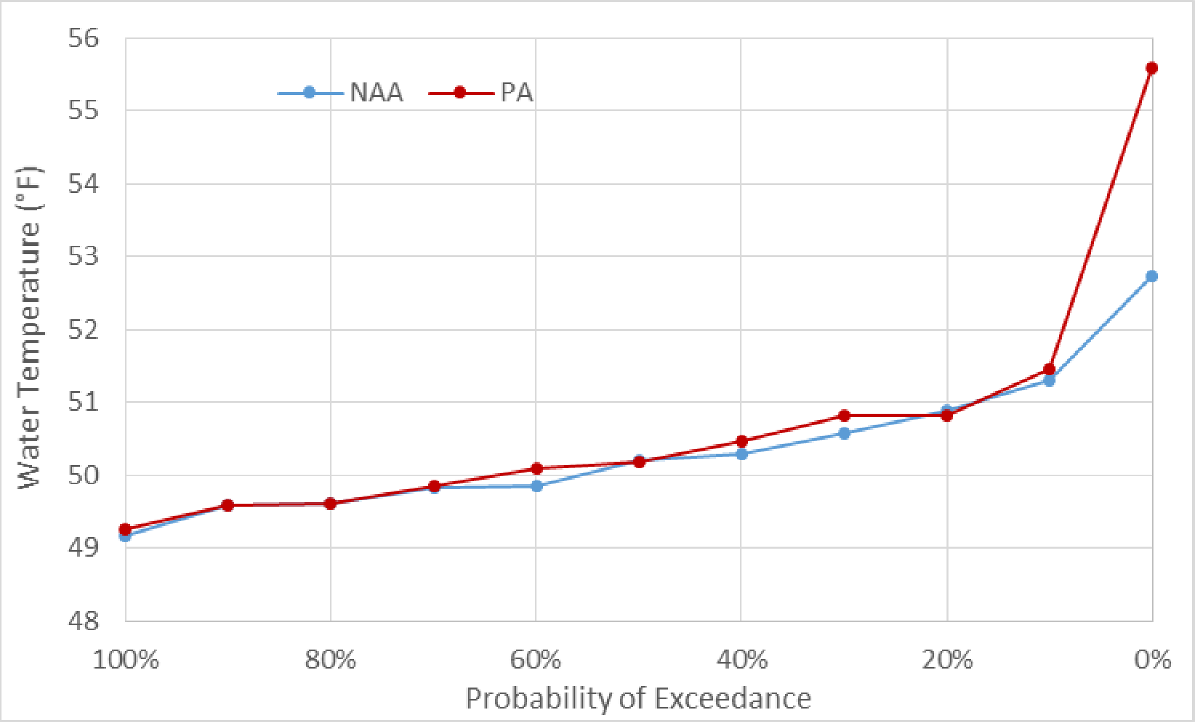


Figure 4.4-43. Exceedance Plot of Mean Monthly Water Temperatures (°F) in the Sacramento River above Clear Creek in May of Below Normal Water Years

At Balls Ferry, the percent of days exceeding the 55.4°F 7DADM threshold under the PP would be more than 5% higher than under the NAA during May of below normal years (6.2%), and July (5.5%), August (7.4%) and September (16.7%) of above normal years (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-65). There would also be a reduction in exceedance of 9.2% in June of dry years. Among these months and water year types, only May of below normal water years would also have a more-than-0.5°F increase in the magnitude of average daily exceedance (0.55°F). Similar to the Sacrament River at Clear Creek, a closer examination of the exceedance plot (Figure 4.4-44) reveals that this effect is due entirely to 1 year (1923) during which temperatures would be much higher.

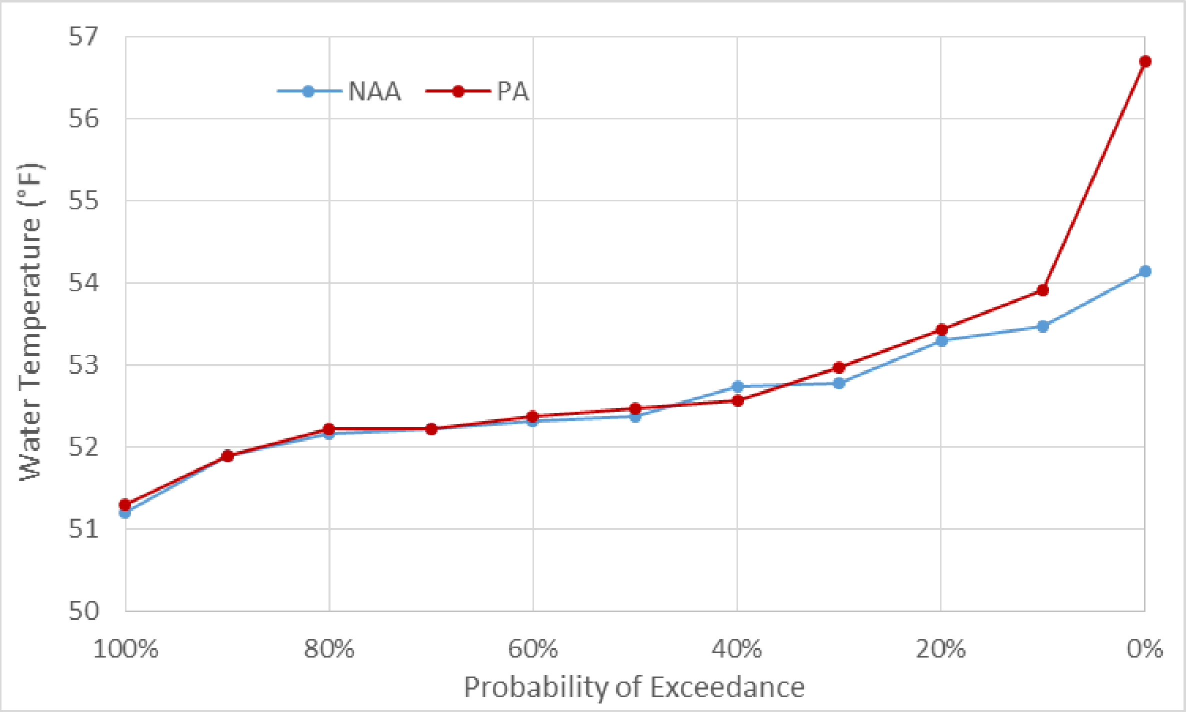


Figure 4.4-44. Exceedance Plot of Mean Monthly Water Temperatures (°F) in the Sacramento River at Balls Ferry in May of Below Normal Water Years

At Bend Bridge, the percent of days exceeding the 55.4°F 7DADM threshold under the PP would be more than 5% higher than under the NAA during September of above normal years and the percent of days exceeding the 55.4°F 7DADM threshold under the PP would be more than 5% lower than under the NAA during June of above normal years (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-66). However, in neither of these situations would there also be a more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance. Therefore, it was concluded that there would be no biologically meaningful effect at Bend Bridge.

At Red Bluff, there would be no months or water year types in which there would be 5% more days under the PP compared to the NAA on which temperatures would exceed the threshold and no more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-67).

Overall, the thresholds analysis indicates that there would be more exceedances (5% or greater) under the PP in certain months and water year types compared to the NAA. In all but two cases, these exceedances would not result in biologically meaningful water temperature-related effects on spring-run spawning, egg incubation, and alevins, as defined in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1.2.2 *Water Temperature Threshold Analysis*). The two cases where modeled water temperatures under the PP exceed the threshold greater than 5% more often than the NAA and by greater than 0.5°F more than under the NAA (May of below normal water years at Clear Creek and Balls Ferry) appear to be the result of a single year (1923) in which water temperature would be substantially higher (approximately 2°F to 3°F). This appear to be due to CALSIM II attempting to balance storage levels among the CVP reservoirs and there is no practical reason why actual operations under the PP would be different from those under the NAA in this one year. Further, CALSIM modeling results given here do not consider revisions to the OCAP RPA Action Suite 1.2 described in Section 3.1.4.5 *Annual/Seasonal Temperature Management Upstream of the Delta*, to improve egg-to-fry survival. CALSIM modeling also does not include consideration of real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5 *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta*, and Section 3.3.3 *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process*, that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects.

The Reclamation Egg Mortality Model provides temperature-related estimates of spring-run egg mortality in the Sacramento River (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Attachment 1 *Reclamation Egg Mortality Model* for full model description). As noted in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1 *Water Temperature Analysis Methods*), NMFS believes this model underestimates temperature related mortality and likely not sensitive enough to capture small differences in scenarios or temperature related mortality experienced by recent winter-run brood years and, as a result, results should be viewed with caution until a more accurate model is developed or there is better understanding of temperature effects on juvenile production. Because of this and the fact that the egg life stage has the highest potential effect on the propagation of population size in a life cycle context, a conservative value of a more-than-2% change in percent of total individuals (on a raw scale) was considered a biologically meaningful effect (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1.2.3 *Reclamation Egg Mortality Model*, for details). Results of the model are presented in Table 4.4-28 and Figure 4.4-45 through Figure 4.4-50.

The results indicate that there would be no large increases in egg mortality under the PP relative to the NAA. The largest increase in mean egg mortality would be 1.9% (raw difference) in below-normal water years. There would be a biologically meaningful reduction in egg mortality of 6.7% in critical water years, although this difference in means is driven largely by 2 years in which egg mortality would be substantially (35% to 45%) reduced under the PP relative to the NAA (Figure 4.4-50).

Table 4.4-28. Spring-run Chinook Salmon Egg Mortality (Percent of Total Individuals) and Differences (Percent Differences) between Model Scenarios, Reclamation Egg Mortality Model

WYT	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
Wet	6.3	6.3	0.1 (1%)
Above Normal	5.0	5.4	0.4 (9%)
Below Normal	13.3	15.2	1.9 (14%)
Dry	19.0	19.1	0.1 (0.4%)
Critical	86.3	79.7	-6.7 (-8%)
All	22.0	21.4	-0.6 (-3%)

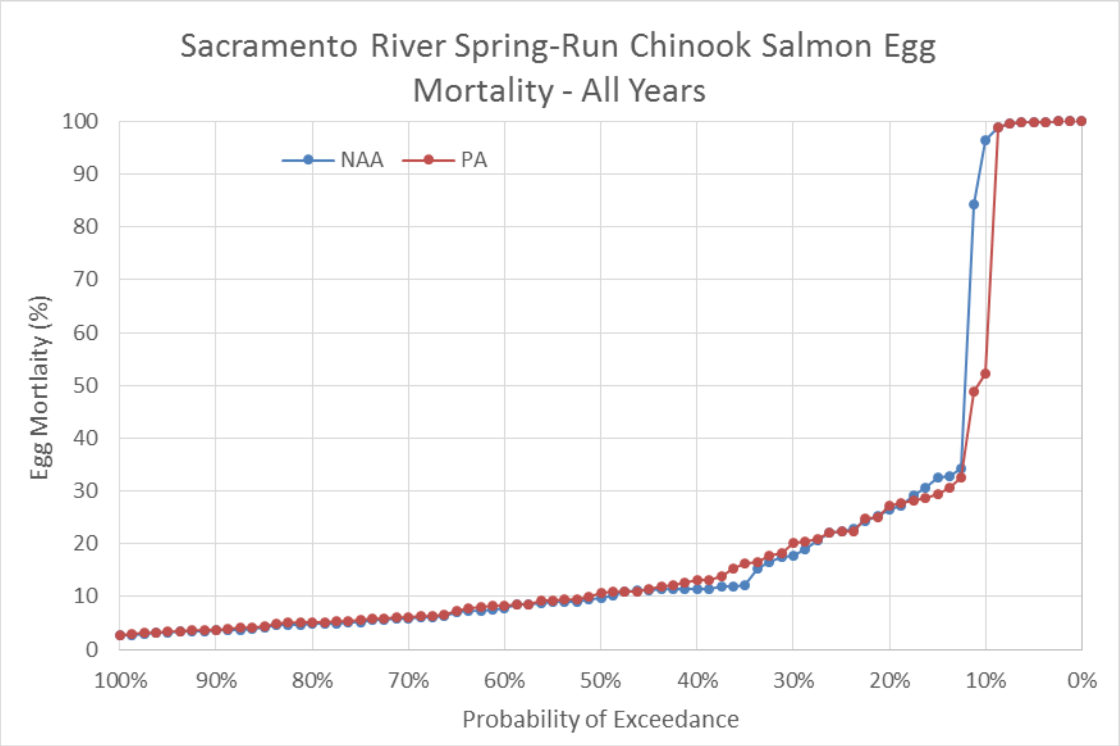


Figure 4.4-45. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Egg Mortality for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Reclamation Egg Mortality Model, All Water Years

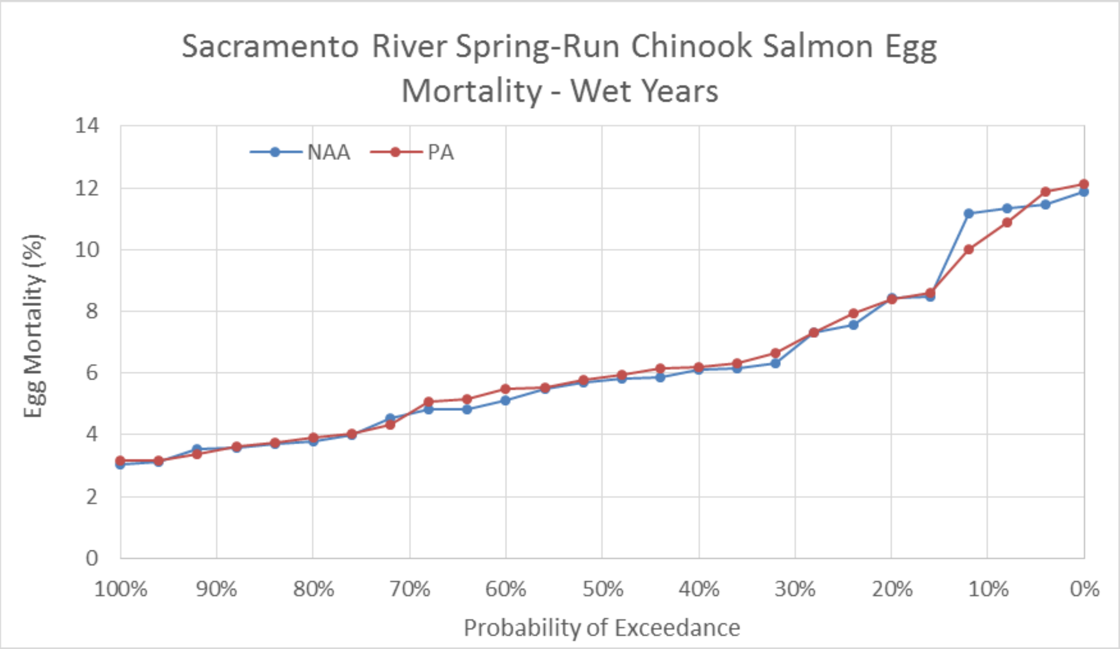


Figure 4.4-46. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Egg Mortality for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Reclamation Egg Mortality Model, Wet Water Years

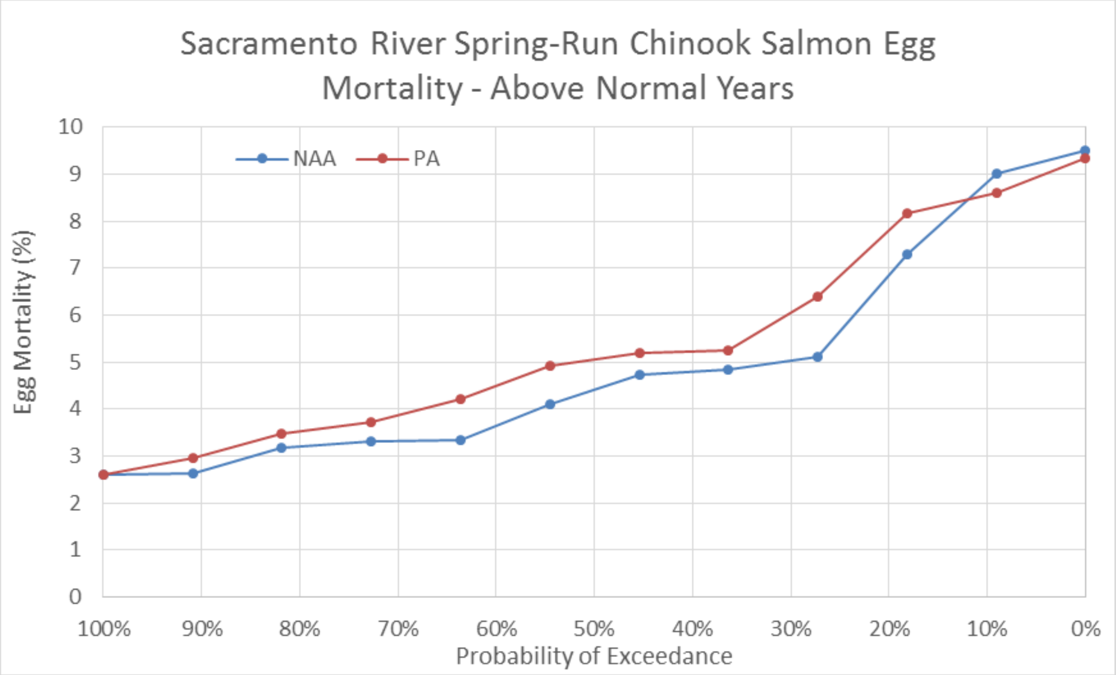


Figure 4.4-47. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Egg Mortality for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Reclamation Egg Mortality Model, Above Normal Water Years

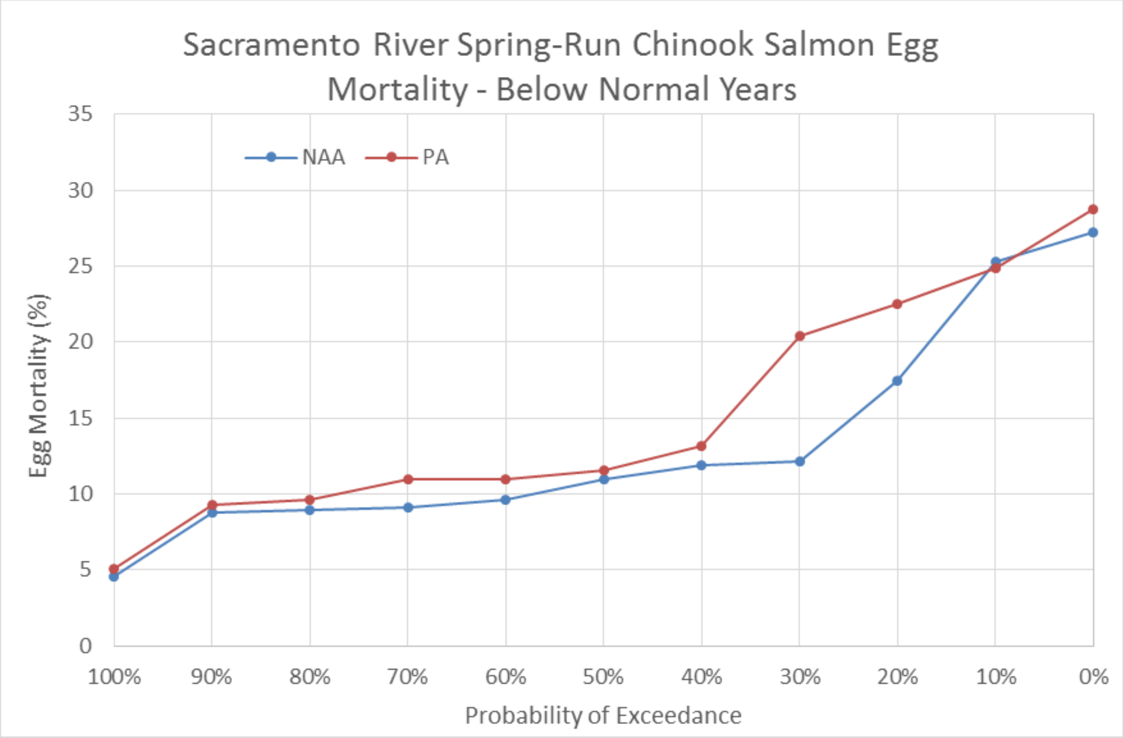


Figure 4.4-48. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Egg Mortality for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Reclamation Egg Mortality Model, Below Normal Water Years

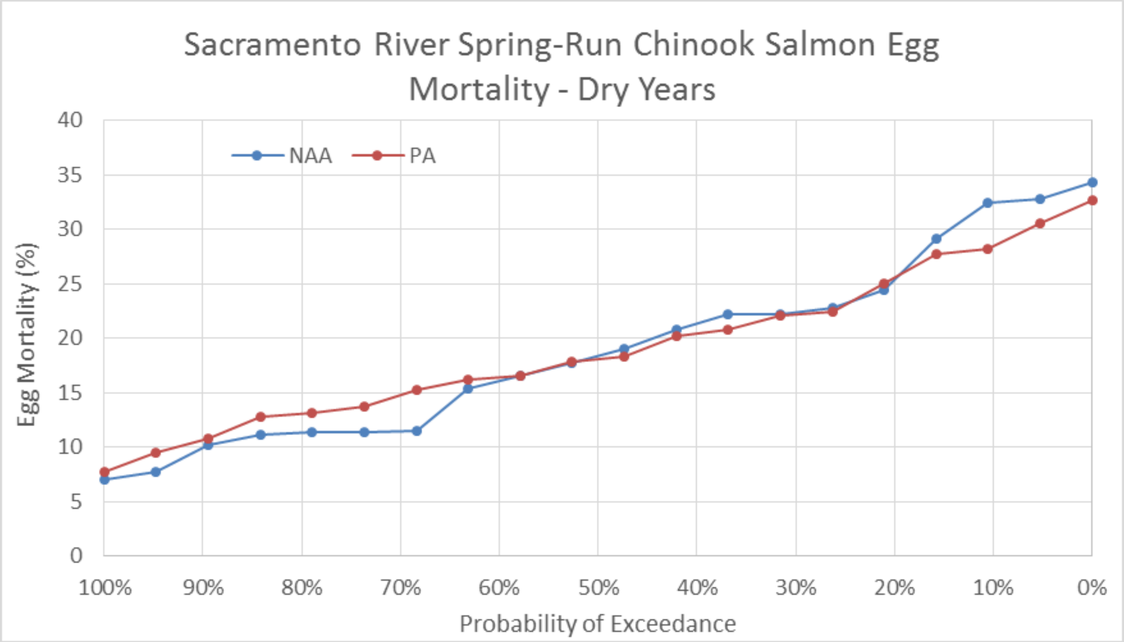


Figure 4.4-49. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Egg Mortality for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Reclamation Egg Mortality Model, Dry Water Years

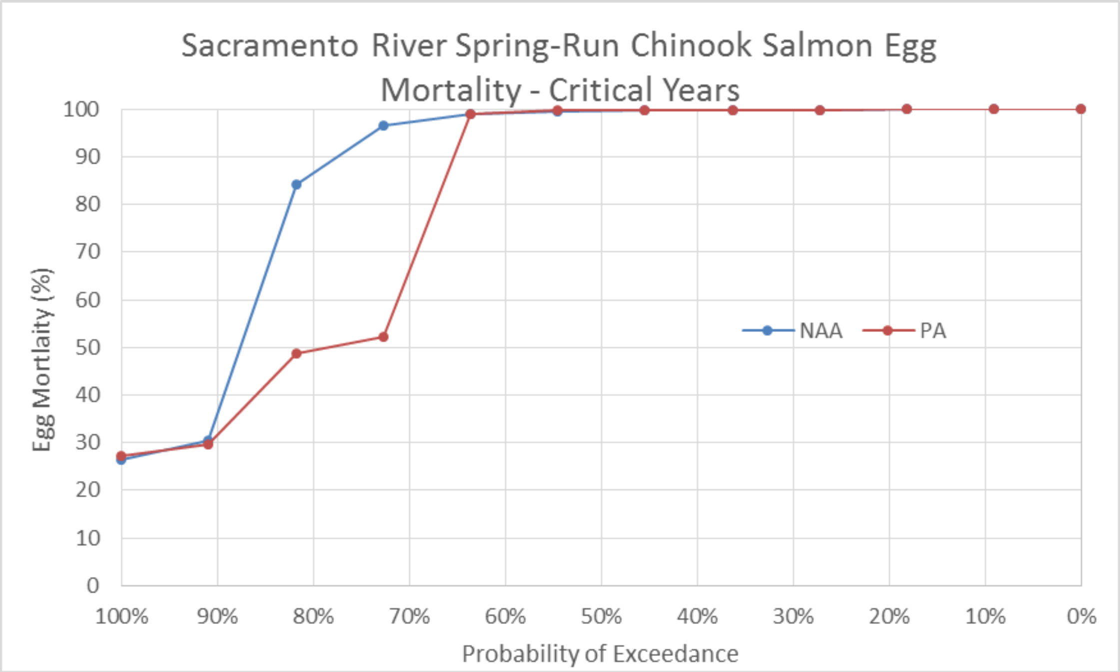


Figure 4.4-50. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Egg Mortality for NAA and PP Model Scenarios, Reclamation Egg Mortality Model, Critical Water Years

The SALMOD model provides predicted water temperature-related mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon spawning, eggs, and alevins the Sacramento River. This water temperature-related mortality of the combined spring-run Chinook salmon “spawning, eggs, and alevins” life stage is split up as *pre-spawn* (in vivo, or in the mother before spawning) and *egg* (in the gravel) mortality (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Attachment 5.D.2 *SALMOD Model* for a full description). The annual exceedance plot of temperature-related mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon spawning, eggs, and alevins is presented in Figure 4.4-51. The model indicates that, combining all water year types, water temperature-related mortality of the spawning, egg, and alevin life stage would decrease by 12,110 fish (7%) under the PP relative to the NAA. Within the combined spawning, egg, and alevin life stage, there would be an increase in pre-spawn mortality of 4,431 eggs in the mother (10%) under the PP, but a decrease in egg mortality of 16,540 eggs (13%). Water temperature-related mortality of this combined spawning, egg, and alevin life stage would comprise the large majority (more than 95%) of overall spring-run Chinook salmon mortality and, therefore, can be considered an important source of mortality to early life stages of spring-run Chinook salmon. Individual water year types largely follow the same patterns as for all water year types combined, with few exceptions. Most notably, in below normal years, there would be an overall increase in water temperature-related mortality under the PP in both pre-spawn (100%) and egg (18%) mortality, and an overall increase in water temperature-related mortality under the PP (18%).

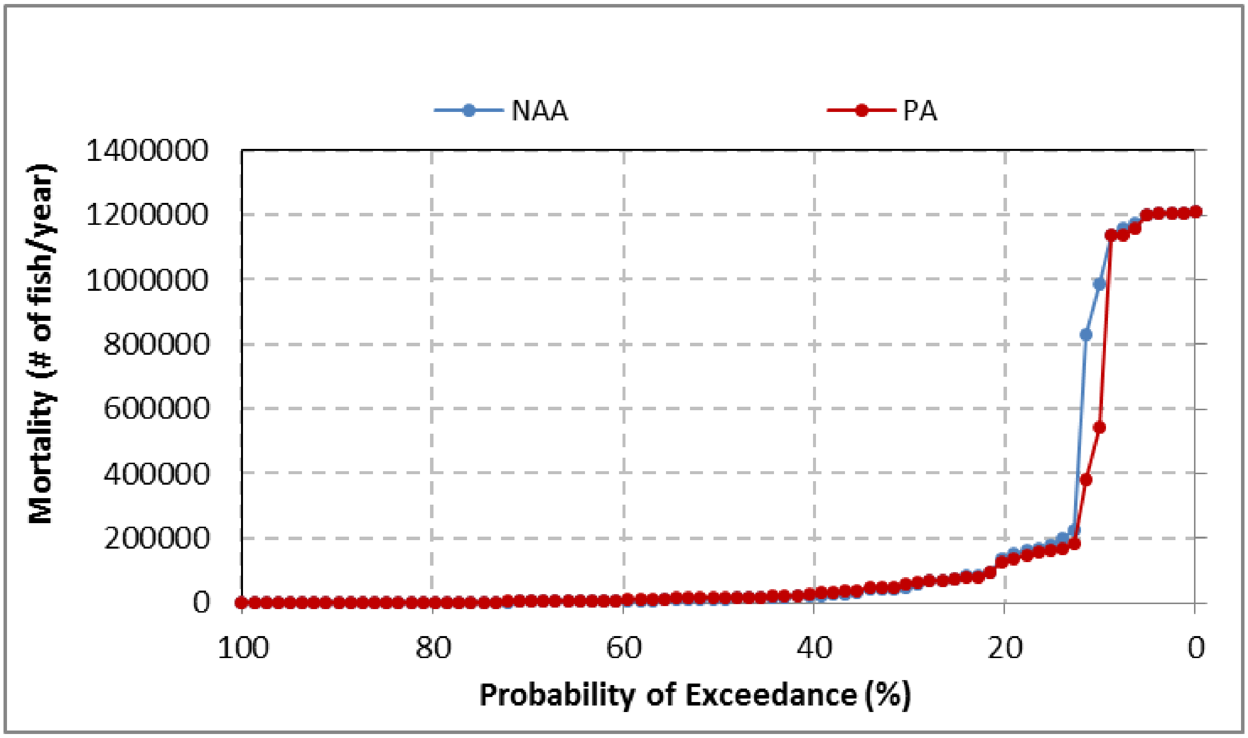


Figure 4.4-51. Exceedance Plot of Annual Water Temperature-Based Mortality (#of Fish/Year) of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Spawning, Egg Incubation, and Alevins

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.2 Fry and Juvenile Rearing

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.2.1 Flow-Related Effects

As discussed in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.3, *Rearing Flows Methods*), the stranding of juvenile salmonids is not evaluated in the effects analysis due to limitations of CALSIM modeling. The effect of juvenile stranding on production of Chinook salmon populations is not well understood, but stranding is frequently identified as a potentially important mortality factor for the populations in the Sacramento River and its tributaries (Jarret and Killam 2014, 2015, Cramer Fish Sciences 2014, National Marine Fisheries Service 2009, Bureau of Reclamation 2008, Water Forum 2005, California Department of Fish and Game 2001, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2001). Juvenile stranding generally results from reductions in flow that occur over short periods of time, and the CALSIM modeling used to evaluate flow in this effects analysis has a monthly time step, which is too long for any meaningful analysis of juvenile stranding.

Juvenile salmon typically rest in shallow slow-moving water between feeding forays into swifter water. This tendency makes them particularly susceptible to stranding during rapid reductions in flow that dewater and isolate the shallow river margin areas (Jarrett and Killam 2015). Juveniles are most vulnerable to stranding during periods of high and fluctuating flow, when they typically move into side channel habitats that may be extensively inundated. Stranding can lead to direct mortality when these areas drain or dry up, or to indirect mortality from predators or rising water temperatures and deteriorating water quality. High, rapidly changing flows may result from flow release pulses to meet Delta water quality standards and from flood control releases, as well as from tributary freshets following rain events (Jarrett and Killam 2015, Bureau of Reclamation 2008). Stranding may also occur during periods of controlled flow reductions, such as when irrigation demand declines in the fall (National Marine Fisheries Service 2009) or following gate removal at the ACID dam in November and the RBDD dam in September (National Marine Fisheries Service 2009).

As described in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.3 *Rearing Flows Methods*), the NMFS 2009 BO includes ramping rate restrictions on flow releases from both Keswick Dam and Nimbus Dam to reduce the risk of juvenile stranding and redd dewatering. All ramping restrictions for dams on the Sacramento River and its tributaries would be kept in place for the PP, and, therefore, it is expected that the juvenile stranding risk would be similar for the PP and the NAA.

Estimated mean monthly flow rates and reservoir storage volumes were examined for the PP and NAA in the Sacramento River at the Keswick to Red Bluff locations during the year-round fry and juvenile rearing period for spring-run Chinook salmon, with peak occurrence during November and December (Table 4.4-20; ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results*, Table 5.A.6-10 and Table 5.A.6-35). Changes in flow can affect the instream area available for rearing, along with habitat quality, and can affect stranding of fry and juveniles, especially in side-channel habitats. Shasta Reservoir storage volumes at the end of May and the end of September influence flow rates in the Sacramento River. Mean Shasta May storage under the PP would be similar (less than 5% difference) to storage under NAA for all water year types (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A, Table 5.A.6-3).

Shasta Reservoir storage in September under the PP would also be similar (less than 5% difference) to storage under NAA for all water year types, except for 7% higher mean storage during critical water years under the PP.

During most months and water year types of the rearing period, mean flow under the PP would be similar (less than 5% difference) or higher than flow under the NAA during winter, spring, and summer months and would be similar to or lower than flow under the NAA during the fall, with exceptions (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results*, Table 5.A.6-10 and Table 5.A.6-35). Flows under the PP during December through August would be similar to (less than 5% difference) or greater than those under the NAA for all months and water year types, except for 13% and 7% lower flow during February of critical water years at Keswick and Red Bluff, respectively, and 10% lower flow during August of below normal years at both locations. Flow increases during the same months would range up to 18% for January of critical years. During June, flows would be greater than 5% higher under the PP than the NAA in all water year types except wet years. Flows under the PP during September through November would be similar to (less than 5% difference) or lower than those under the NAA in all months and water year types, except for flows up to 17% greater during October of below normal and dry years and up to 13% greater during November of critical years. During September, flow would be up to 11% lower under the PP than the NAA for all water year types except wet years. The largest flow reductions would occur in November of wet and above normal year, with reductions of 26% at Keswick and 21% at Red Bluff for both year types. The November reductions coincide with the period of peak occurrence of spring-run fry. The results given here indicate that the PP would reduce flow in some months and water year types, although this does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5 *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta*, and Section 3.3.3 *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process*, that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects. Further discussion regarding flow-related effects during the June through November period is provided in Section 4.3.4.2.2, *Summary of Upstream Effects.*

Because, as described in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.3 *Rearing Flows Methods*), rearing habitat WUA for spring-run Chinook salmon was not estimated directly by USFWS (2005b) but was modeled using the rearing habitat WUA curves obtained for fall-run Chinook salmon in Segments 4, 5 and 6 (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2003a, 2006), the fall-run WUA curves for these three segments were also used in this effects analysis to model spring-run Chinook salmon rearing habitat. The rearing WUA curves for fall-run Chinook salmon were used because the fry rearing period of fall-run is similar to that of spring-run, and because this substitution follows previous practice (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.3 *Rearing Flows Methods).* However, as noted by USFWS (2005b), the validity of using the fall-run Chinook salmon rearing WUA curves to characterize spring-run Chinook salmon rearing habitat is uncertain. To estimate changes in rearing WUA that would result from the PP, the fall-run Chinook salmon WUA curves developed for each of the river segments was used with mean monthly CALSIM II flow estimates for the midpoint of each segment under the PP and the NAA during the rearing periods for spring-run fry (November through February) and juveniles (year-round) (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.3 *Rearing Flows Methods*). Fry were defined in this analysis as fish less than 60 mm, and juveniles were those greater than 60 mm. Further information on the rearing WUA analysis methods is provided in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.3, *Rearing Flows Methods*).

Differences under the PP and NAA in rearing WUA for spring-run fry and juveniles were examined using exceedance plots of mean monthly WUA for the spring-run fry (Figure 4.4-52 to Figure 4.4-69) and juvenile (Figure 4.4-70 to Figure 4.4-87) rearing periods in each of the river segments for each water year type and all water year types combined. The PP exceedance curves for both fry and juvenile rearing WUA for all water years combined are similar to those for the NAA for all three river segments (Figure 4.4-52; Figure 4.4-58; Figure 4.4-64; Figure 4.4-70; Figure 4.4-76; Figure 4.4-82). With the curves broken out by water year type, increases in fry rearing habitat WUA under the PP are evident in Segments 5 and 4 during above normal years (Figure 4.4-60; Figure 4.4-66), and increases in juvenile rearing WUA under the PP are evident in Segment 4 during wet and above normal years (Figure 4.4-83; Figure 4.4-84).

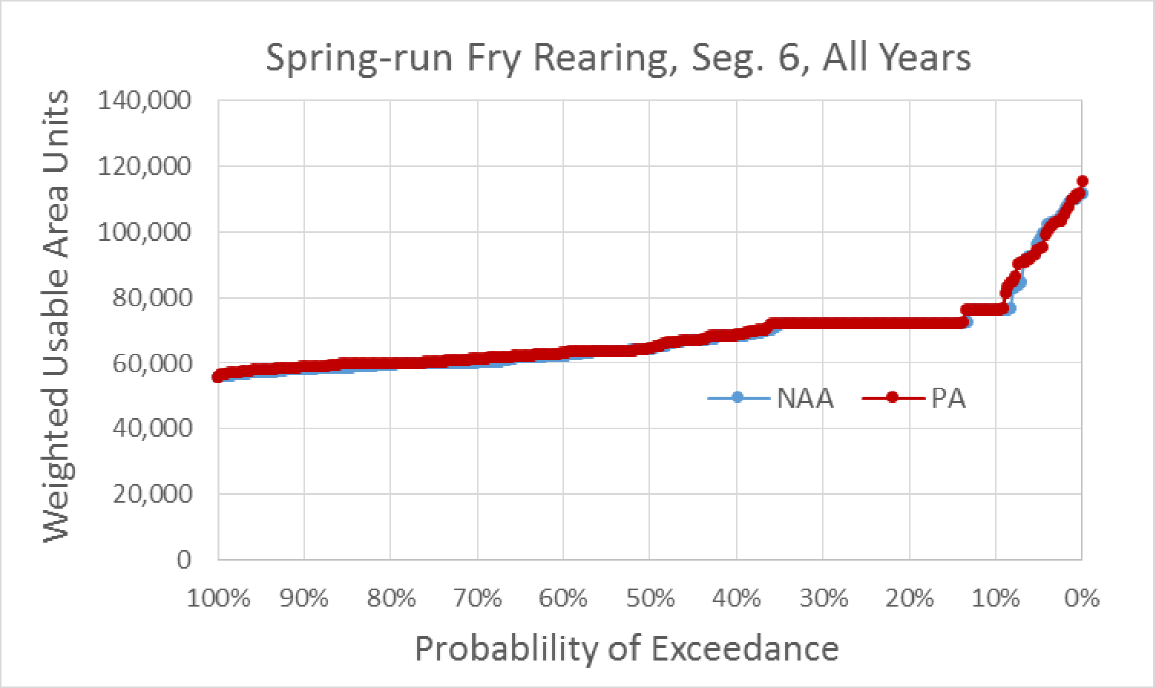


Figure 4.4-52. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, All Water Years

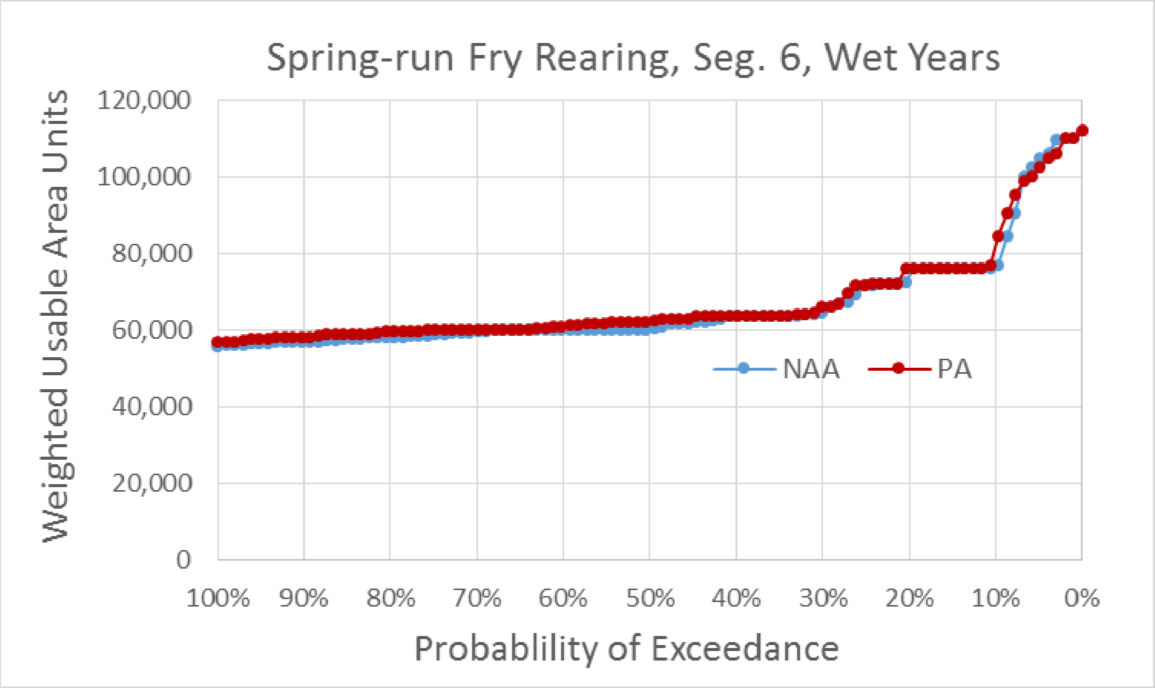


Figure 4.4-53. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Wet Water Years

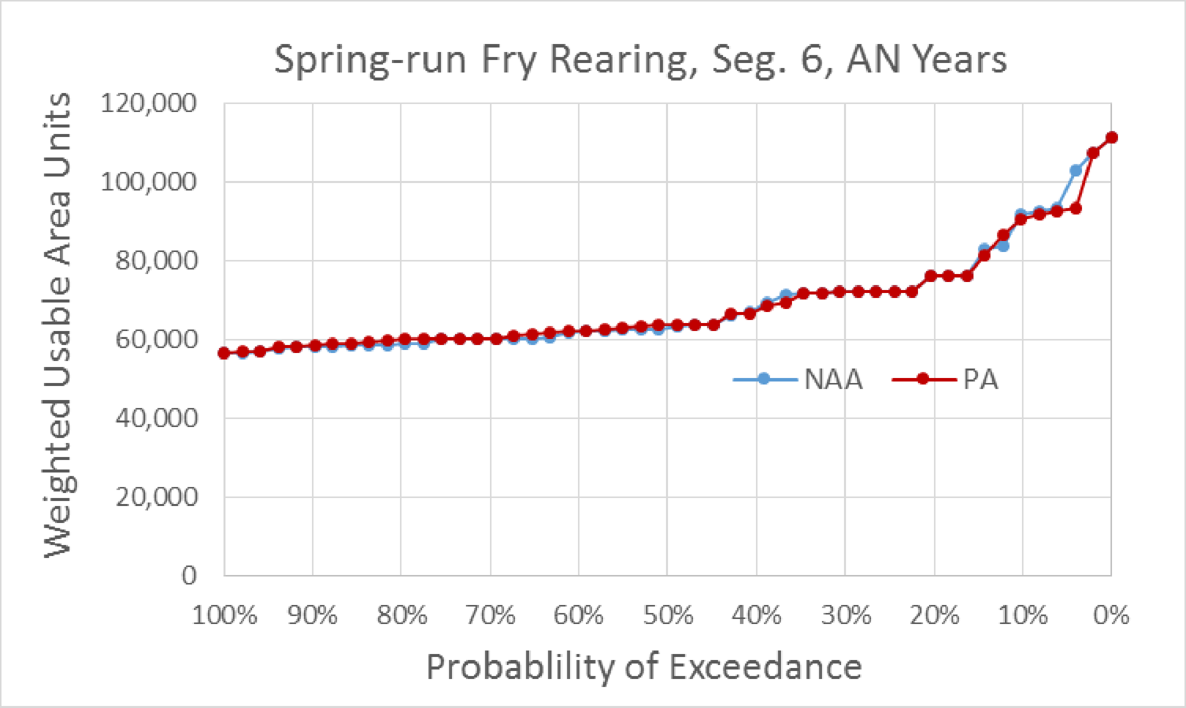


Figure 4.4-54. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Above Normal Water Years

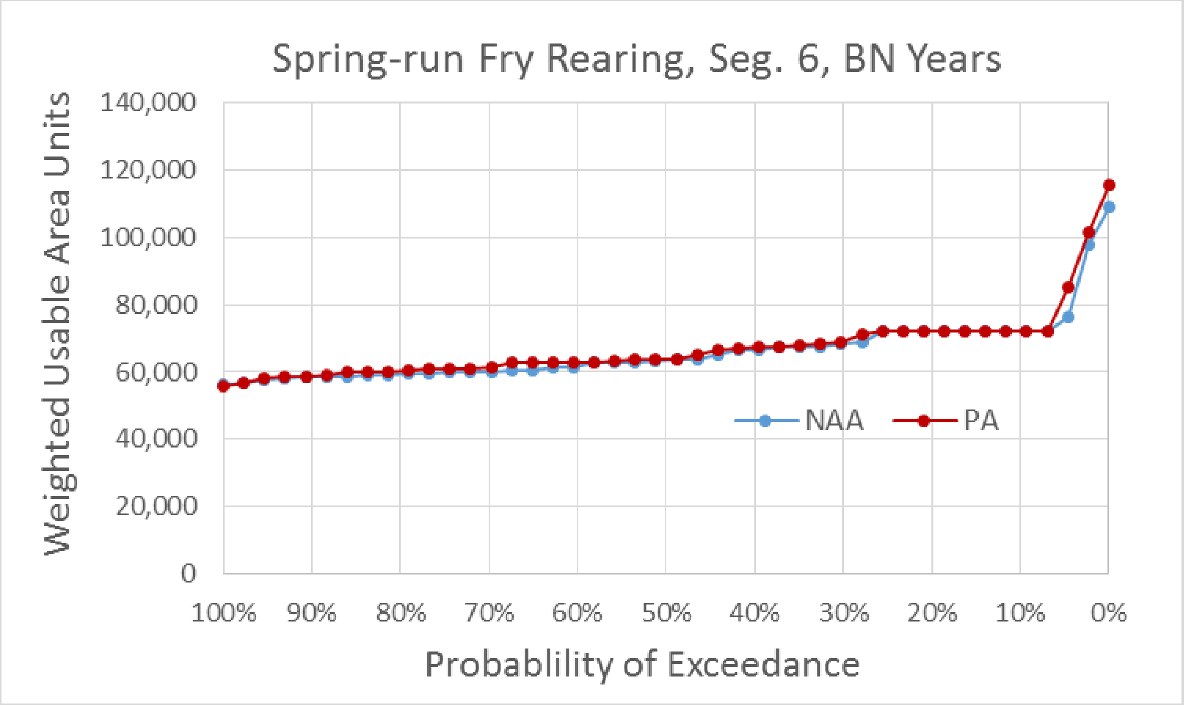


Figure 4.4-55. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Below Normal Water Years

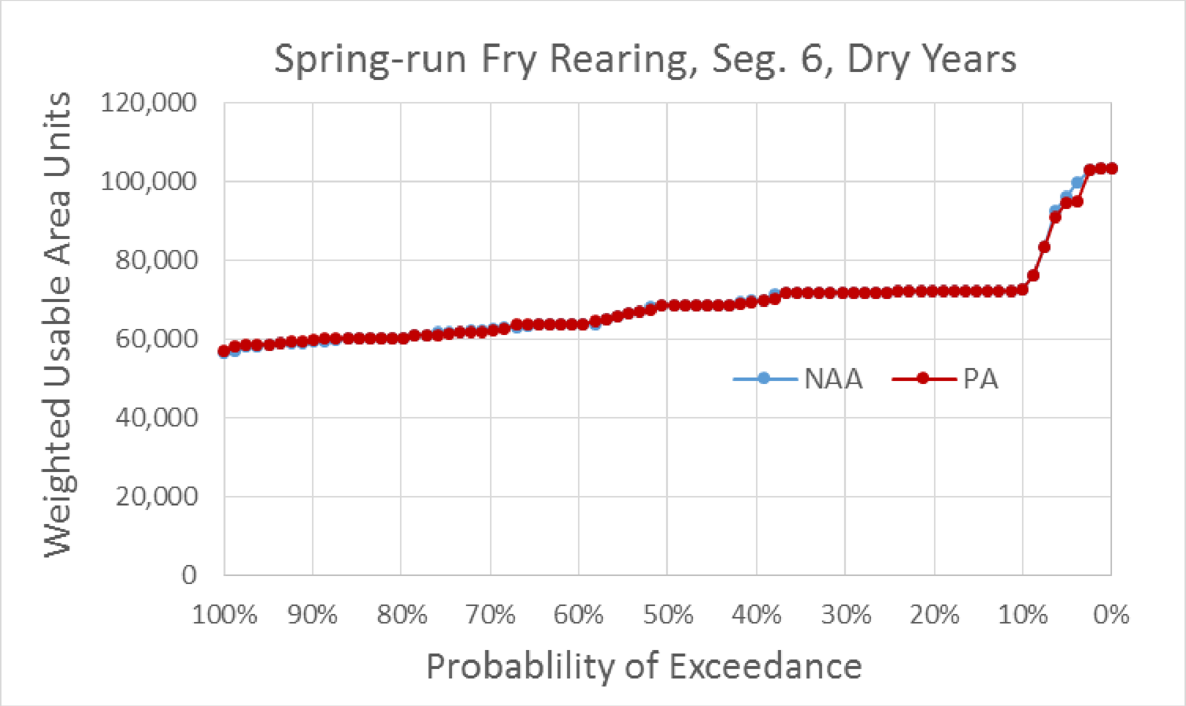


Figure 4.4-56. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Dry Water Years

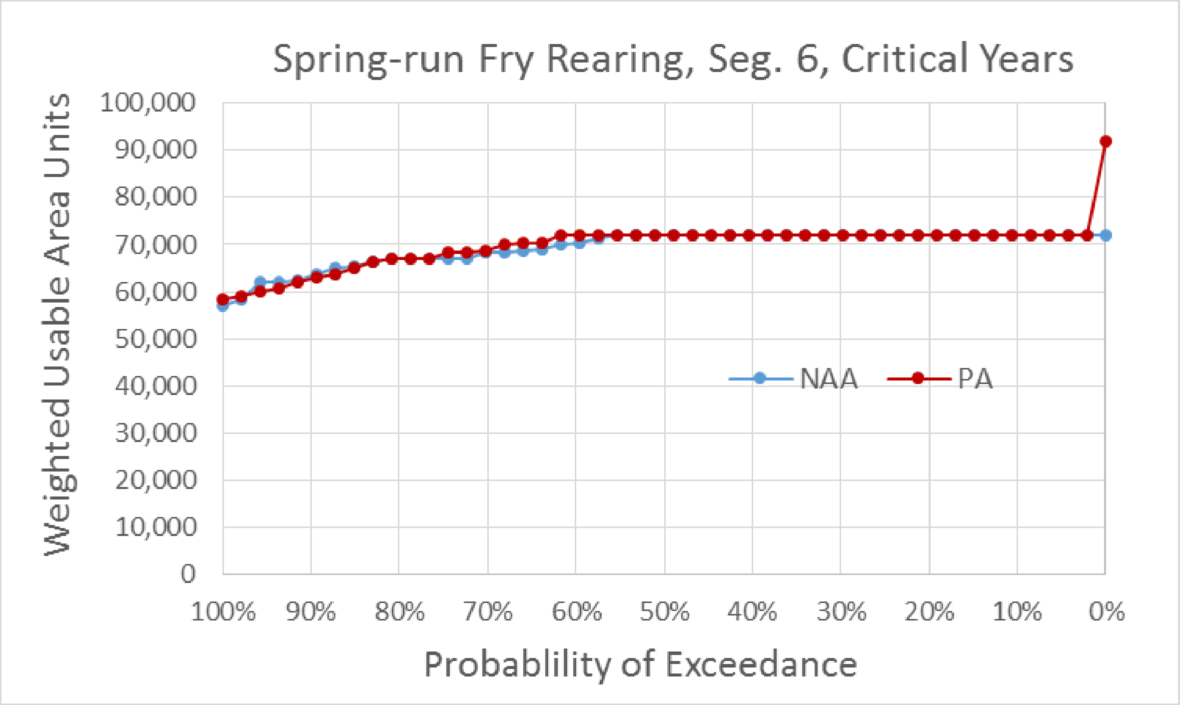


Figure 4.4-57. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Critical Water Years

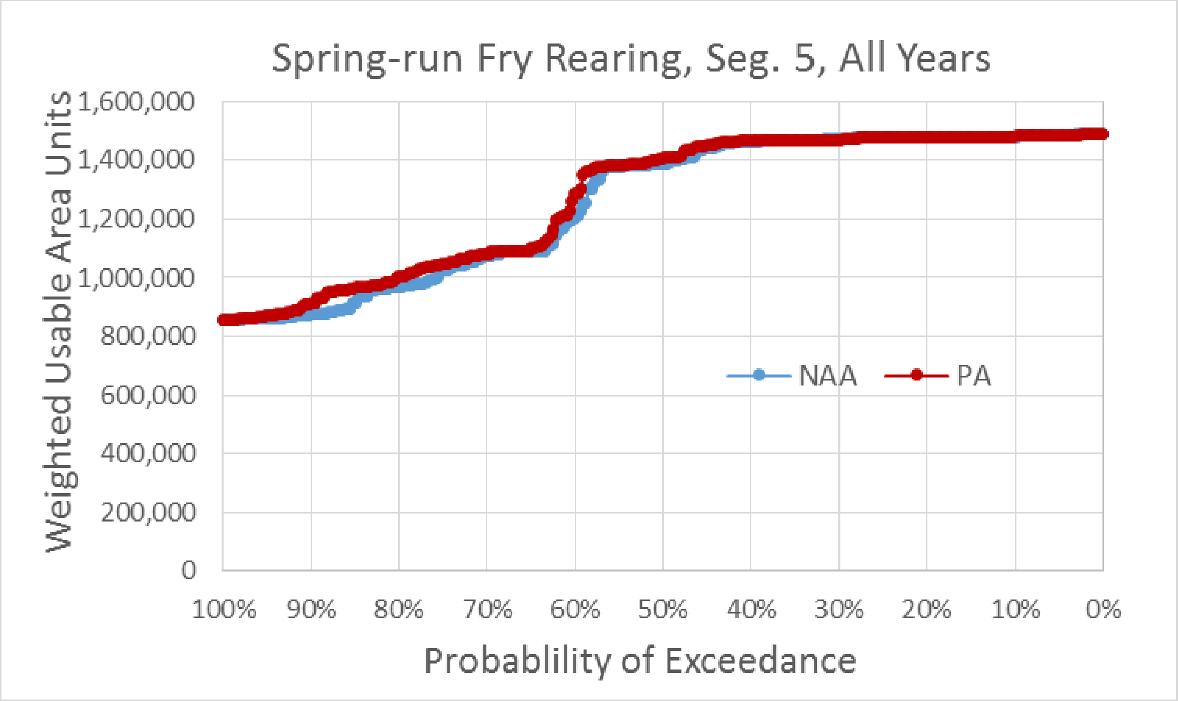


Figure 4.4-58. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, All Water Years

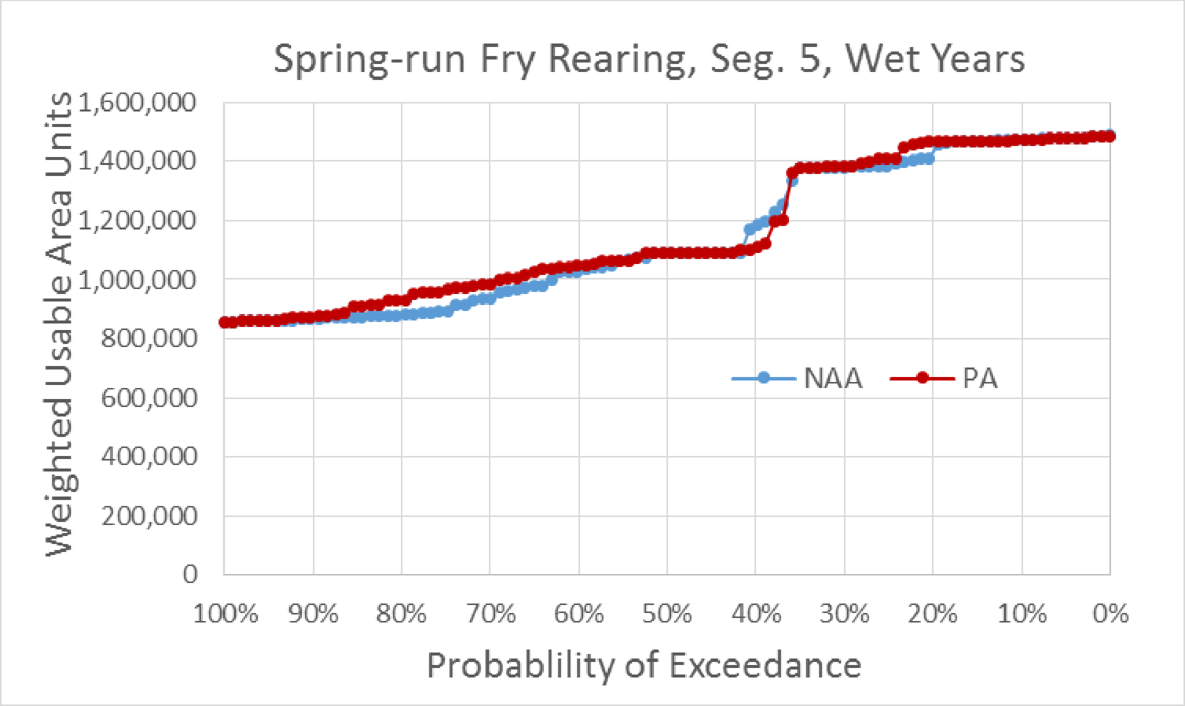


Figure 4.4-59. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Wet Water Years

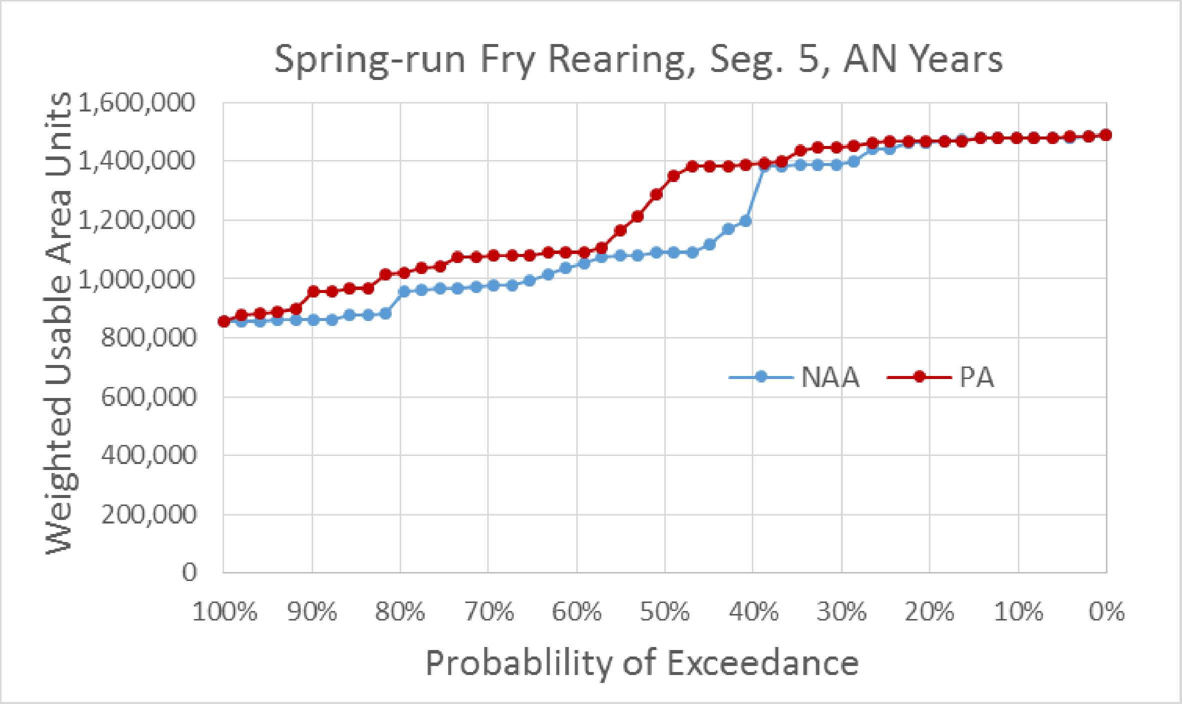


Figure 4.4-60. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Above Normal Water Years

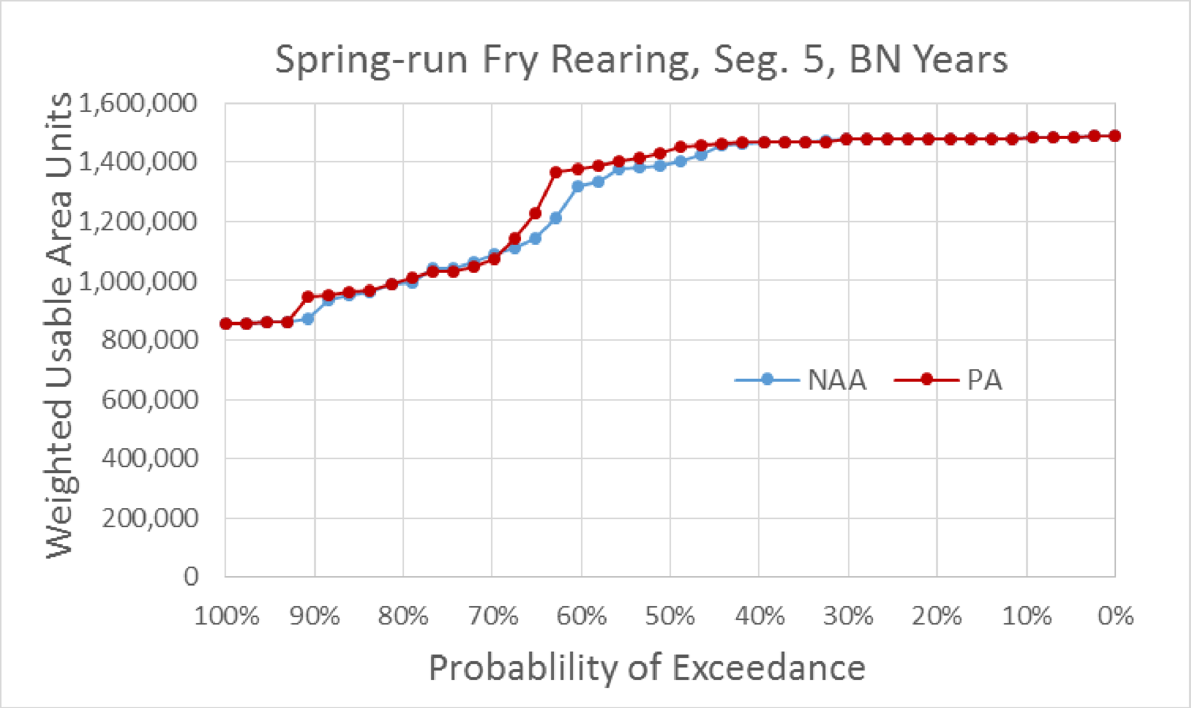


Figure 4.4-61. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Below Normal Water Years

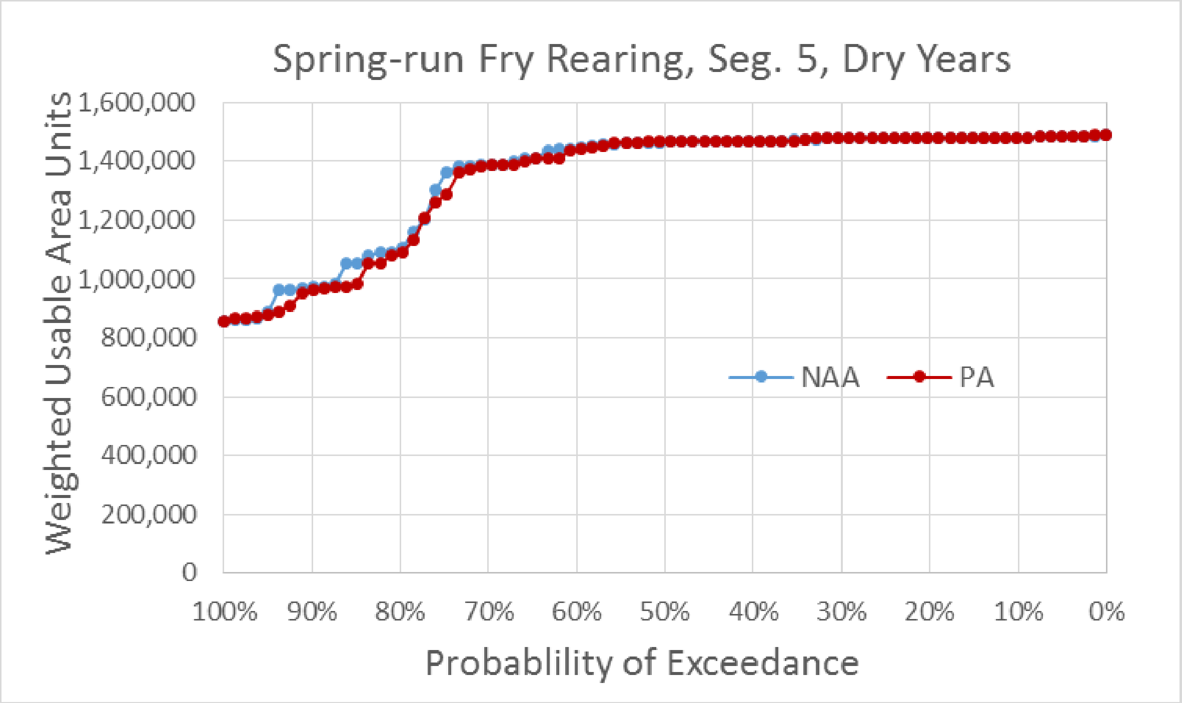


Figure 4.4-62. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Dry Water Years

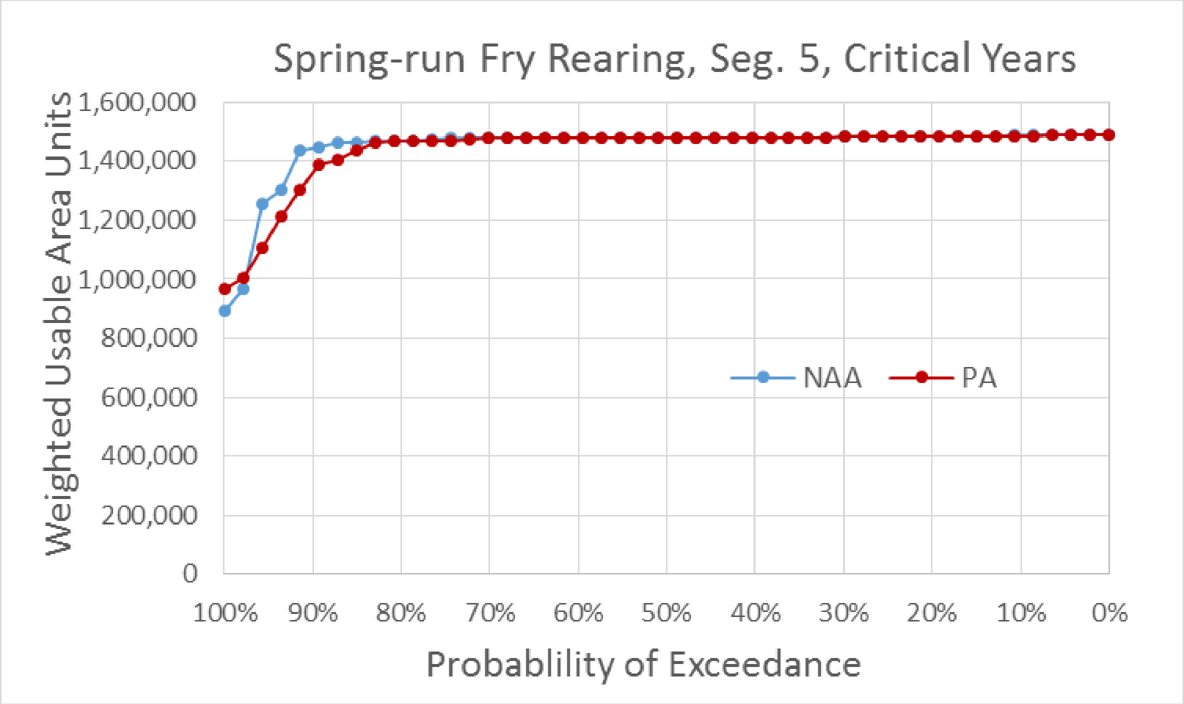


Figure 4.4-63. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Critical Water Years

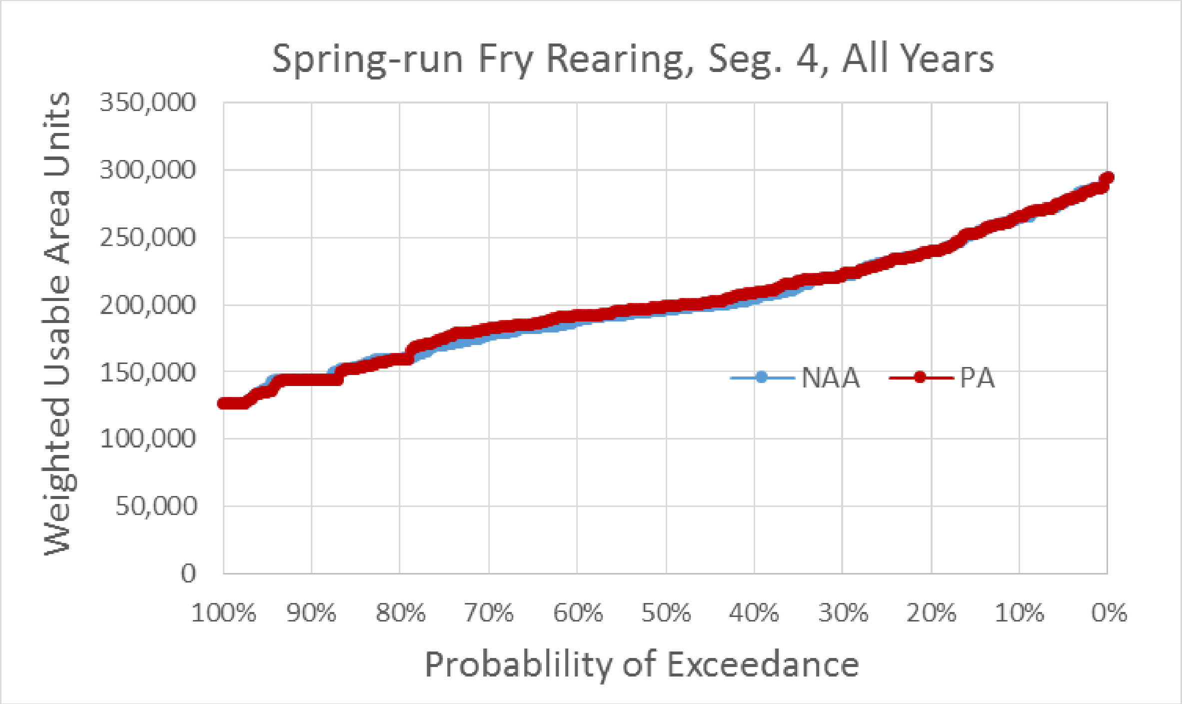


Figure 4.4-64. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, All Water Years

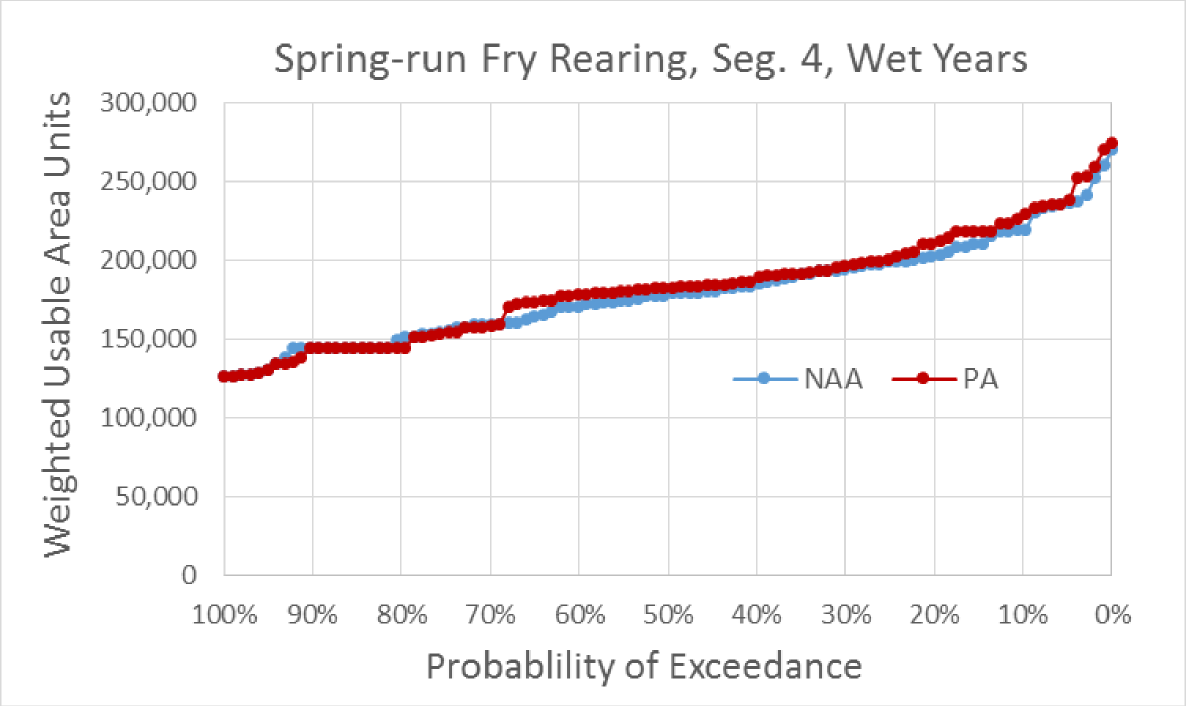


Figure 4.4-65. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Wet Water Years

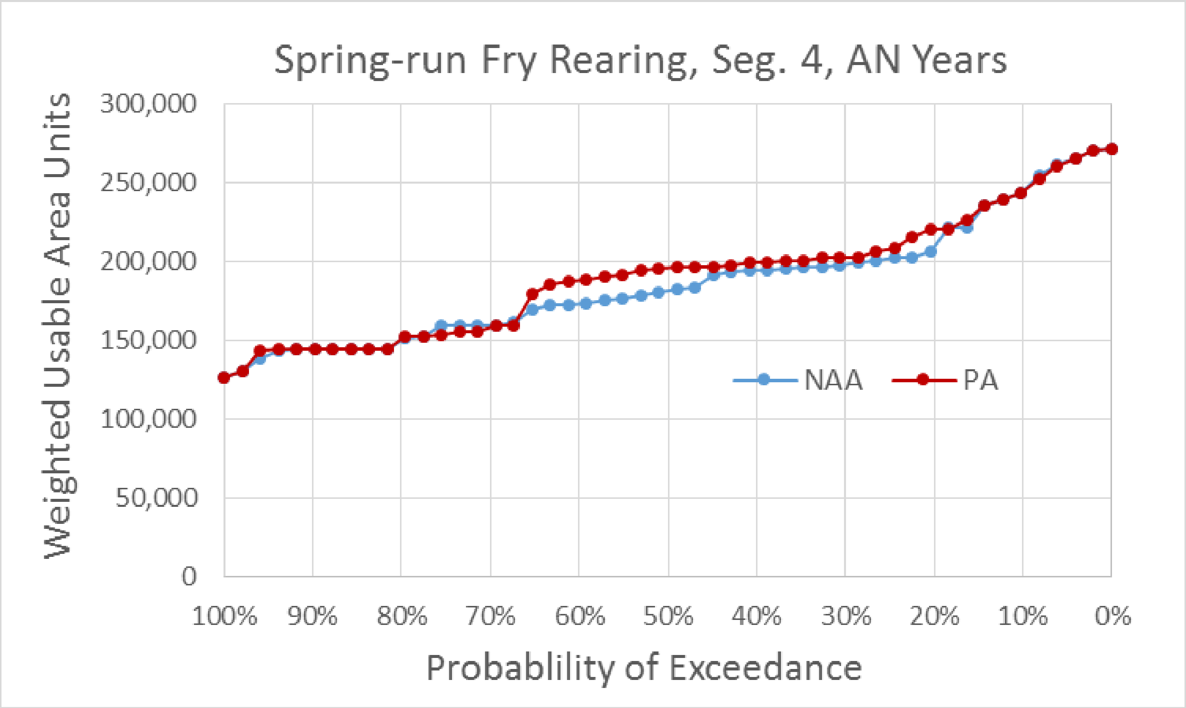


Figure 4.4-66. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Above Normal Water Years

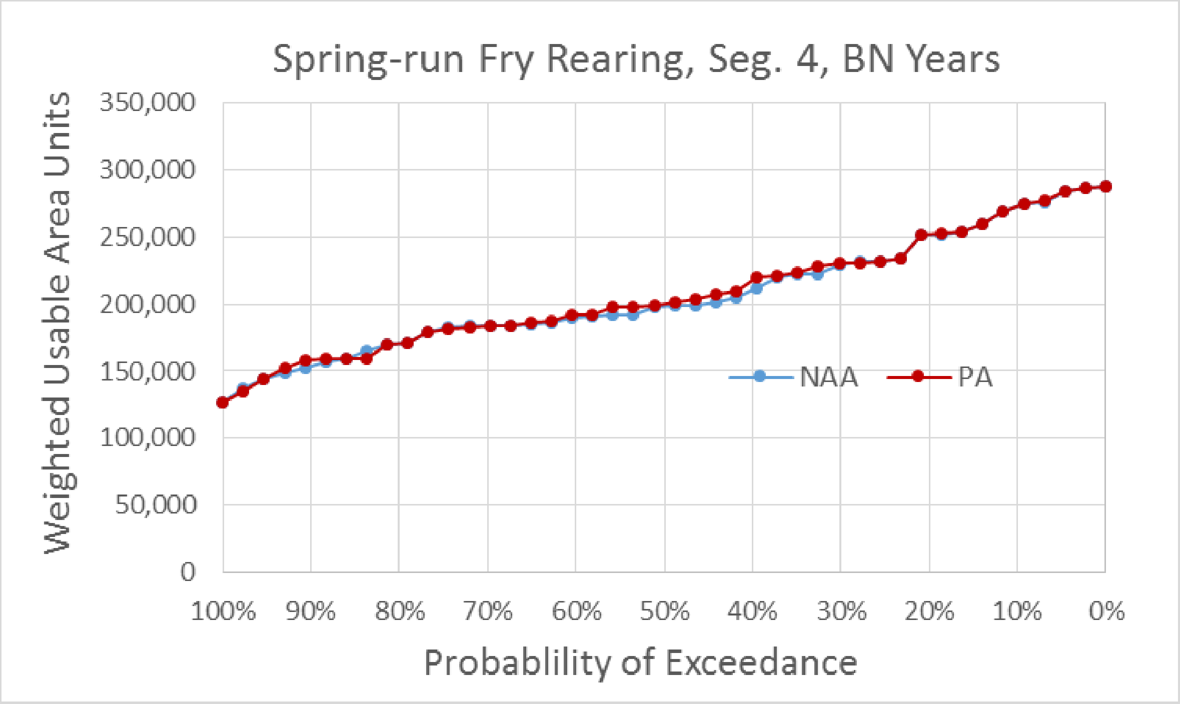


Figure 4.4-67. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Below Normal Water Years

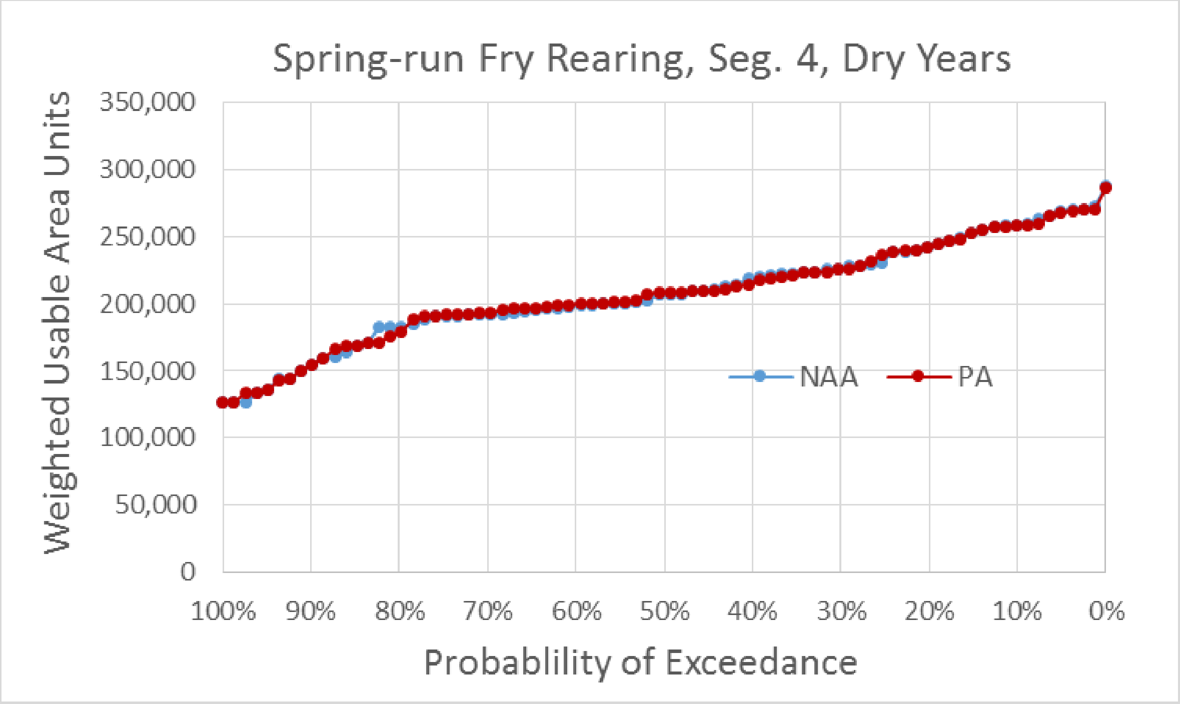


Figure 4.4-68. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Dry Water Years

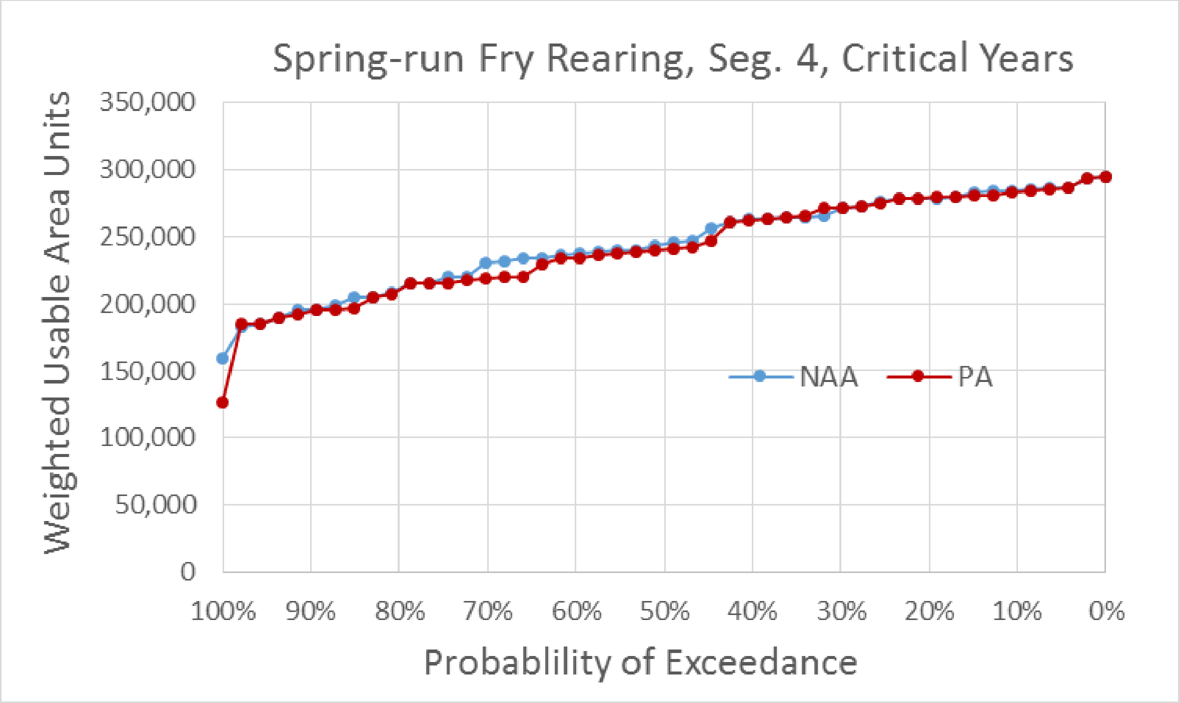


Figure 4.4-69. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Critical Water Years

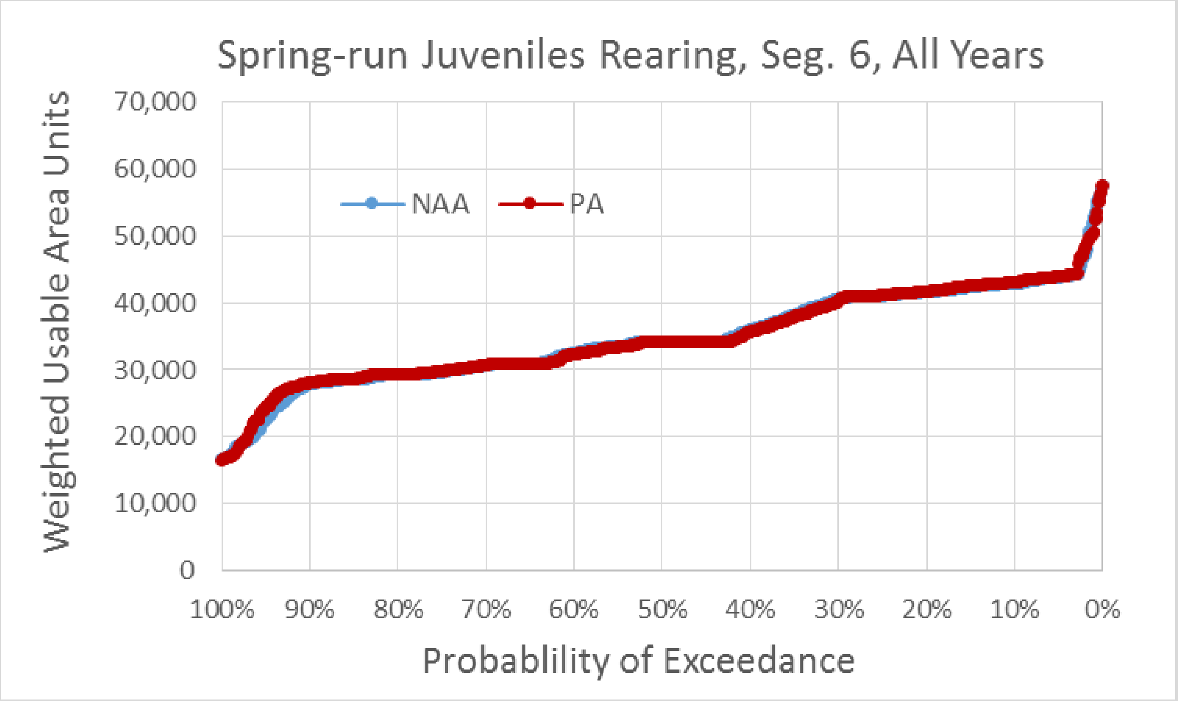


Figure 4.4-70. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, All Water Years

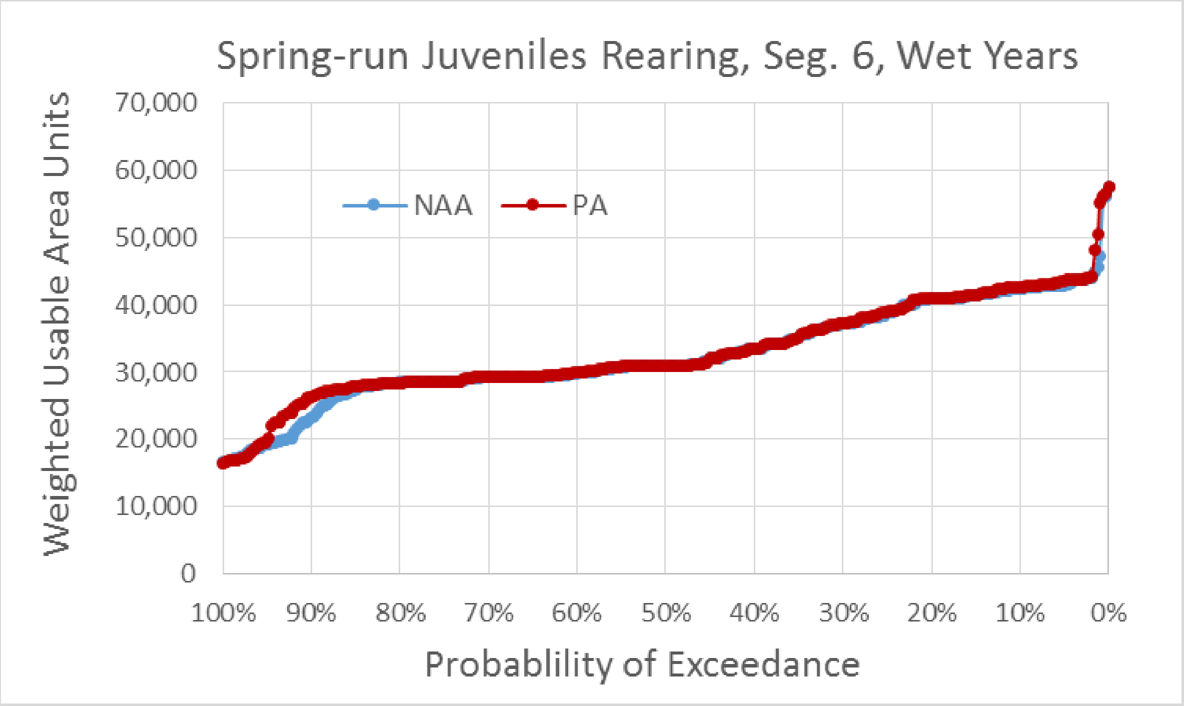


Figure 4.4-71. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Wet Water Years

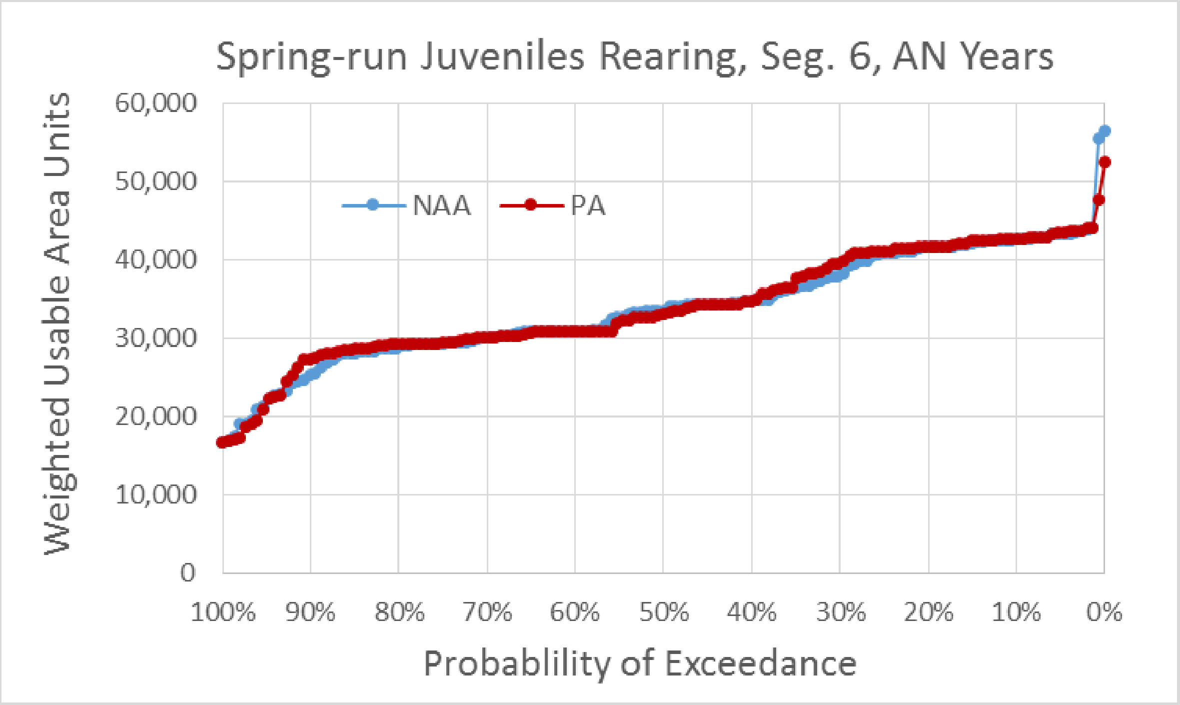


Figure 4.4-72. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Above Normal Water Years

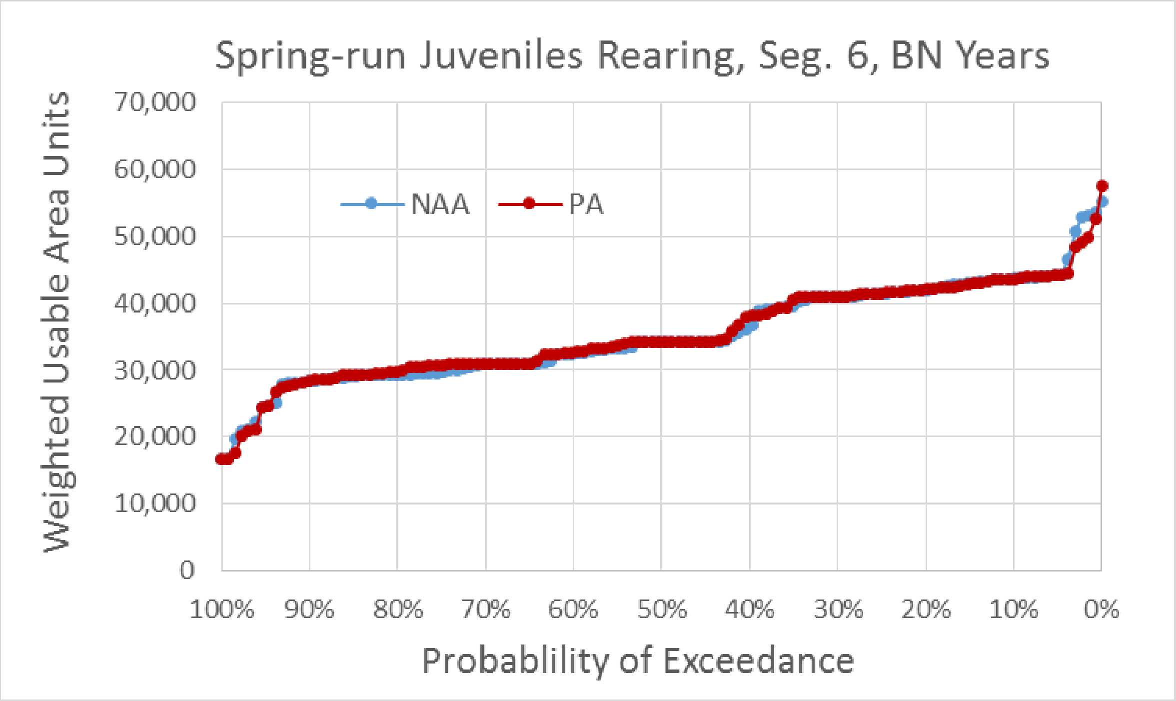


Figure 4.4-73. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Below Normal Water Years

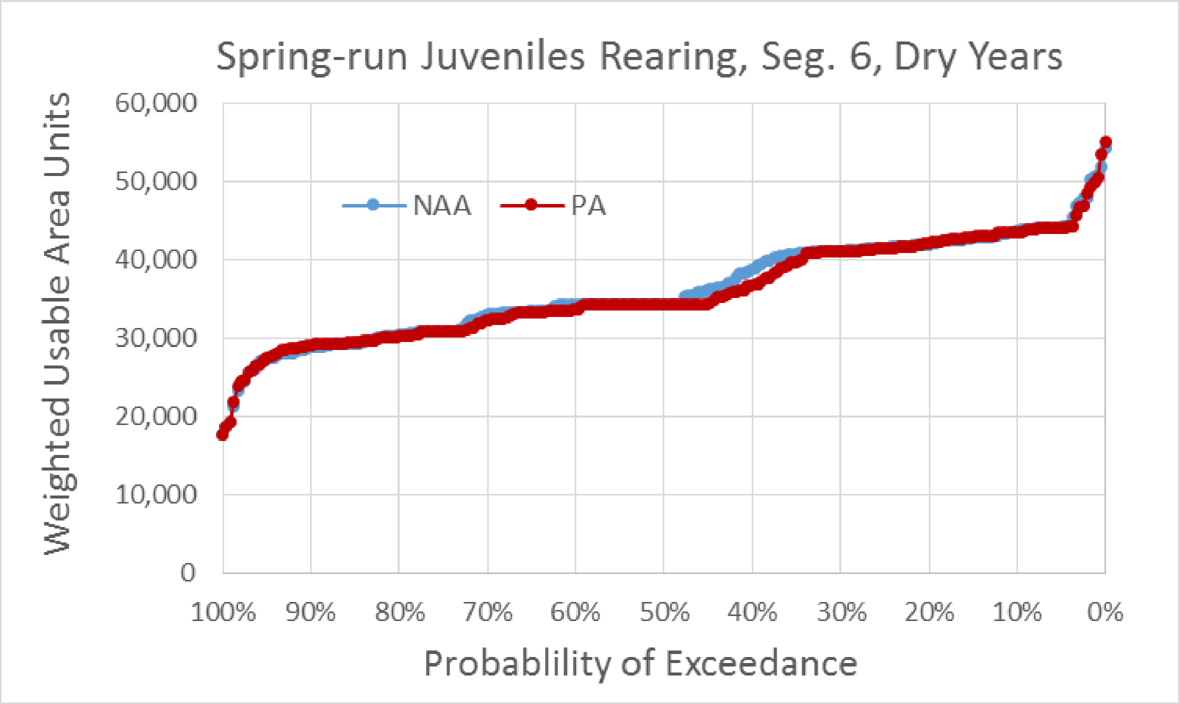


Figure 4.4-74. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Dry Water Years

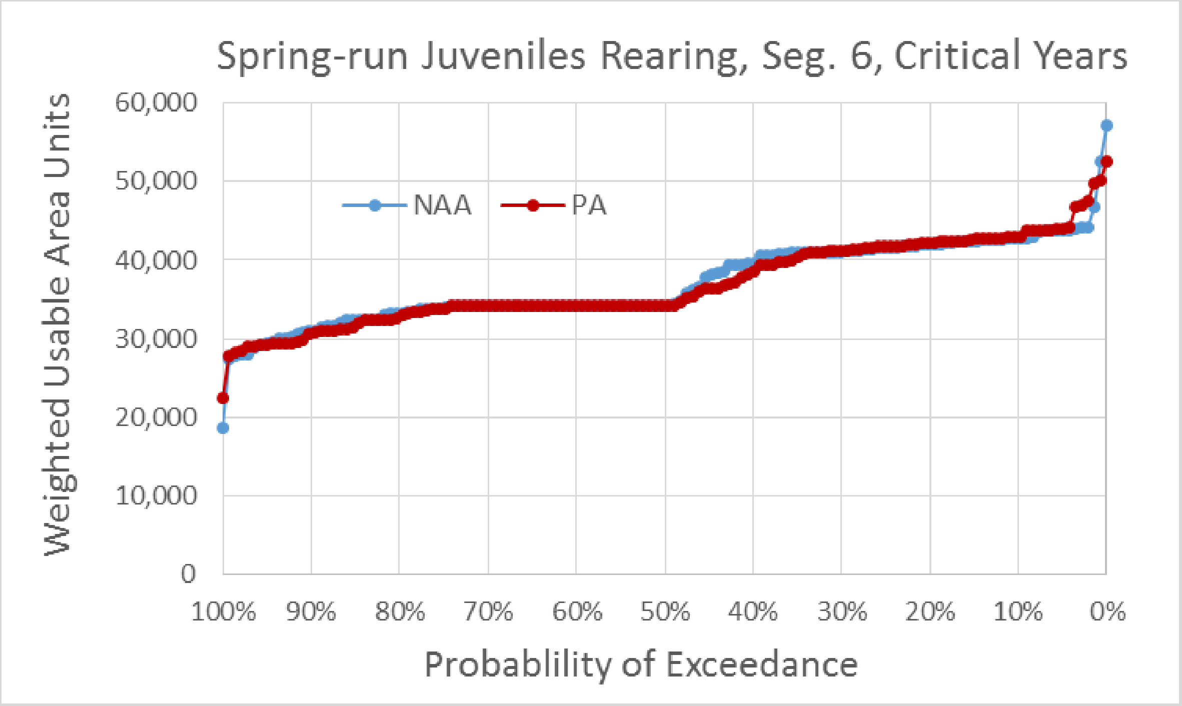


Figure 4.4-75. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 6, Critical Water Years

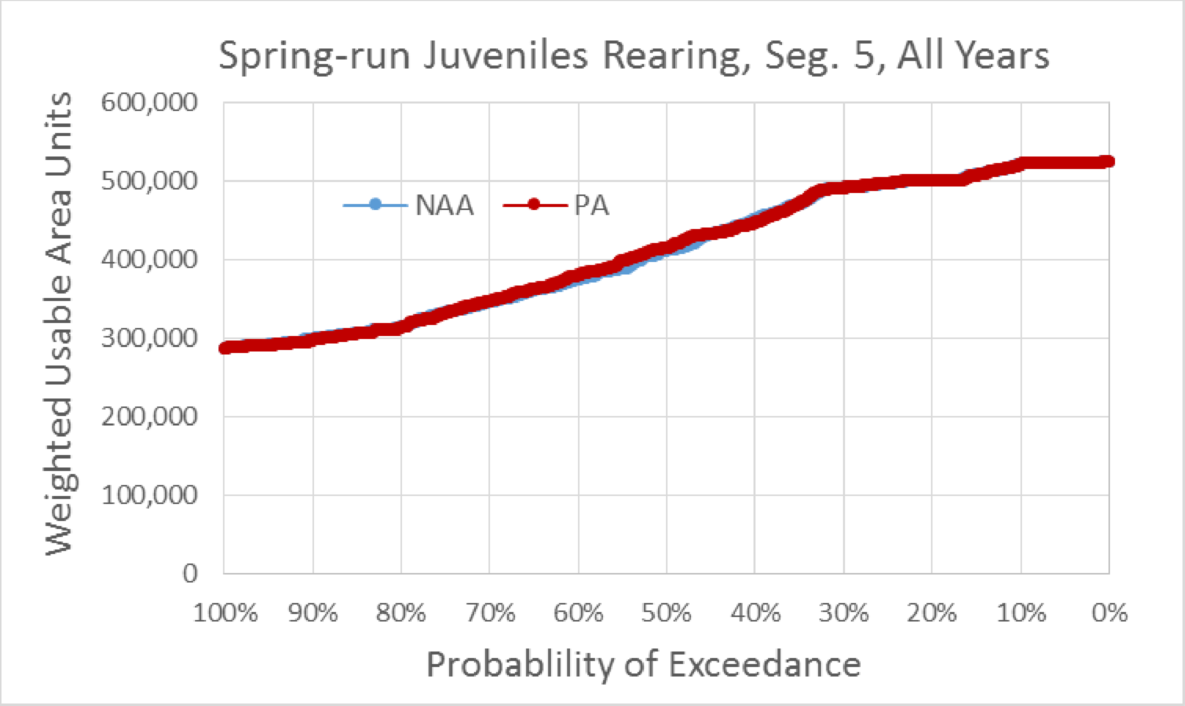


Figure 4.4-76. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, All Water Years

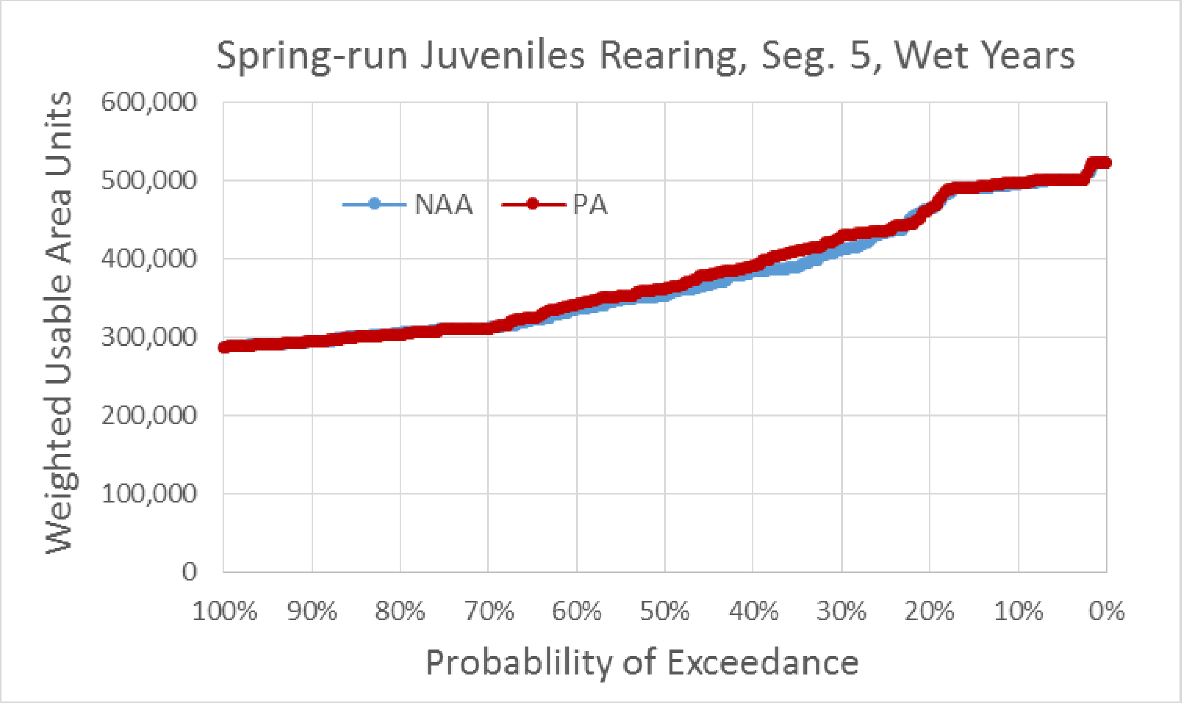


Figure 4.4-77. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Wet Water Years

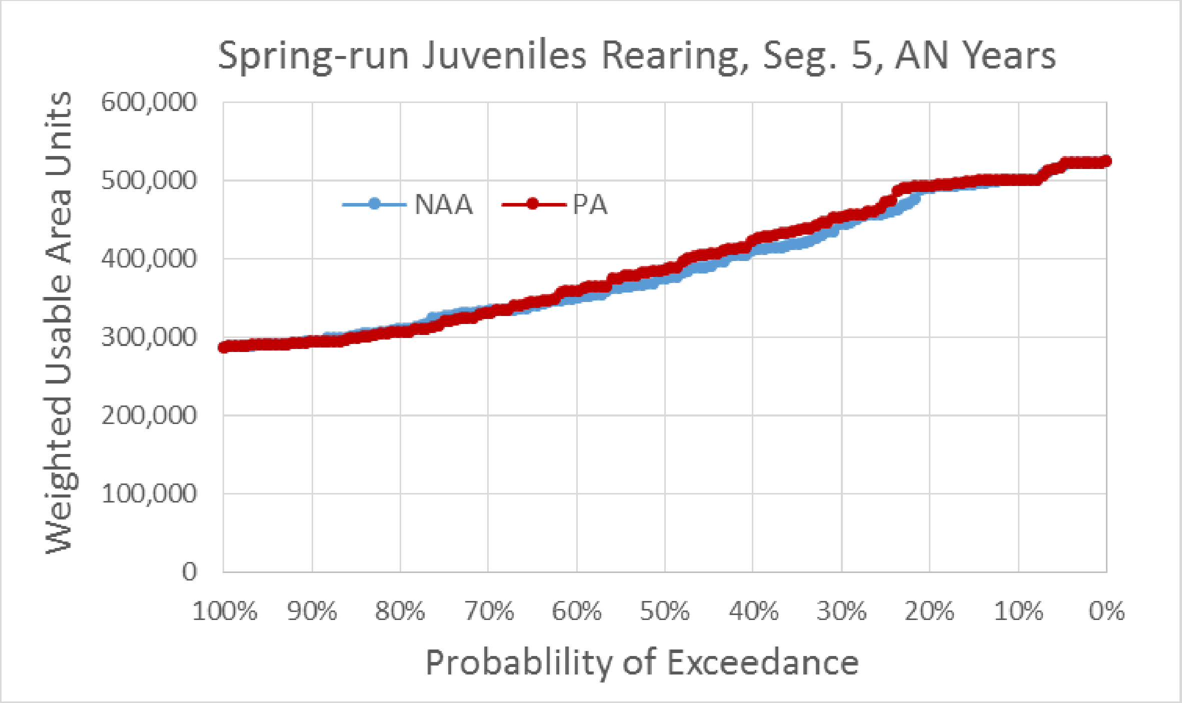


Figure 4.4-78. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Above Normal Water Years

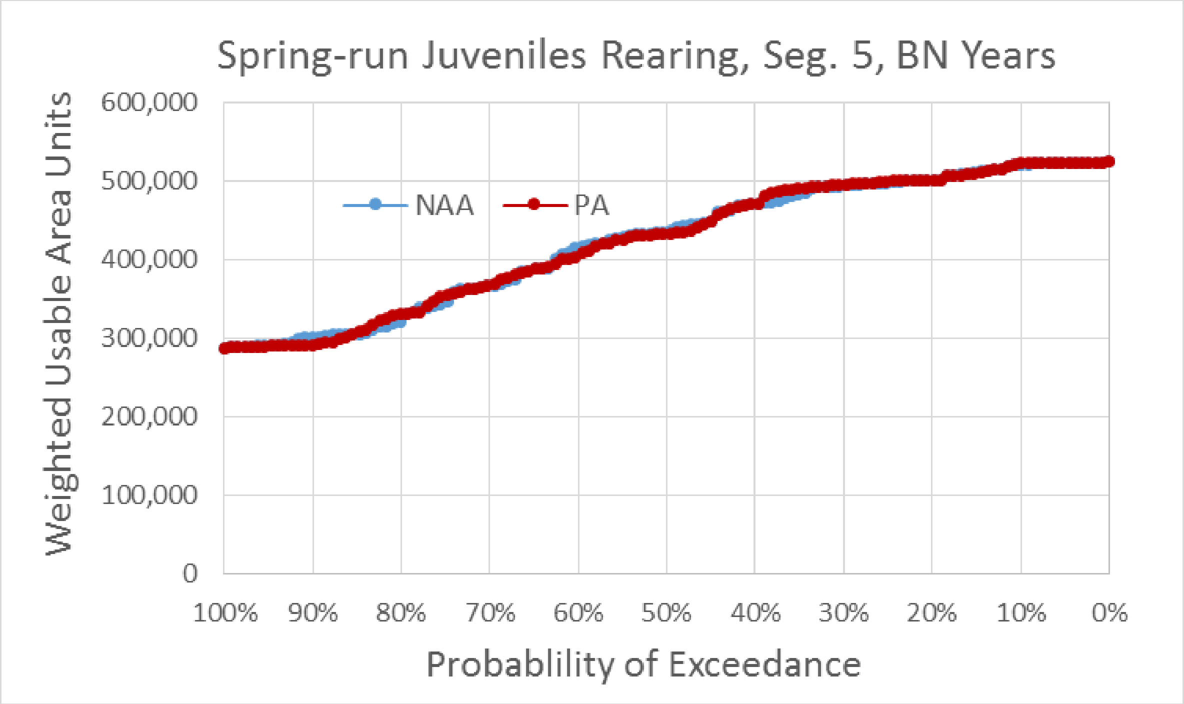


Figure 4.4-79. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Below Normal Water Years

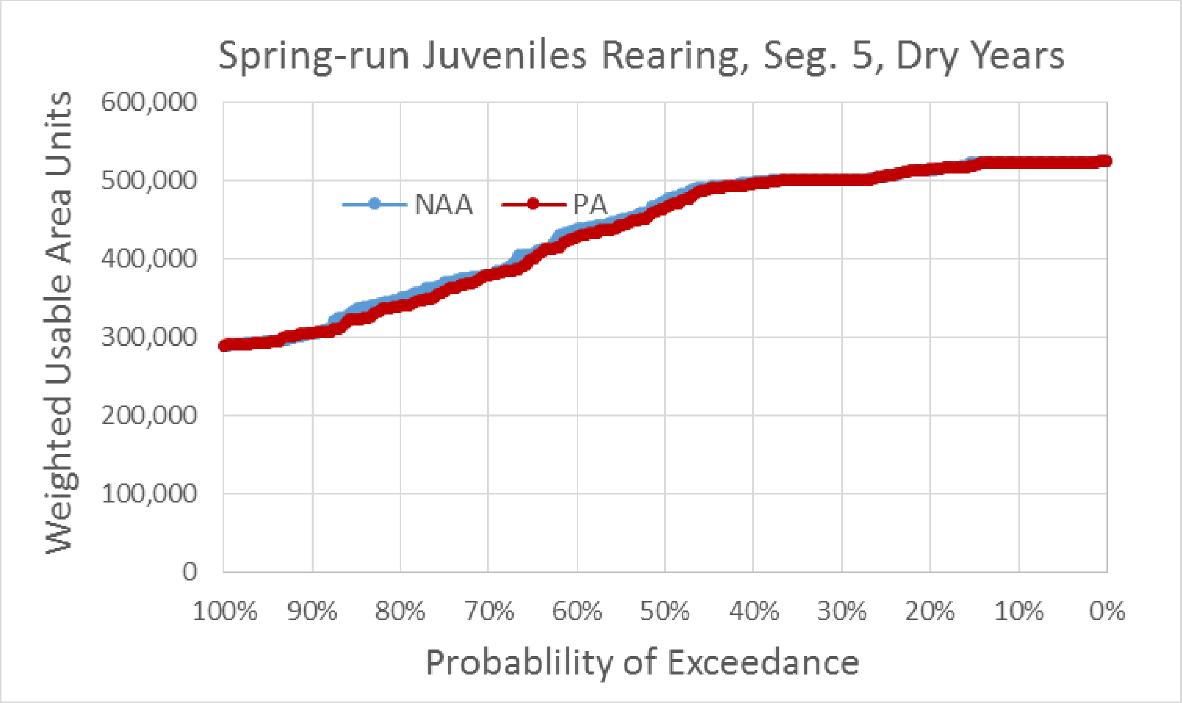


Figure 4.4-80. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Dry Water Years

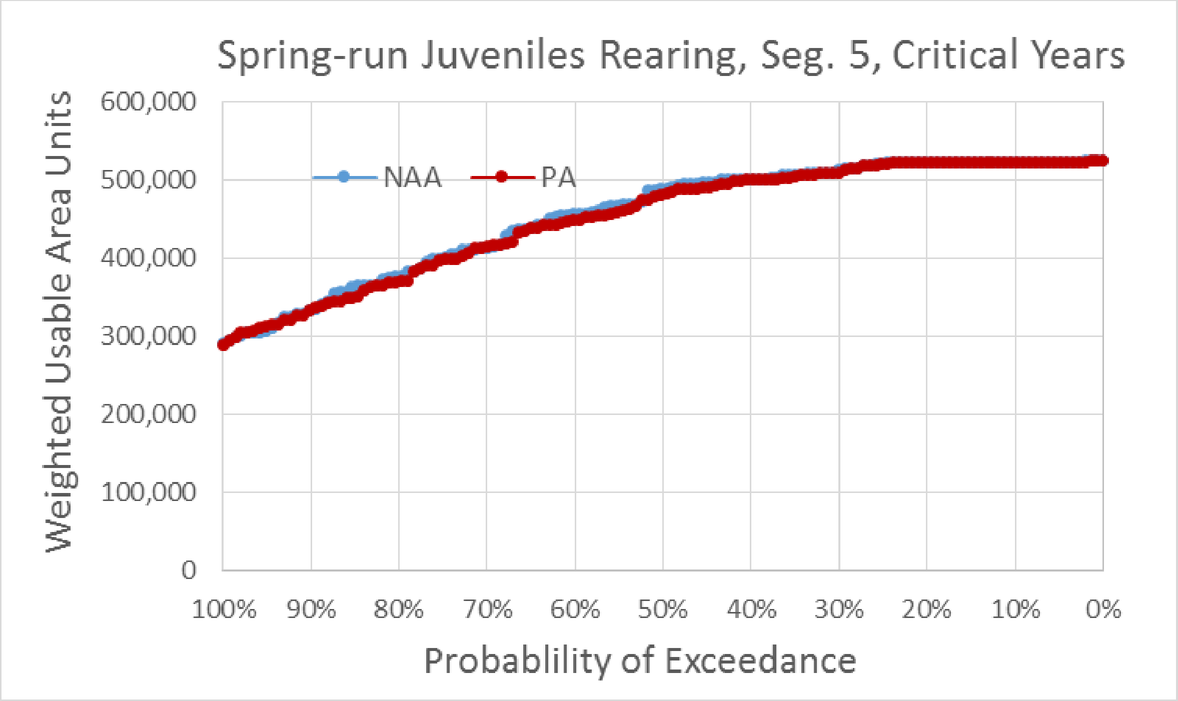


Figure 4.4-81. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 5, Critical Water Years

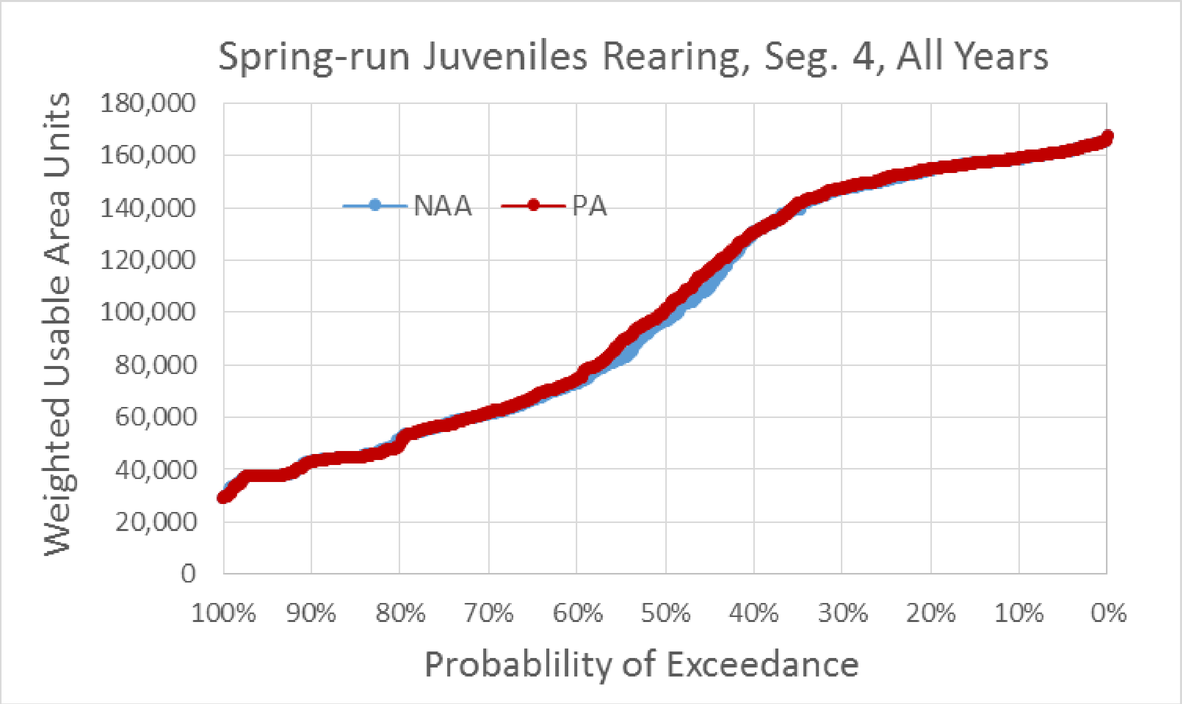


Figure 4.4-82. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, All Water Years

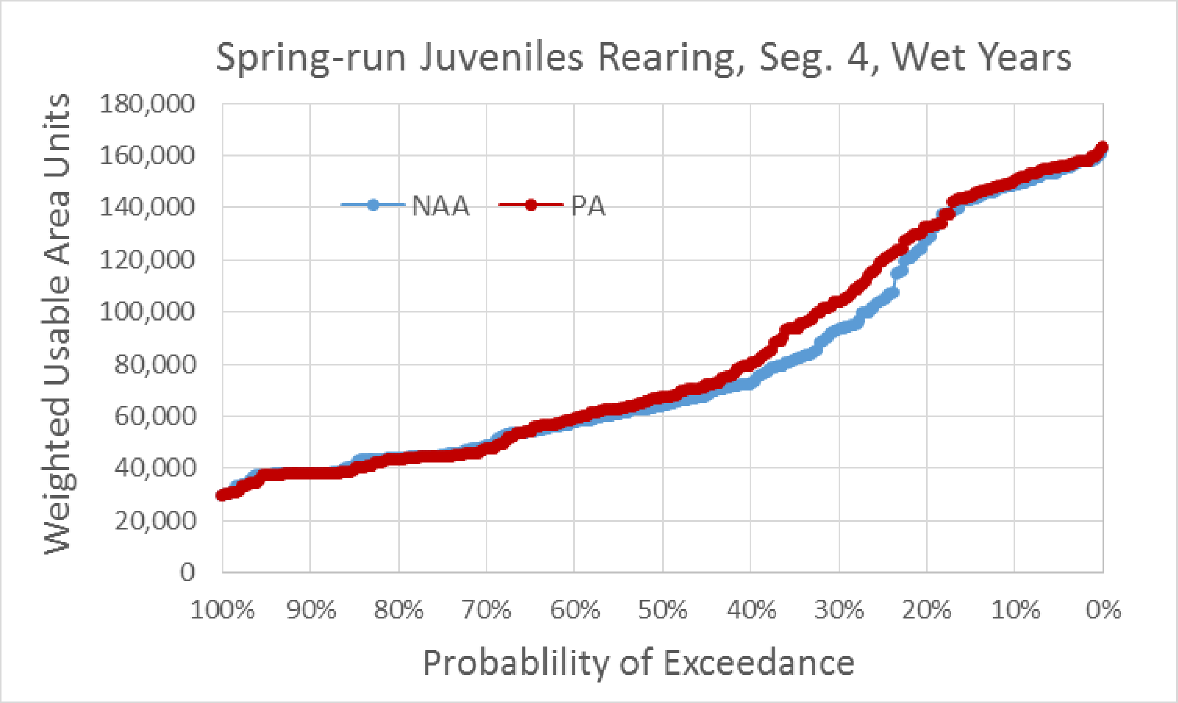


Figure 4.4-83. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Wet Water Years

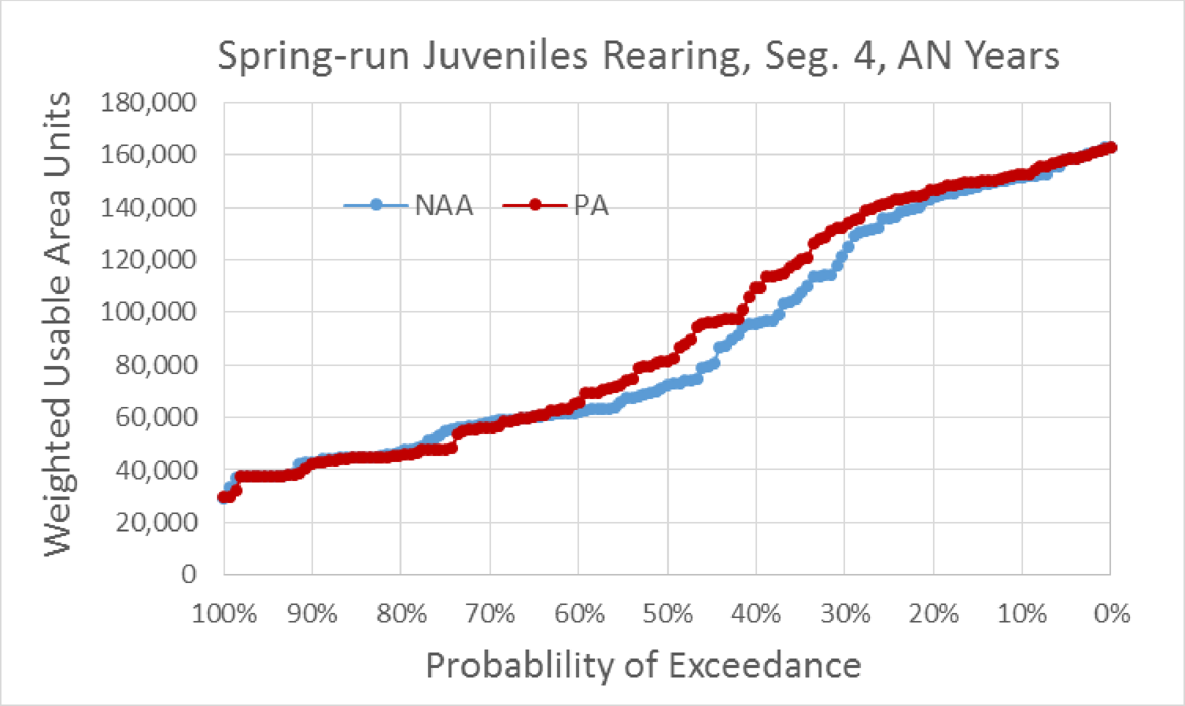


Figure 4.4-84. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Above Normal Water Years

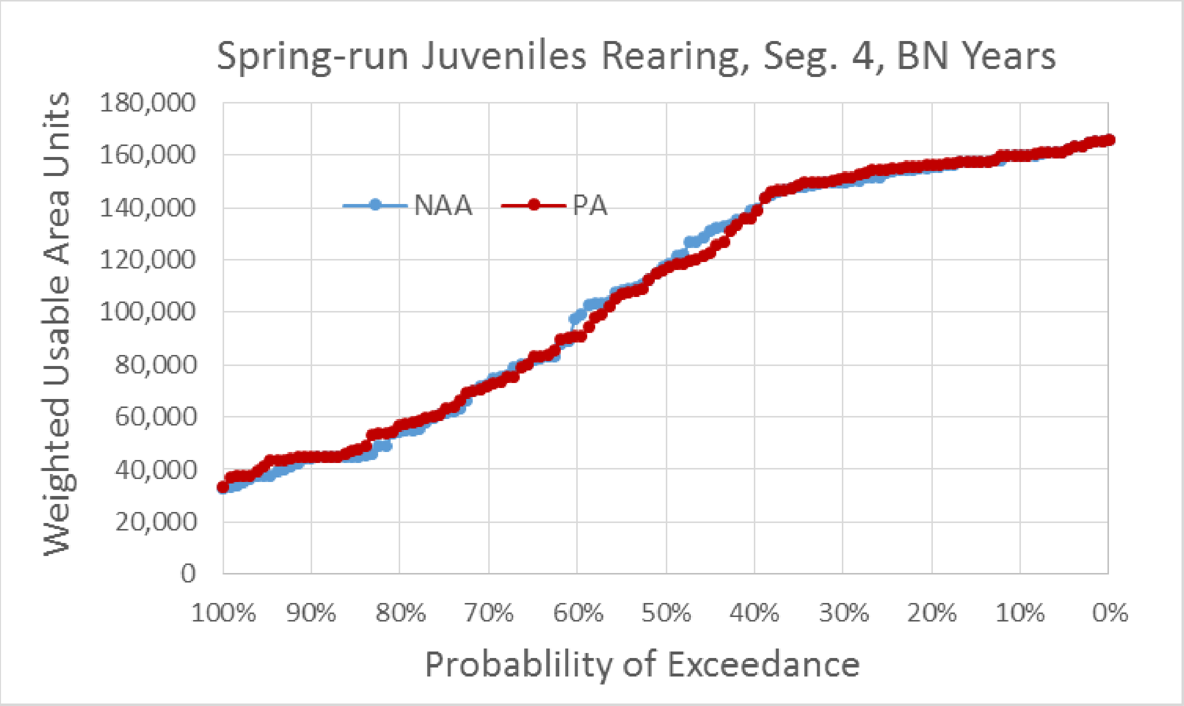


Figure 4.4-85. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Below Normal Water Years

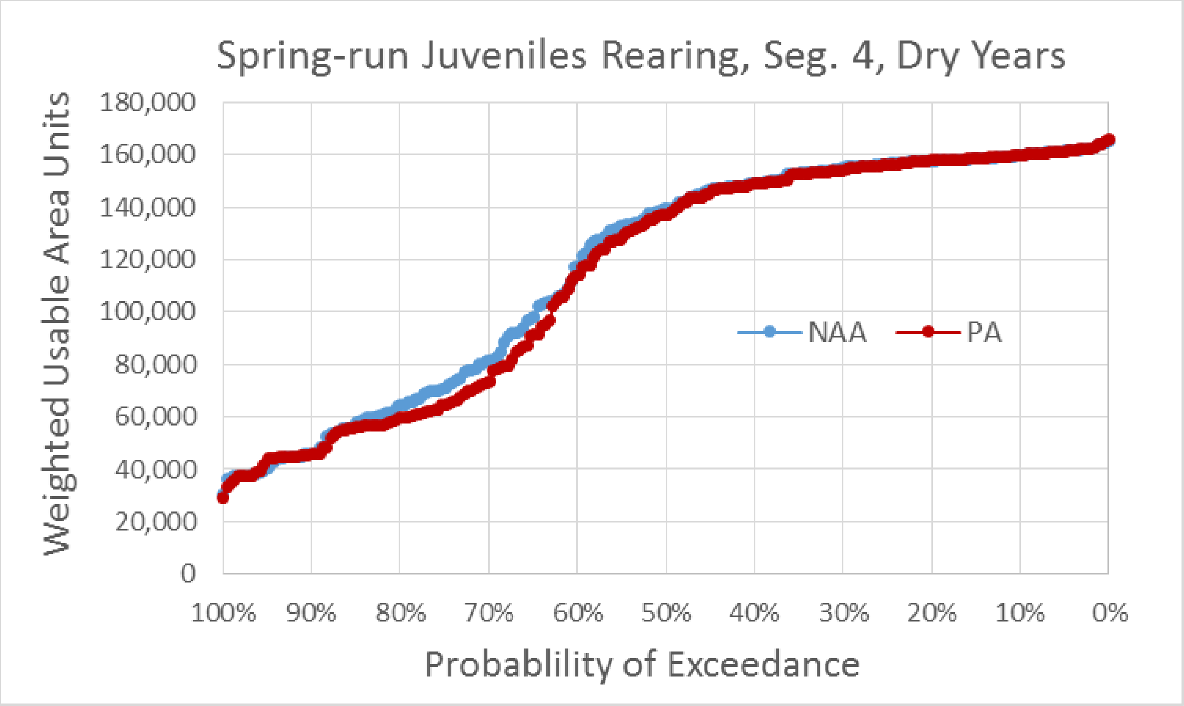


Figure 4.4-86. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Dry Water Years

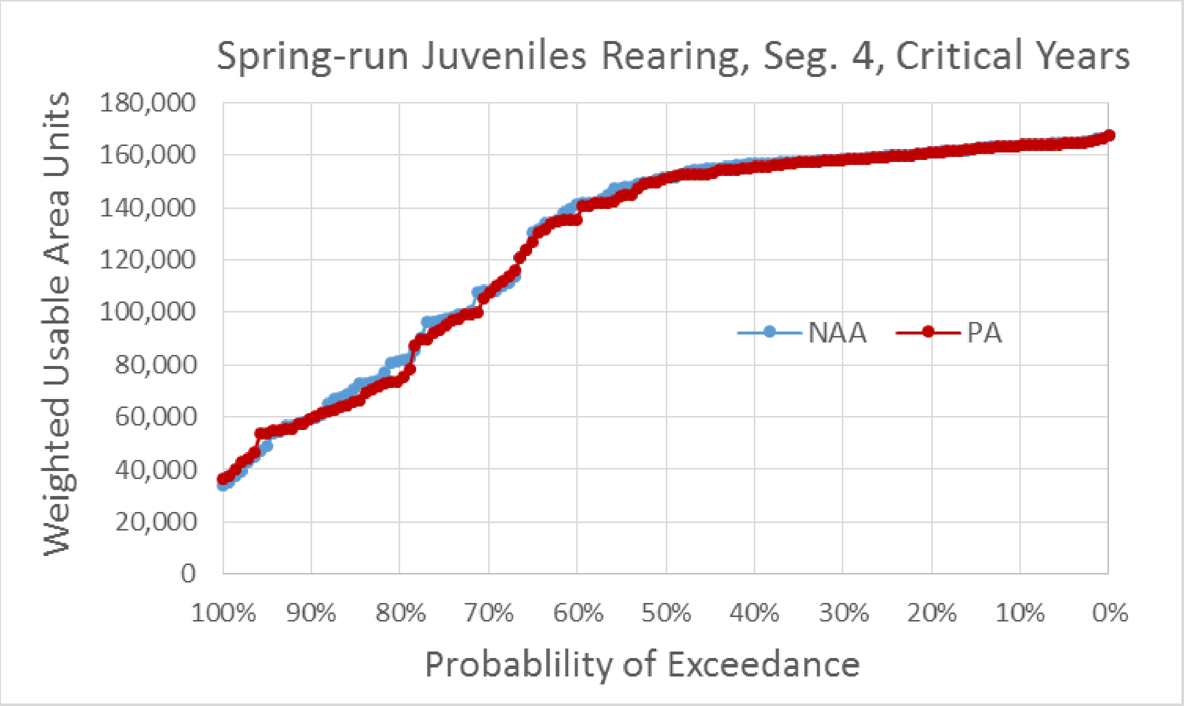


Figure 4.4-87. Exceedance Plot of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Area (WUA) for NAA and PP Model Scenarios in River Segment 4, Critical Water Years

Differences in spring-run Chinook salmon fry and juvenile rearing WUA in each segment under the PP and NAA were also examined using the grand mean rearing WUA for each month of the fry and juvenile rearing periods under each water year type and all water year types combined (Table 4.4-29 to Table 4.4-34). The means for fry rearing WUA differed by less than 5% for all months and water year types in Segment 6 and for most months and water year types in the other two segments (Table 4.4-29). However, mean fry rearing WUA during November in Segment 5 was 27% higher under the PP than under the NAA in above normal water years and 12% higher in wet years (Table 4.4-30). In Segment 4, mean fry rearing WUA during November was 7% and 9% higher under the PP in wet and above normal years, respectively, but was 6% lower in critical years (Table 4.4-31). The means for juvenile rearing WUA also differed by less than 5% for most months and water year types in Segments 6 and 5 (Table 4.4-32 and Table 4.4-33), but differences were greater and more frequent in Segment 4 (Table 4.4-34). In Segments 6 and 5, mean juvenile rearing WUA under the PP was up to 6% lower than that under the NAA during October of below normal years, 6% higher during September of above normal years, and up to 18% higher than that under the NAA during November of wet and above normal years. In Segment 4, mean juvenile rearing habitat WUA under the PP was 8% lower in January of wet years, 6% lower in March of above normal years, 5% lower in May of dry years, 13% and 8% lower in June of dry and critical years, 6% lower in August of dry years, and 14% lower in October of below normal years (Table 4.4-34). Also in Segment 4, mean juvenile WUA under the PP was 5% and 6% higher than that under the NAA in July of dry and critical years, 14% higher during August of below normal years, 19% and 7% higher in September of above normal and below normal years, 16% higher in October of wet years, and 51% and 63% higher in November of wet and above normal years. The WUA modeling indicates that the PP would reduce spring-run Chinook salmon rearing habitat during several months and water year types, especially in Segment 4. Further discussion regarding flow-related effects during the June through November period is provided in Section 4.3.4.2.2, *Summary of Upstream Effects*.

Table 4.4-29. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Areas (WUA) and Differences (Percent Differences) between Model Scenarios in River Segment 6 (green indicates PP is at least 5% higher [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% lower)

Month	Water Year Type	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
November	Wet	58,557	60,764	2,207 (4%)
	Above Normal	61,618	62,370	752 (1%)
	Below Normal	60,551	61,282	731 (1%)
	Dry	62,562	62,588	26 (0.04%)
	Critical	66,986	64,682	-2,303 (-3%)
	All	61,519	62,103	584 (0.9%)
December	Wet	65,548	66,992	1,444 (2%)
	Above Normal	66,635	66,829	194 (0.3%)
	Below Normal	65,809	66,446	637 (1%)
	Dry	72,907	72,256	-651 (-0.9%)
	Critical	70,121	70,661	540 (0.8%)
	All	68,239	68,737	498 (0.7%)
January	Wet	68,569	68,470	-100 (-0.1%)
	Above Normal	68,778	68,771	-6 (-0.01%)
	Below Normal	69,865	70,433	568 (0.8%)
	Dry	70,819	70,945	126 (0.2%)
	Critical	70,170	72,298	2,128 (3%)
	All	69,559	69,945	386 (0.6%)
February	Wet	74,671	74,615	-56 (-0.1%)
	Above Normal	78,836	77,904	-932 (-1%)
	Below Normal	68,593	70,799	2,205 (3%)
	Dry	69,051	69,175	124 (0.2%)
	Critical	70,032	71,994	1,963 (3%)
	All	72,466	72,914	448 (0.6%)

Table 4.4-30. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Areas (WUA) and Differences (Percent Differences) between Model Scenarios in River Segment 5 (green indicates PP is at least 5% higher [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% lower)

Month	Water Year Type	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
November	Wet	926,011	1,041,104	115,093 (12%)
	Above Normal	933,140	1,181,900	248,760 (27%)
	Below Normal	1,253,988	1,314,002	60,014 (5%)
	Dry	1,352,099	1,359,639	7,540 (0.6%)
	Critical	1,459,455	1,393,442	-66,013 (-5%)
	All	1,155,843	1,229,872	74,029 (6%)
December	Wet	1,279,311	1,299,436	20,126 (2%)
	Above Normal	1,235,383	1,272,981	37,598 (3%)
	Below Normal	1,285,634	1,284,178	-1,457 (-0.1%)
	Dry	1,302,331	1,284,844	-17,487 (-1%)
	Critical	1,478,631	1,478,842	211 (0.01%)
	All	1,308,875	1,316,421	7,546 (0.6%)
January	Wet	1,243,402	1,184,743	-58,659 (-5%)
	Above Normal	1,315,155	1,315,630	475 (0.04%)
	Below Normal	1,270,988	1,269,935	-1,053 (-0.1%)
	Dry	1,284,618	1,275,452	-9,167 (-0.7%)
	Critical	1,432,288	1,399,043	-33,245 (-2%)
	All	1,296,173	1,270,407	-25,766 (-2%)
February	Wet	1,129,301	1,109,445	-19,856 (-2%)
	Above Normal	1,180,418	1,181,957	1,539 (0.1%)
	Below Normal	1,283,450	1,283,647	197 (0.02%)
	Dry	1,454,111	1,441,233	-12,879 (-0.9%)
	Critical	1,418,711	1,480,899	62,188 (4%)
	All	1,279,658	1,279,592	-66 (0%)

Table 4.4-31. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry Rearing Weighted Usable Areas (WUA) and Differences (Percent Differences) between Model Scenarios in River Segment 4 (green indicates PP is at least 5% higher [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% lower)

Month	Water Year Type	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
November	Wet	170,587	183,246	12,659 (7%)
	Above Normal	174,232	189,361	15,129 (9%)
	Below Normal	199,855	204,797	4,942 (2%)
	Dry	208,079	209,412	1,334 (0.6%)
	Critical	258,353	242,021	-16,332 (-6%)
	All	197,361	202,247	4,885 (2%)
December	Wet	197,730	203,064	5,334 (3%)
	Above Normal	198,735	200,701	1,967 (1%)
	Below Normal	212,080	211,503	-576 (-0.3%)
	Dry	200,937	202,090	1,153 (0.6%)
	Critical	241,605	243,986	2,380 (1%)
	All	207,119	209,682	2,563 (1%)
January	Wet	188,718	184,053	-4,666 (-2%)
	Above Normal	205,594	205,565	-28 (-0.01%)
	Below Normal	204,395	204,175	-220 (-0.1%)
	Dry	198,053	196,521	-1,532 (-0.8%)
	Critical	230,927	219,761	-11,166 (-5%)
	All	201,950	198,429	-3,521 (-2%)
February	Wet	162,338	161,481	-857 (-0.5%)
	Above Normal	167,556	168,140	584 (0.3%)
	Below Normal	209,012	210,031	1,020 (0.5%)
	Dry	224,619	224,143	-476 (-0.2%)
	Critical	245,154	259,482	14,328 (6%)
	All	196,736	198,675	1,939 (1%)

Table 4.4-32. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Areas (WUA) and Differences (Percent Differences) between Model Scenarios in River Segment 6 (green indicates PP is at least 5% higher [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% lower)

Month	Water Year Type	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
January	Wet	28,944	27,904	-1,041 (-4%)
	Above Normal	29,751	29,740	-11 (-0.04%)
	Below Normal	29,628	29,571	-57 (-0.2%)
	Dry	29,921	29,966	45 (0.1%)
	Critical	32,677	32,493	-184 (-0.6%)
	All	29,948	29,593	-355 (-1%)
February	Wet	28,792	28,607	-186 (-0.6%)
	Above Normal	28,233	28,133	-100 (-0.4%)
	Below Normal	29,268	29,101	-166 (-0.6%)
	Dry	33,062	33,018	-44 (-0.1%)
	Critical	33,245	34,224	978 (3%)
	All	30,460	30,496	35 (0.1%)
March	Wet	25,414	25,390	-24 (-0.1%)
	Above Normal	27,393	26,663	-731 (-3%)
	Below Normal	31,873	31,373	-500 (-2%)
	Dry	32,863	32,806	-58 (-0.2%)
	Critical	33,622	32,647	-975 (-3%)
	All	29,612	29,265	-347 (-1%)
April	Wet	39,471	39,526	55 (0.1%)
	Above Normal	41,850	41,523	-327 (-0.8%)
	Below Normal	42,342	43,080	738 (2%)
	Dry	42,862	43,323	461 (1%)
	Critical	42,321	42,262	-59 (-0.1%)
	All	41,478	41,646	168 (0.4%)
May	Wet	40,927	40,990	63 (0.2%)
	Above Normal	41,545	41,674	129 (0.3%)
	Below Normal	43,144	42,896	-248 (-0.6%)
	Dry	43,171	41,734	-1,437 (-3%)
	Critical	42,326	42,435	108 (0.3%)
	All	42,074	41,747	-328 (-0.8%)
June	Wet	37,291	36,889	-402 (-1%)
	Above Normal	34,123	32,682	-1,441 (-4%)
	Below Normal	34,136	34,230	94 (0.3%)
	Dry	35,461	33,581	-1,880 (-5%)
	Critical	37,656	36,318	-1,338 (-4%)
	All	35,973	34,975	-998 (-3%)

Month	Water Year Type	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
July	Wet	30,648	30,478	-169 (-0.6%)
	Above Normal	30,536	30,212	-324 (-1%)
	Below Normal	30,240	30,586	346 (1%)
	Dry	30,969	31,366	397 (1%)
	Critical	32,998	34,171	1,173 (4%)
	All	30,998	31,207	210 (0.7%)
August	Wet	36,130	35,871	-258 (-0.7%)
	Above Normal	35,711	35,907	196 (0.5%)
	Below Normal	35,227	37,372	2,144 (6%)
	Dry	39,218	38,279	-939 (-2%)
	Critical	39,446	38,559	-887 (-2%)
	All	37,181	37,059	-122 (-0.3%)
September	Wet	31,672	31,609	-63 (-0.2%)
	Above Normal	39,161	41,403	2,242 (6%)
	Below Normal	42,904	43,765	861 (2%)
	Dry	43,006	42,872	-134 (-0.3%)
	Critical	41,419	43,050	1,631 (4%)
	All	38,557	39,214	657 (2%)
October	Wet	41,662	43,027	1,365 (3%)
	Above Normal	43,615	42,822	-792 (-2%)
	Below Normal	45,982	43,621	-2,361 (-5%)
	Dry	42,941	43,409	468 (1.1%)
	Critical	43,397	42,174	-1,223 (-3%)
	All	43,111	43,045	-66 (-0.2%)
November	Wet	23,266	27,516	4,249 (18%)
	Above Normal	25,892	29,210	3,318 (13%)
	Below Normal	29,302	29,654	352 (1%)
	Dry	29,992	30,160	168 (0.6%)
	Critical	32,175	31,239	-936 (-3%)
	All	27,456	29,262	1,806 (7%)
December	Wet	28,523	29,190	668 (2%)
	Above Normal	29,402	28,844	-558 (-2%)
	Below Normal	29,969	29,906	-62 (-0.2%)
	Dry	30,546	30,190	-356 (-1%)
	Critical	33,603	33,786	183 (0.5%)
	All	30,101	30,164	62 (0.2%)

Table 4.4-33. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Areas (WUA) and Differences (Percent Differences) between Model Scenarios in River Segment 5 (green indicates PP is at least 5% higher [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% lower)

Month	Water Year Type	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
January	Wet	432,112	413,583	-18,529 (-4%)
	Above Normal	445,682	445,658	-24 (-0.01%)
	Below Normal	443,727	443,611	-115 (-0.03%)
	Dry	445,606	444,111	-1,495 (-0.3%)
	Critical	502,981	493,596	-9,384 (-2%)
	All	449,484	441,851	-7,632 (-2%)
February	Wet	373,821	368,986	-4,834 (-1%)
	Above Normal	378,117	377,920	-197 (-0.1%)
	Below Normal	450,190	445,515	-4,674 (-1%)
	Dry	513,604	510,977	-2,627 (-0.5%)
	Critical	508,642	522,494	13,852 (3%)
	All	438,570	437,765	-805 (-0.2%)
March	Wet	366,405	366,379	-26 (-0.01%)
	Above Normal	424,177	410,918	-13,258 (-3%)
	Below Normal	497,733	487,596	-10,137 (-2%)
	Dry	506,508	505,929	-579 (-0.1%)
	Critical	519,295	512,383	-6,912 (-1%)
	All	449,727	445,104	-4,623 (-1%)
April	Wet	420,914	420,134	-780 (-0.2%)
	Above Normal	443,907	443,595	-311 (-0.1%)
	Below Normal	456,425	459,248	2,823 (0.6%)
	Dry	478,483	474,249	-4,234 (-0.9%)
	Critical	436,575	433,844	-2,731 (-0.6%)
	All	445,656	444,306	-1,350 (-0.3%)
May	Wet	394,060	394,839	779 (0.2%)
	Above Normal	413,996	413,087	-909 (-0.2%)
	Below Normal	413,934	415,744	1,810 (0.4%)
	Dry	427,754	416,004	-11,750 (-3%)
	Critical	432,727	429,645	-3,082 (-0.7%)
	All	413,763	410,792	-2,971 (-0.7%)
June	Wet	353,610	350,912	-2,698 (-0.8%)
	Above Normal	333,162	323,726	-9,436 (-3%)
	Below Normal	335,110	328,009	-7,101 (-2%)
	Dry	339,645	326,841	-12,804 (-4%)
	Critical	359,134	348,083	-11,051 (-3%)
	All	345,289	337,245	-8,044 (-2%)

Month	Water Year Type	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
July	Wet	304,401	303,147	-1,255 (-0.4%)
	Above Normal	292,543	293,527	983 (0.3%)
	Below Normal	295,515	295,330	-186 (-0.1%)
	Dry	309,237	309,588	351 (0.1%)
	Critical	326,040	332,004	5,964 (2%)
	All	305,675	306,367	692 (0.2%)
August	Wet	346,188	344,506	-1,682 (-0.5%)
	Above Normal	343,345	343,179	-166 (-0.05%)
	Below Normal	338,449	353,968	15,519 (5%)
	Dry	371,310	363,110	-8,200 (-2%)
	Critical	379,657	375,652	-4,006 (-1%)
	All	355,724	354,660	-1,064 (-0.3%)
September	Wet	311,968	313,612	1,644 (0.5%)
	Above Normal	373,342	394,735	21,392 (6%)
	Below Normal	470,407	489,201	18,793 (4%)
	Dry	486,797	495,488	8,691 (2%)
	Critical	485,334	489,551	4,217 (0.9%)
	All	410,964	420,135	9,171 (2%)
October	Wet	402,160	422,695	20,535 (5%)
	Above Normal	428,233	426,672	-1,562 (-0.4%)
	Below Normal	456,276	429,635	-26,640 (-6%)
	Dry	460,804	448,849	-11955 (-3%)
	Critical	478,293	467,689	-10603 (-2%)
	All	439,131	437,350	-1780 (-0.4%)
November	Wet	359,835	417,002	57167 (16%)
	Above Normal	375,328	443,072	67744 (18%)
	Below Normal	467,852	477,774	9922 (2%)
	Dry	481,554	484,303	2749 (0.6%)
	Critical	505,551	493,755	-11796 (-2%)
	All	428,441	457,106	28665 (7%)
December	Wet	444,484	446,185	1701 (0.4%)
	Above Normal	446,543	443,261	-3282 (-0.7%)
	Below Normal	453,829	450,779	-3051 (-0.7%)
	Dry	444,837	442,933	-1904 (-0.4%)
	Critical	517,248	518,823	1575 (0.3%)
	All	456,925	456,334	-591 (-0.1%)

Table 4.4-34. Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Juvenile Rearing Weighted Usable Areas (WUA) and Differences (Percent Differences) between Model Scenarios in River Segment 4 (green indicates PP is at least 5% higher [raw difference] than NAA; red indicates PP is at least 5% lower)

Month	Water Year Type	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
January	Wet	105,561	96,786	-8774 (-8%)
	Above Normal	120,006	120,026	19 (0.02%)
	Below Normal	111,312	111,317	5 (0.004%)
	Dry	113,748	113,146	-602 (-0.5%)
	Critical	142,557	137,324	-5233 (-4%)
	All	116,033	112,342	-3691 (-3%)
February	Wet	72,975	70,412	-2563 (-4%)
	Above Normal	82,159	82,191	32 (0.04%)
	Below Normal	115,508	114,052	-1456 (-1%)
	Dry	150,024	148,480	-1,544 (-1%)
	Critical	154,053	160,903	6,850 (4%)
	All	110,794	110,417	-377 (-0.3%)
March	Wet	74,330	74,044	-287 (-0.4%)
	Above Normal	101,342	95,175	-6,167 (-6%)
	Below Normal	146,884	139,687	-7,197 (-5%)
	Dry	145,837	145,714	-123 (-0.1%)
	Critical	160,506	157,978	-2,528 (-1.6%)
	All	118,397	115,963	-2,434 (-2%)
April	Wet	100,706	100,259	-447 (-0.4%)
	Above Normal	114,559	114,471	-87 (-0.1%)
	Below Normal	125,936	128,216	2,281 (2%)
	Dry	141,034	137,514	-3,520 (-2%)
	Critical	123,099	121,151	-1,948 (-2%)
	All	119,400	118,406	-993 (-0.8%)
May	Wet	84,773	85,296	522 (0.6%)
	Above Normal	103,129	102,211	-918 (-0.9%)
	Below Normal	102,810	103,712	901 (0.9%)
	Dry	113,644	107,550	-6,093 (-5%)
	Critical	120,533	117,678	-2,855 (-2%)
	All	102,378	100,615	-1,763 (-2%)
June	Wet	64,501	63,511	-990 (-2%)
	Above Normal	55,834	54,584	-1,250 (-2%)
	Below Normal	55,813	58,223	2,411 (4%)
	Dry	61,880	53,985	-7,895 (-13%)
	Critical	72,830	66,683	-6,147 (-8%)
	All	62,541	59,527	-3,014 (-5%)
July	Wet	47,124	45,954	-1,170 (-2%)
	Above Normal	44,779	43,791	-988 (-2%)
	Below Normal	43,578	44,027	449 (1%)

Month	Water Year Type	NAA	PP	PP vs. NAA
	Dry	48,479	50,945	2,466 (5%)
	Critical	55,578	60,078	4,500 (8%)
	All	47,844	48,637	793 (2%)
August	Wet	64,888	64,007	-881 (-1%)
	Above Normal	65,342	64,175	-1,167 (-2%)
	Below Normal	61,595	70,346	8,750 (14%)
	Dry	81,374	76,801	-4,573 (-6%)
	Critical	86,051	84,560	-1,491 (-2%)
	All	71,636	71,012	-624 (-0.9%)
September	Wet	52,473	51,421	-1,052 (-2%)
	Above Normal	80,500	95,548	15,049 (19%)
	Below Normal	146,125	155,660	9,534 (7%)
	Dry	154,899	158,005	3,105 (2%)
	Critical	156,031	158,501	2,470 (2%)
	All	109,616	114,066	4,450 (4%)
October	Wet	95,915	111,740	15,824 (16%)
	Above Normal	115,276	113,689	-1,586 (-1%)
	Below Normal	134,904	116,236	-18,667 (-14%)
	Dry	137,405	131,516	-5,889 (-4%)
	Critical	152,604	151,355	-1,249 (-0.8%)
	All	122,721	123,391	670 (0.5%)
November	Wet	68,272	103,228	34,956 (51%)
	Above Normal	75,596	122,916	47,320 (63%)
	Below Normal	137,638	143,452	5,814 (4%)
	Dry	140,893	142,968	2,075 (1%)
	Critical	160,501	156,188	-4,313 (-3%)
	All	110,372	129,266	18,894 (17%)
December	Wet	120,552	119,449	-1,103 (-0.9%)
	Above Normal	117,007	114,999	-2,008 (-2%)
	Below Normal	120,260	119,003	-1,257 (-1%)
	Dry	118,140	117,090	-1,050 (-0.9%)
	Critical	157,336	157,833	496 (0.3%)
	All	124,841	123,833	-1,008 (-0.8%)

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.2.2 SALMOD Flow-related Outputs

The SALMOD model provides predicted flow-related fry and juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon mortality, which is presented as mortality of the fry, pre-smolt, and immature smolt life stages (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Attachment 5.D.2, *SALMOD Model*, for a full description). Results for flow-related mortality of these life stages are presented in Figure 4.4-88 and the annual exceedance plot for all water year types combined is presented in Figure 4.4-89. These results show no mortality for the pre-smolt and immature smolt life stages and low mortality (in terms of numbers of fish) for the fry. Flow-related mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon fry would increase moderately under the PP relative to the NAA in wet years (8% or 200 fish) and critical years (14% or 55 fish) and would decrease moderately in above normal years (13% or 350 fish). The flow-related mortality of fry for all water year types combined would be almost identical between the NAA and PP. Accordingly, the model predicts that there would be no biologically meaningful[51] effect of the PP on flow-related mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon fry and juveniles. These results are based on CALSIM outputs, which does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5 *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta* and Section 3.3.3 *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process* that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects.

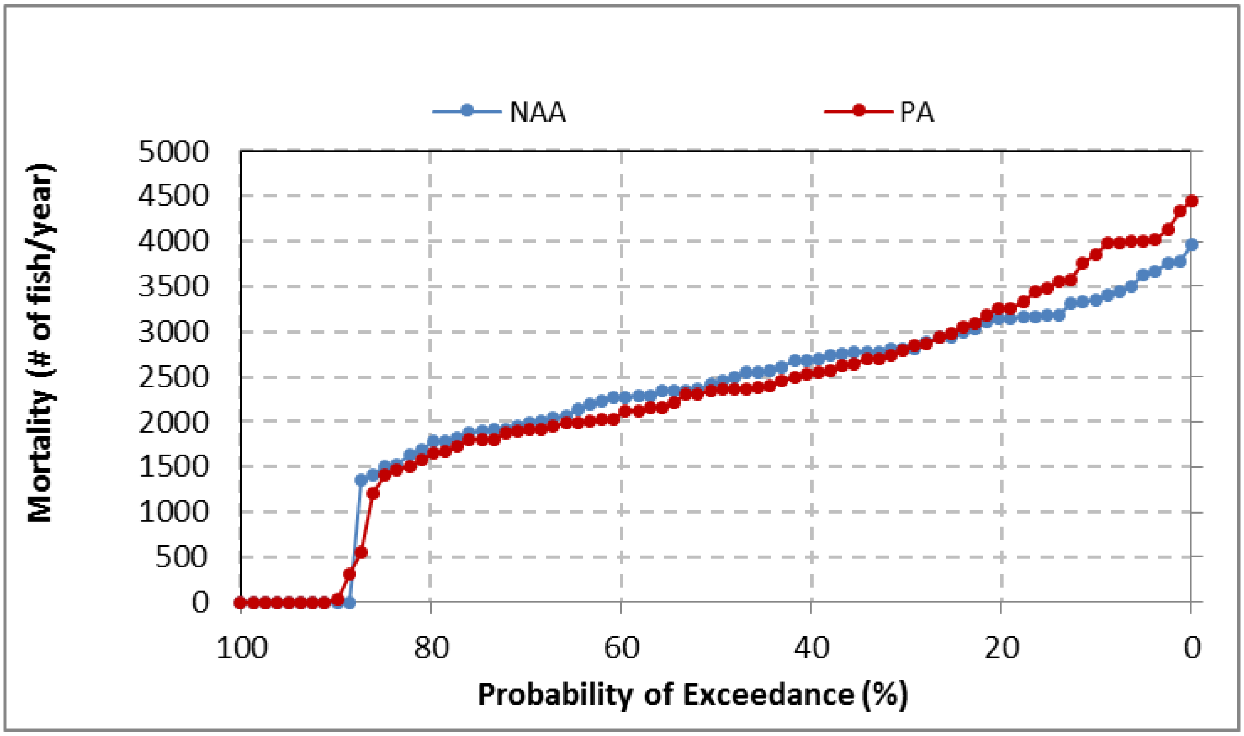


Figure 4.4-88. Exceedance Plot of Annual Flow-Based Mortality (# of Fish/Year) of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry and Juveniles, SALMOD.

4.4.4.2.1.2.1.2.3 Water Temperature-Related Effects

Modeled mean monthly water temperatures during the year-round fry and juvenile rearing period for spring-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento River upstream of the Delta are presented in *Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C, Section 5.C.7 *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results,* Table 5.C.7-3, Table 5.C.7-4, Table 5.C.7-5, Table 5.C.7-7, Table 5.C.7-8, and Table 5.C.7-10)[52]. Overall, the PP would change mean water temperatures very little (predominantly less than 1°F, or approximately 1%) throughout the juvenile rearing reach of Keswick Dam to Knights Landing in all months and water year types in the period. The largest increase in mean monthly water temperatures under

---

32 Water temperature results for Wilkins Slough were used to represent Knights Landing for this analysis

the PP relative to NAA would be 1.0°F (1.4%), and would occur at Knights Landing in below normal years during August.

Exceedance plots of monthly mean water temperatures were examined during each month throughout the juvenile rearing period (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.C *Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results*, Section 5.C.7 *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results*, Figure 5.C.7.3-7, Figure 5.C.7.4-7, Figure 5.C.7.5-7, Figure 5.C.7.7-7, Figure 5.C.7.8-7, and Figure 5.C.7.10-7[53]). The values for the PP in these exceedance plots generally match those of the NAA. Further examination of below normal water years in August at Knights Landing, where the largest increase in mean monthly water temperature was seen, indicates that water temperatures under the PP would be higher than those under NAA for most of the exceedance range by up to approximately 2.2°F, particularly in the colder end of the range (Figure 4.4-89). As indicated below in the threshold analysis, temperatures predicted for Knights Landing during August of below normal water years would be greater than the 64°F 7DADM threshold on 100% of days under both the NAA and PP, although there is low certainty that modeled values are comparable to actual values. Therefore, this suggests that, with low certainty, conditions would already be unsuitable for spring-run Chinook salmon fry and juvenile rearing for reasons that are independent of the PP.

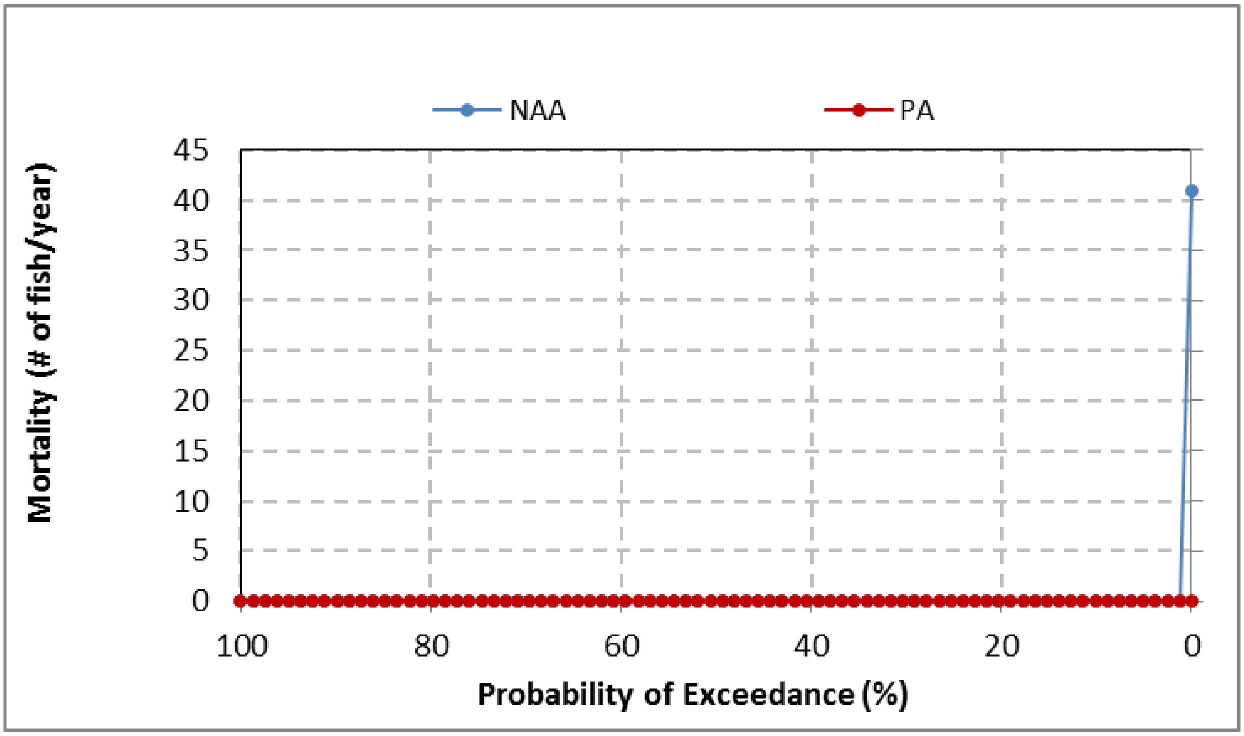


Figure 4.4-89. Exceedance Plot of Annual Water Temperature-Based Mortality (# of Fish/Year) of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Fry and Juveniles, SALMOD

---

ysis

For purposes of this analysis, the water temperature thresholds analysis for juvenile rearing and emigration were combined and the year-round period was evaluated. For juvenile rearing and emigration, the thresholds used were from the USEPA's 7DADM value of 61°F for core juvenile rearing reach from Keswick Dam to Red Bluff and 64°F for the non-core juvenile rearing reach at Knights Landing (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1 *Water Temperature Analysis Methods*, Table 5.D-49). The 7DADM values were converted to function with daily model outputs for each month separately (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1, *Water Temperature Analysis Methods*, Table 5.D-51).

Results of the water temperature thresholds analysis are presented in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Tables 5.D-85 through 5.D-90). At Keswick Dam, there would be no months or water year types in which there would be 5% more days under the PP compared to the NAA on which temperatures would exceed the threshold (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5, *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-85). There would be two instances in which average daily exceedance would be 0.5°F: September of critical years and September for all water year types combined (reflecting that the only differences in threshold exceedance among water year types during September would occur during critical years). However, there would be no concurrent increase in the percent of days exceeding the threshold in these instances. This indicates that the frequency of days above the threshold be would similar under the PP, but exceedances would be higher on average.

At Clear Creek, there would be no months or water year types in which there would be both 5% more days under the PP compared to the NAA on which temperatures would exceed the threshold, and a more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-86). However, the percent of days exceeding the threshold under the PP would be more than 5% lower than under the NAA during September and October of critical water years (6.7% and 11.8%, respectively). Despite this reduction during September of critical water years, the difference in mean daily exceedance would increase by 0.7°F. This indicates that the frequency of days above the threshold would decrease under the PP, but exceedances per day would be higher on average.

At Balls Ferry, there would be no months or water year types in which there would be 5% more days under the PP compared to the NAA on which temperatures would exceed the 61°F 7DADM threshold, and no more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-87). Therefore, it was concluded that there would be no biologically meaningful effect. There are two situations at Balls Ferry during which the percent of days exceeding the threshold under the PP would be more than 5% lower than under the NAA during September and October of critical water years (10% and 14%, respectively). Despite this reduction during September of critical water years, the difference in mean daily exceedance would increase by 0.7°F. This indicates that the frequency of days above the threshold would decrease under the PP, but exceedances per day would be higher on average.

At Bend Bridge, the percent of days exceeding the 61°F 7DADM threshold under the PP would be more than 5% higher than under the NAA during July of critical water years (7.8%), August (5.9%) and September of below normal (15.8%) years, and September of dry (8.0%) water years (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-88). There would also be a reduction of 8.4% and 11.6% in the percent of days exceeding the threshold in August of dry and critical water years, respectively, and of 11% in October of critical water years. There would not be an increase in average daily exceedance except in August of critical water years. This indicates that the frequency of days above the threshold would decrease under the PP, but exceedances per day would be higher on average.

At Red Bluff, the percent of days exceeding the 61°F 7DADM threshold under the PP would be more than 5% higher than under the NAA during July of critical water years (6.5%), August of below normal years (9.4%), and September of above normal (7.7%), below normal (10.3%), and dry (5.5%) water years (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-89). However, in no month or water year type would there be a more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance. Therefore, it was concluded that there would be no biologically meaningful effect at Red Bluff.

At Knights Landing, the percent of days exceeding the 64°F 7DADM threshold for non-core rearing and emigration habitat under the PP would be more than 5% higher than under the NAA during October of wet water years (6.9%) (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-90). There would also be a 7.9% reduction in the percent of days exceeding the threshold during October of below normal water years. However, in neither of these situations would there also be a more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance. Therefore, it was concluded that there would be no biologically meaningful effect. There would be >0.5F increases in the magnitude of average daily exceedance in 3 cases: September of above normal water years (0.8°F), and August (1.0°F) and September (0.8°F) of below normal water years. Temperatures predicted for Knights Landing during August of below normal water years would be greater than the 64°F 7DADM threshold on 100% of days under both the NAA and PP, although there is low certainty that modeled values are comparable to actual values. Therefore, this suggests that, with low certainty conditions would already be unsuitable for spring-run Chinook salmon fry and juvenile rearing for reasons that are independent of the PP.

Overall, the thresholds analysis indicates that there would be more exceedances (5% or greater) in certain months and water year types under the PP, which could have lethal or sublethal effects on spring-run Chinook salmon fry and juvenile rearing, although this does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5, *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta*, and Section 3.3.3, *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process,* that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects. The biological interpretation of these results, combined with all upstream results, in the context of real-time operational management is provided in Section 4.3.4.2.2, *Summary of Upstream Effects*.

4.4.4.2.1.2.2 Juvenile Emigration

4.4.4.2.1.2.2.1 Flow-Related Effects

Mean monthly flows were evaluated in the Sacramento River at four locations along the downstream migration corridor of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon (i.e., Keswick, Red Bluff, Wilkins Slough and Verona) during the October through May emigration period, with peak migration from October through December and in April (Table 4.4-20). Changes in flow potentially affect emigration of juveniles, including the timing and rate of emigration, as well as conditions for feeding, protective cover, resting, temperature, turbidity, and other habitat factors. Crowding and stranding, especially in side-channel habitats, can also be affected (Quinn 2005; Williams 2006; del Rosario et al. 2013). As described in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.4, *Migration Flows Methods*), quantitative relationships between flow and downstream migration generally are highly variable and poorly understood, but on balance, except under very high flows, benefits of increased flow generally outweigh the costs. Therefore, it is assumed for the purposes of this effects analysis that increased flow would improve conditions for the emigration of juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon. Milner et al. (2012) and del Rosario et al. (2013) have found that migration cues for anadromous fish species are often the result of natural pulse flows, or pulse flows caused by natural events, such as an extensive rainfall event, which will not be affected by the PP.

Shasta Reservoir storage volume at the end of September influences flows in the Sacramento River during much of the juvenile emigration period. Mean Shasta September storage under the PP would be similar (less than 5% difference) to storage under NAA for all water year types, except for 7% higher mean storage during critical water years under the PP (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results,* Table 5.A.6-3).

In general, mean flow under the PP would be similar to (less than 5% difference) or greater than flow under the NAA during most months and water year types of the spring-run juvenile emigration period (ICF International 2016, Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results,* Table 5.A.6-10, Table 5.A.6-14, Table 5.A.6-35, and Table 5.A.6-36). During November of wet and above normal water years, however, flow under the PP would be 26% lower than it would be under the NAA at Keswick Dam, 21% lower at Red Bluff, up to 24% lower at Wilkins Slough, and up to 17% lower at Verona. In November of critical water years, flow would be greater at all the locations (up to 13% greater in Keswick). Flow would also be lower in October of wet years (7% to 9% lower, depending on location) and 6% to 13% lower in February of critical years, except at Verona. The largest increases in flow under the PP would occur during October of below normal and dry years, with increases in ranging from 6% in dry years at Red Bluff to 17% in below normal years at Keswick. The large flow differences during October and November coincide with the peak of the juvenile emigration period. During January, mean flow under the PP at Keswick would be 18% greater than it would be under the NAA in critical water year types and 8% greater in wet years. At Red Bluff, the mean January flow in critical years would be 7% greater under the PP; at the other two locations, all differences in January flow would be less than 5%. During February, in addition to the flow reductions described above, flow would be 8% greater in below normal years but only at Keswick. During March, flow under the PP at Keswick would be 9% greater in above normal and below normal years and 8% greater in critical years, but there would be no differences greater than 5% at the other locations. During May, flow would be 5% to 8% greater in dry years, except at Verona.

The CALSIM modeling results given here indicate that the PP would reduce flow in some months and water year types, although this does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5 *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta* and Section 3.3.3 *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process* that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects. Further discussion regarding flow-related effects during the June through November period are provided in Section 4.3.4.2.2, *Summary of Upstream Effects*.

4.4.4.2.1.2.2.2 Water Temperature-Related Effects

Modeled mean monthly water temperatures in the Sacramento River in the reach from Keswick Dam to Knights Landing during the October through May juvenile emigration period for spring-run Chinook salmon are presented in *Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C, Section 5.C.7 *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results*, Table 5.C.7-3, Table 5.C.7-4, Table 5.C.7-5, Table 5.C.7-7, Table 5.C.7-8, and Table 5.C.7-10)[54]. Overall, the PP would change mean water temperatures very little (predominantly less than 1°F, or approximately 1%) throughout the Sacramento River upstream of the Delta in all months and water year types in the period. The largest increase in mean monthly water temperatures under the PP relative to NAA would be 1.0°F (1.4%), and would occur at Knights Landing in below normal years during August.

Exceedance plots of monthly mean water temperatures were examined during each month throughout the spring-run Chinook salmon juvenile emigration period (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C *Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results*, Section 5.C.7 *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results*, Figure 5.C.7.3-7, Figure 5.C.7.4-7, Figure 5.C.7.5-7, Figure 5.C.7.7-7, Figure 5.C.7.8-7, and Figure 5.C.7.10-7[55]). Values in the exceedance plots for PP generally match those of the NAA, except in below normal water years in August at Knights Landing, for which water temperatures under the PP would be higher than those under NAA for most of the range by up to approximately 2.2°F, particularly at the colder end of the range (Figure 4.4-90**Error! Reference source not found.**). As indicated above, temperatures predicted for Knights Landing during August of below normal water years would be greater than the 64°F 7DADM threshold on 100% of days under both the NAA and PP although there is low certainty that modeled values are comparable to actual values. Therefore, this suggests that, with low certainty conditions would already be unsuitable for spring-run Chinook salmon juvenile emigration for reasons that are independent of the PP.

Please see the discussion of water temperature thresholds for juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon emigration in Section 4.3.4.2.1.3.1.2, *Fry and Juvenile Rearing*, which concludes that that there would be no water temperature-related effects of the PP on spring-run Chinook salmon juvenile rearing and emigration.

---

34 Water temperature results for Wilkins Slough were used to represent Knights Landing for this analysis to represent Knights Landing for this analysis

4.4.4.2.1.2.3 Adult Immigration

4.4.4.2.1.2.3.1 Flow-Related Effects

Mean monthly flows were evaluated in the Sacramento River at four locations along the upstream migration corridor of adult spring-run Chinook salmon (i.e., Keswick, Red Bluff, Wilkins Slough and Verona) during the March through September immigration period, with peak migration during May and June (Table 4.4-20). Changes in flow potentially affect conditions for upstream migration of adults, including bioenergetic cost, water quality, crowding, cues for locating natal streams, and passage conditions, but the quantitative relationship between flow and upstream migration is poorly understood (Quinn 2005; Milner et al. 2012). As described in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.4 *Migration Flows Methods*), on balance, except under very high flows, the benefits of increased flow generally outweigh the costs and, therefore, it is assumed for the purposes of this effects analysis that increased flow would improve conditions for upstream migration of adult spring-run Chinook salmon. Milner et al. (2012) and del Rosario et al. (2013) have found that migration cues for anadromous fish species are often the result of natural pulse flows, or pulse flows caused by natural events, such as an extensive rainfall event, which will not be affected by the PP.

Shasta Reservoir storage volume at the end of May influences flows in the Sacramento River during the second half of the immigration period. Mean Shasta May storage under the PP would be similar (less than 5% difference) to storage under NAA for all water year types (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results*, Table 5.A.6-3).

In general, mean flows under the PP at the four river locations during the 4 months of the adult immigration period for spring-run Chinook salmon would be similar to (less than 5% difference) or greater than those under the NAA, whereas mean flows during the last 3 months would be similar (less than 5% difference) between the PP and the NAA or would be lower under the PP (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A *CalSim II Modeling and Results*, Table 5.A.6-10, Table 5.A.6-14, Table 5.A.6-35, and Table 5.A.6-36). During March, mean flow under the PP at Keswick would be 9% greater in above normal and below normal years and 8% greater in critical years, but there would be no differences greater than 5% at the other locations. During May, flow under the PP would be greater (up to 8% greater at Wilkins Slough) at all the locations, except Verona. During June, flow under the PP would be greater at all the locations, including all water year types at Verona and all water year types, except wet years at the other locations. The increases for all water year types would be greater at Wilkins Sough and Verona (up to 25% greater in above normal years) than those at Keswick and Red Bluff. The flow differences during May and June, all of which are positive for the PP, would occur during the peak immigration period. During July of critical water years, mean flow under the PP would be up to 13% lower at Wilkins Slough and Verona. During August, mean flow in below normal years would be lower at all four locations (up to 18% lower flow at Wilkins Slough). During August of dry and critical years, flow under the PP would be greater (up to 10% greater) at Wilkins Slough and Verona. Mean flow during September would be lower for most water year types at all the locations (up to 24% lower in below normal years at Verona).

The CALSIM modeling results given here indicate that the PP would reduce flow in some months and water year types, although this does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5 *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta*, and Section 3.3.3 *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process*, that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects. Further discussion regarding flow-related effects during the June through November period are provided in Section 4.3.4.2.2 *Summary of Upstream Effects*.

As described in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.4, *Migration Flows Methods*), mean monthly flow below about 3,250 cfs is considered to have potentially adverse effects on Chinook salmon adult immigration conditions in the Sacramento River. The effect of the PP on the frequency of flows below this threshold was evaluated by comparing CALSIM flows between the PP and the NAA at three of the migration corridor locations in the river: Keswick, Red Bluff, and Wilkins Slough. Of the 574 months within the spring-run Chinook salmon migration period, only one has a mean flow less than 3,250 cfs under both the PP and the NAA at Keswick and Wilkins Slough, and none has a mean flow less than 3,250 cfs at Red Bluff. The one month with mean flow less than 3,250 cfs for both scenarios and locations was September of 1934, a critically dry water year.

4.4.4.2.1.2.3.2 Water Temperature-Related Effects

Modeled mean monthly water temperatures in the Sacramento River at Keswick Dam, Bend Bridge, and Red Bluff during the March through September adult immigration period for spring-run Chinook salmon are presented in *Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C, Section 5.C.7, *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results*, Table 5.C.7-3, Table 5.C.7-7, and Table 5.C.7-8). Overall, the PP would change mean water temperatures very little (less than 1°F, or approximately 1%) at these locations in all months and water year types in the period. The largest increase in mean monthly water temperatures under the PP relative to NAA would be 0.6°F (0.9% to 1.1%), and would occur at Red Bluff in below normal years during August and in above- and below normal water years during September.

Exceedance plots of monthly mean water temperatures were examined during each month throughout the adult immigration period (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C *Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results*, Section 5.C.7 *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results*, Figure 5.C.7.3-7, Figure 5.C.7.7-7, and Figure 5.C.7.8-7). The curves for the PP generally match those of the NAA. For below normal water years in August at Red Bluff, where the largest increase in mean monthly water temperature was seen, the PP curve is consistently higher than the NAA curve by approximately 0.5°F (Figure 4.4-90**Error! Reference source not found.**). During September of above normal and below normal water years, water temperatures are more variable between the two scenarios, but those under the PP are higher in nearly all years (Figure 4.4-48 and Figure 4.4-49**Error! Reference source not found.Error! Reference source not found.**).

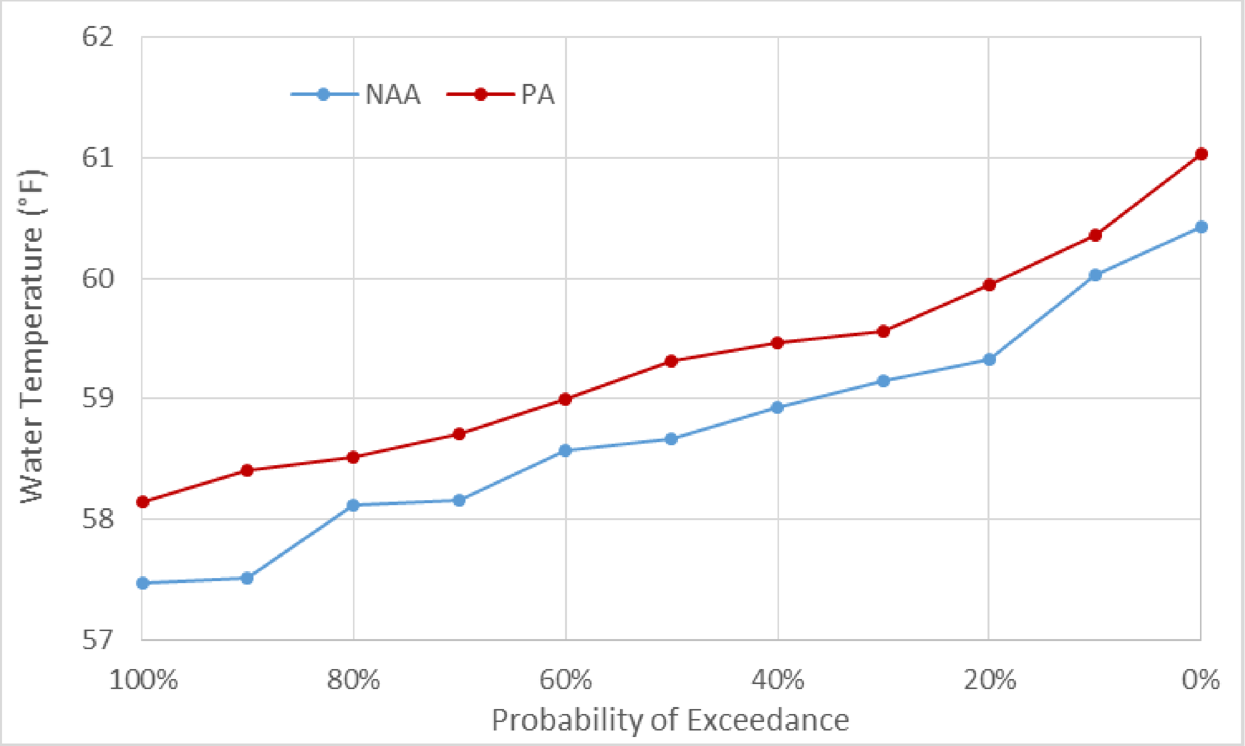


Figure 4.4-90. Exceedance Plot of Mean Monthly Water Temperatures (°F) in the Sacramento River at Red Bluff in August of Below Normal Water Years

To evaluate water temperature threshold exceedance during the adult immigration life stage at Keswick Dam, Bend Bridge, and Red Bluff, the USEPA's 7DADM threshold value of 68°F was used (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1 *Water Temperature Analysis Methods*, Table 5.D.2-49). The threshold was converted to function with daily model outputs for each month separately (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1 *Water Temperature Analysis Methods*, Table 5.D.2-51).

Results of the water temperature thresholds analysis are presented in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-91 through Table 5.D-93). At Keswick Dam and Red Bluff, there would be no months or water year types in which there would be both 5% more days under the PP compared to the NAA on which temperatures would exceed the threshold, and a more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-91 and Table 5.D-93).

At Bend Bridge, there are two instances during which the percent of days exceeding the 68°F DADM under the PP would be more than 5% higher than under the NAA: August of critical water years (5.1% higher under the PP) and September of critical water years (5.3% higher) (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-92). However, there would be a negligible (less than 0.1°F) difference in average daily exceedance in these instances. Therefore, it was concluded that there would be no biologically meaningful effect on spring-run adult immigration.

Overall, there would be more exceedances (5% or greater) in certain months and water year types under the PP, which could have lethal or sublethal effects on adult immigrants, although this does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5 *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta,* and Section 3.3.3 *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process,* that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects. The biological interpretation of these results, combined with all upstream results, in the context of real-time operational management is provided in Section 4.3.4.2.2 *Summary of Upstream Effects*.

4.4.4.2.1.2.4 Adult Holding

4.4.4.2.1.2.4.1 Flow-Related Effects

Mean monthly flow rates and reservoir storage volumes were examined for the PP and NAA in the Sacramento River at the Keswick Dam and Red Bluff locations during the April through September holding period, with peak occurrence during May through August, for spring-run Chinook salmon (Table 4.4-20). Changes in flow likely affect holding habitat for spring-run Chinook salmon, with higher flows potentially providing greater depths and improved water quality in pools. Shasta Reservoir storage volume at the end of May influences flow rates below the dam during much of the spring-run holding period. Mean Shasta May storage under the PP would be similar (less than 5% difference) to storage under NAA for all water year types (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A, Table 5.A.6-3). During the majority of months and water year types of the spring-run holding period, the PP would result in minor (less than 5% difference) changes in mean flow in the Sacramento River at the Keswick Dam and Red Bluff locations (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.A, Table 5.A.6-10 and Table 5.A.6-35). However, at both locations, flows under the PP would be 5% to 7% higher during May of dry years and June of all water year types except wet years. Mean flow during August of below normal years would be 10% lower under the PP than under the NAA and mean flows during September would range from 5% to 11% lower under the PP for all water year types except wet years. The flow increases during May and June and the decrease during August occur within the peak spring-run holding period (May through August).

4.4.4.2.1.2.4.2 Water Temperature-Related Effects

Modeled mean monthly water temperatures in the Sacramento River at Keswick Dam, Balls Ferry, and Red Bluff during the April through September adult holding period for spring-run Chinook salmon are presented in *Upstream Water Temperature Methods and Results* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C, Section 5.C.7, *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results*). Table 5.C.7-3, Table 5.C.7-5, Table 5.C.7-8. Overall, the PP would change mean water temperatures very little (less than 1°F, or approximately 1%) at these locations in all months and water year types in the period. The largest increase in mean monthly water temperatures under the PP relative to NAA would be 0.6°F, or up to 1.1%, and would occur at Red Bluff in above normal years during August and above- and below normal years during September. This 0.6°F increase during August would occur during the last month of the peak adult holding period (May through August).

Exceedance plots of monthly mean water temperatures were examined during each month throughout the adult holding period (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C, Section 5.C.7 *Upstream Water Temperature Modeling Results*, Figure 5.C.7.3-7, Figure 5.C.7.5-7, and Figure 5.C.7.8-7). The curves for PP generally match those of the NAA. For below normal water years in August at Red Bluff, where the largest increase in mean monthly water temperature was seen, the PP curve is consistently higher than the NAA curve by approximately 0.5°F (Figure 4.4-89**Error! Reference source not found.**).

To evaluate water temperature threshold exceedance during the spring-run Chinook salmon adult holding life stage at Keswick Dam, Balls Ferry, and Red Bluff, the USEPA's 7DADM threshold value of 61°F was used (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1 *Water Temperature Analysis Methods*, Table 5.D-49; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency 2003). The threshold was converted to function with daily model outputs for each month separately (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.1, *Water Temperature Analysis Methods*, Table 5.D-51).

Results of the water temperature thresholds analysis are presented in *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale* (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-94 through Table 5.D-96). At Keswick Dam and Balls Ferry, there would be no months or water year types in which there would be both 5% more days under the PP compared to the NAA on which temperatures would exceed the threshold, and a more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5, *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-94 and Table 5.D-95). Also at Balls Ferry, there would be a 10% reduction under the PP in the percent of days above the threshold in September of critical water years and a concurrent increase in average daily exceedance above the threshold of 0.7°F.

At Red Bluff, the percent of days exceeding the 61°F 7DADM threshold for adult holding habitat under the PP would be more than 5% higher than under the NAA during July (6.5%) of critical water years, August of below normal water years (9.4%), and September of above normal (7.7%), below normal (10.3%) and critical (5.5%) water years (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.5 *Detailed Water Temperature Threshold Analysis Results*, Table 5.D-96). There would also be reductions in the percent of days exceeding the threshold in June of critical years (5.8%) and August of dry (6.1%) and critical (6.5%) water years. However, in none of these situations would there also be a more-than-0.5°F difference in the magnitude of average daily exceedance. In Therefore, it was concluded that there would be no biologically meaningful effect.

Overall, the thresholds analysis indicates that there would be more exceedances (5% or greater) in certain months and water year types under the PP, which could have lethal or sublethal effects on holding adults, although this does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5, *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta*, and Section 3.3.3, *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process*, that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects. The biological interpretation of these results, combined with all upstream results, in the context of real-time operational management and RPA revisions is provided in Section 4.3.4.2.2, *Summary of Upstream Effects*.

4.4.4.2.1.2.5 Life Cycle Models

The SALMOD, a model that behaves like a life cycle model in some ways, is described in this section. Because it integrates multiple life stages, it is described separately from the life stage-specific results for the spring-run Chinook salmon analysis in the Sacramento River. A full description can be found in ICF International (2016), Appendix 5.D *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale,* Attachment 5.D.2 *SALMOD Model.*

4.4.4.2.1.2.5.1 SALMOD

The SALMOD model integrates all early life stages of spring-run Chinook salmon race on an annual basis and provides an *Annual Potential Production* value (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Attachment 5.D.2, *SALMOD Model*). This value represents all individuals that survive from the pre-spawn egg stage to the end of the year in each year of the 80-year simulation period. Individual years are independent of one another and, therefore, effects through time cannot be evaluated as a time series.

Mean spring-run Chinook salmon annual potential production values and differences between scenarios are presented in Table 4.4-35 and an exceedance plot is provided in Figure 4.4-91. Overall, these results indicate that changes in spring-run Chinook salmon annual potential production under the PP relative to the NAA would be insignificant. This result is consistent among water year types and when all water year types are combined, except in critical years, in which there would be a 20,164 fish (8%) increase in annual potential production under the PP, representing a small benefit of the PP on spring-run Chinook salmon annual potential production. Despite the small magnitude of the effect of the PP to mean spring-run Chinook salmon annual potential production, it could compound with in-Delta effects to negatively affect the species if there were no benefits implemented to offset them. As a model that integrates early life stages, but not all life stages, SALMOD does not provide a basis to evaluate the subsequent impacts of in-Delta effects on the predicted total annual potential production. However, this modeling does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5 *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta* and Section 3.3.3 *Real-Time Operational Decision-Making Process* that would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects. Further, this modeling also does not consider the current revision process to OCAP RPA Action Suite 1.2 described in Section 3.1.4.5 *Annual/Seasonal Temperature Management Upstream of the Delta,* to improve winter-run Chinook salmon egg-to-fry survival. This process may result in refinements and additions to the existing annual/seasonal temperature management processes, including spring storage targets, revised temperature compliance criteria and a range in summertime Keswick release rates.

Table 4.4-35. Mean Annual Potential Production of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon and Differences between Model Scenarios, SALMOD

Analysis Period	Annual Potential Production (# of Fish/year)
All Water Year Types Combined	
Full Simulation Period[1]	
NAA	401,814
PP	407,082
Difference	5,269
Percent Difference2	1
Water Year Types3	
Wet (32.5%)	
NAA	442,361
PP	457,069
Difference	14,708
Percent Difference	3
Above Normal (12.5%)	
NAA	376,362
PP	379,324
Difference	2,963
Percent Difference	1
Below Normal (17.5%)	
NAA	464,026
PP	463,493
Difference	-533
Percent Difference	0
Dry (22.5%)	
NAA	**412,383**
PP	401,490
Difference	-10,894
Percent Difference	-3
Critical (15%)	
NAA	268,146
PP	288,311
Difference	20,164
Percent Difference	8

1 Based on the 80-year simulation period

2 Relative difference of the annual average

3 As defined by the Sacramento Valley 40-30-30 Index Water Year Hydrologic Classification (State Water Resources Control Board 1995). Water years may not correspond to the biological years in SALMOD.

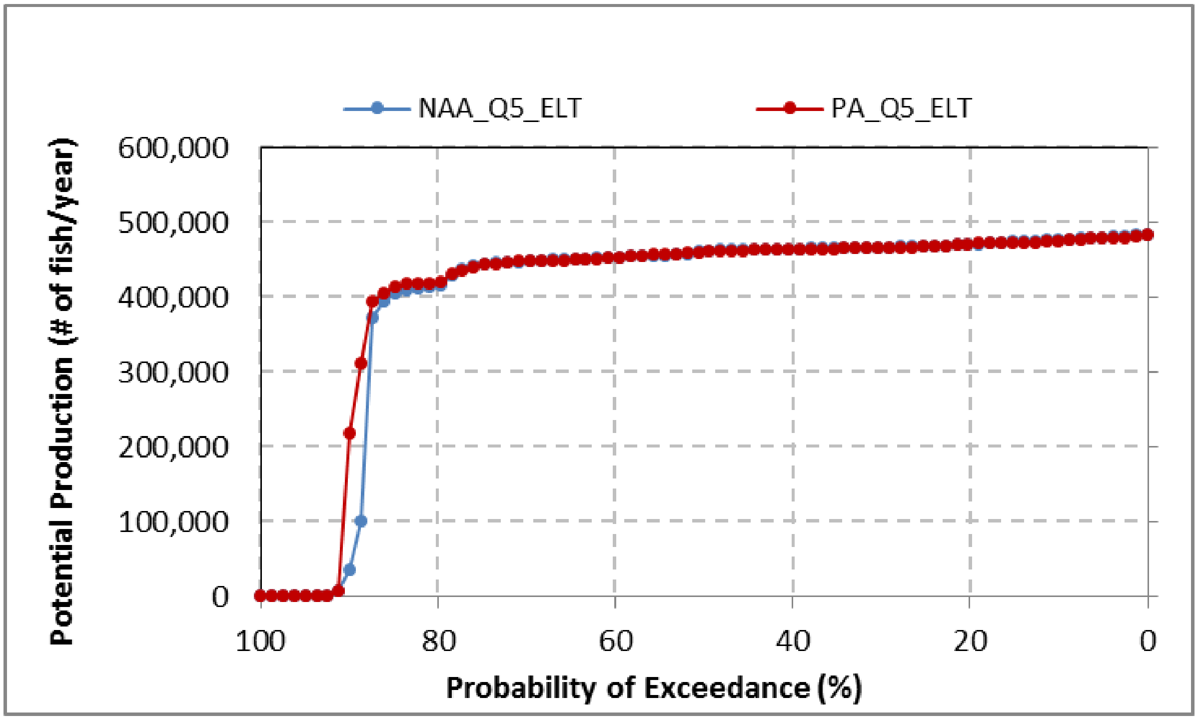


Figure 4.4-91. Exceedance Plot for Annual Potential Production (# of Fish/Year) of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon, SALMOD

The frequency at which annual production was below minimum production thresholds was evaluated as a measure of a worst-case scenario for spring-run Chinook salmon. Thresholds were determined as 5% and 10% of the number of eggs used as inputs into the model (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Attachment 5.D.2, *SALMOD* for details). The initial egg value was 1,210,000 for both NAA and PP and, therefore, the 5% and 10% values were 60,500 fish per year and 121,000 fish per year, respectively. Results are presented in Table 4.4-36. There would be 1 year fewer (11% lower) under the PP compared to the NAA during which production would be below the 5% (60,000 fish) threshold. There would be 2 fewer years (20% lower) under the PP compared to the NAA during which production would be below the 10% (591,300 fish) threshold. Therefore, the PP would have insignificant effects on the frequency of worst-case scenario years for spring-run Chinook salmon.

Table 4.4-36. Number of Years during which Spring-Run Chinook Salmon Production Would be Lower than Production Thresholds and Differences (Percent Differences) between Model Scenarios, SALMOD

Production Threshold (# of Fish)	NAA (# of Years)	PP (# of Years)	PP vs. NAA (# of Years [%])
60,500 (based on 5% of eggs)	9	8	-1 (-11%)
121,000 (based on 10% of eggs)	10	8	-2 (-20%)

4.4.4.2.1.3 Assess Risk to Individuals

Based on the responses of spring-run Chinook salmon exposed to the PP described in Section 4.4.4.2.1.3 *Assess Species Response to the Proposed Project*, above, the risk to individuals would be small to negligible in the Sacramento River, with occasional moderate risk related to early life stages, although this does not consider real-time operational management described in Section 3.1.5, *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta*, and Section 3.3.3, *Real-Time Operational*

Decision-Making Process, which would be used to avoid and minimize any modeled effects. Fitness of individuals, including reproductive success during spawning, survival during embryo incubation, survival and growth during fry and juvenile rearing, survival and growth during immigration and emigration, and expression of life history as a result of spawning, rearing, and migration habitat availability, would be largely similar between the NAA and PP. There are few instances in which there would be small effects to individuals resulting from changes in reservoir operations under the PP. Spring-run Chinook salmon may experience small reductions in survival of egg, alevin, fry, and juvenile life stages due to increased water temperatures during August and September and increased risk of redd dewatering for June and August cohorts, reduced expression of life history diversity due to reductions in rearing WUA in June, if population numbers were high enough that habitat was limiting[56], reduced survival and growth during juvenile emigration in November and adult immigration in September due to reduced instream flows. Please see Section 4.3.4.2.2, *Summary of Upstream Effects*, for a description of how real-time operational management of the PP may reduce the likelihood that these effects would occur.

4.4.4.2.2 Summary of Upstream Effects

The results presented in Section 4.3.4.2.1 *Sacramento River* indicate that, overall, upstream effects of the PP on spring-run Chinook salmon are expected to be predominantly small to negligible. There are a few particular upstream changes described here that are noteworthy because physical conditions under the PP may potentially cause degraded conditions relative to the NAA for these species, although there is considerable uncertainty in the likelihood of a biological effect resulting from the changes in the physical conditions. Under each change stated below, differences in the physical conditions under the PP relative to the NAA that are the key drivers are identified. The noted upstream changes are primarily a result of reductions in the September and November flows under the PP relative to the NAA, as modeled using CalSim II. An explanation of whether the physical drivers that may cause degraded conditions for the species under PP as modeled can be avoided during actual PP operations is also provided.

1. **Increased frequency of exceedance of water temperature thresholds for rearing spring-run Chinook salmon during September from Keswick to Red Bluff, especially in below normal water years, under the PP relative to the NAA**. These increases in the modeled frequency of water temperature threshold exceedances likely result primarily from reduced Shasta releases associated with the PP's operational modeling. Modeling of the coldwater pool volume, which is more indicative of temperature management suggests PP end-of-September (EOS) storage similar to that of the NAA (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C, Table 5.C.7.21-1 *Shasta Cold Water Pool Volume*). If real-time cold water pool management efforts under the PP use similar decision making tools and criteria as currently utilized (i.e., NAA), then releases from Shasta Lake under the PP would actually be sustained at similar levels as the NAA during September. Thus, it is likely that the PP would not experience higher water temperatures relative to the NAA during September, as was modeled in this analysis.

---

lation size.

2. **Increased frequency of exceedance of water temperature thresholds for spawning spring-run Chinook salmon during August and September (and into October) in the Sacramento River from Clear Creek to Bend Bridge, especially in above normal and below normal water years, under the PP relative to the NAA**. As noted above the increased temperatures in the reach of the Sacramento River downstream of Clear Creek are primarily a result of the lower Shasta releases under the PP relative to the NAA. The majority of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento River spawn upstream of Battle Creek, so there is some overlap with the reach in which the frequency of exceeding water temperature thresholds increase under the PP relative to the NAA. In addition, for all water year types during these months in which there is a biologically meaningful increase of 5% in the frequency of exceedance under the PP relative to the NAA, the actual difference in mean magnitude of exceedance would not be biologically meaningful (<0.5°F) (Section 4.3.4.2.1.3.1.1.6 *Water Temperature-Related Effects*, and Section 4.3.4.2.1.3.2.2.3 *Water Temperature-Related Effects*). Therefore, although there are more exceedances under the PP during these months, the magnitude would not be biologically meaningful. Moreover, as discussed above, in reviewing the modeled cold water pool conditions in the Shasta Reservoir leading to the releases in the late summer months and assuming similar real-time cold water pool management decisions under the PP and the NAA, the PP is likely to result in similar conditions as the NAA (ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.C, Table 5.C.7.21-1 *Shasta Cold Water Pool Volume*). Thus, it is likely that the PP would not experience higher water temperatures relative to the NAA during August and September, as was modeled in this analysis.

3. **Increased risk of redd dewatering for August cohorts of spring-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento River from Keswick to Battle Creek under the PP relative to the NAA.** This increase risk is a result of the lower Shasta releases in September and November under the PP relative to the NAA. However, it is unlikely that the increased risk of redd dewatering seen in this analysis would occur during future operations because, as discussed above, Sacramento River flows in September would likely be sustained at similar levels as the NAA to meet cold water pool requirements.

4. **Decreased rearing weighted usable area for spring-run Chinook salmon juveniles under the PP relative to the NAA during June in the Sacramento River reaches from Keswick to A.C.I.D. Dam and from Cow Creek to Battle Creek[57].** These decreases are due to increased Sacramento River flow under the PP relative to the NAA during June. As described earlier, weighted usable area estimate is a potential indicator of suitable habitat for rearing juveniles. However, the direct biological effect of reduction in the weighted usable area in limited reaches of the Sacramento River on the rearing juveniles is uncertain. As described in the footnote below, this may only be a concern if population numbers in the Sacramento River were high enough that the habitat was limiting, which currently is not the case. Higher modeled Shasta Reservoir releases during June under the PP relative to the NAA are primarily the reason for the reduction in the weighted usable area estimates found in this analysis.

---

ss of the effects to be managed in the best interest of the species is necessary, regardless of variability in population size

5. **Reduced flows during September, primarily in above normal, below normal, and dry water years, which may result in degraded migration conditions for adult spring-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento River under the PP relative to the NAA.** These reduced flows are primarily a result of reductions in modeled Shasta Reservoir releases. However, as described above, assuming similar real-time cold water pool management decisions under the PP and the NAA, actual differences in September Shasta Reservoir releases between the PP and the NAA would be minor and reductions in migration flows, therefore, may not occur. Further, there is low certainty in the assumed positive linear relationship between flow and migration success (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.4, *Migration Flow Methods*). Finally, migration cues for anadromous fish species are often the result of pulse flows (Milner et al. 2012; del Rosario et al. 2013), which will not be affected by the PP

6. **Reduced flows during November, primarily in wet and above normal water years, which may result in degraded migration conditions for juvenile spring-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento River.** These reduced flows are the result of lower releases from Shasta Reservoir. As noted above, there is a low certainty in the assumed positive linear relationship between flow and migration success (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D, Section 5.D.2.4 *Migration Flow Methods*). Also, migration cues for anadromous fish species are often the result of pulse flows (Milner et al. 2012; del Rosario et al. 2013), which will not be affected by the PP.

In summary, these CalSim II results show that the upstream storage conditions under the PP would generally be similar to the NAA. With the increased flexibility offered by the proposed north Delta diversion under the PP, additional natural excess runoff in the winter and spring months are expected to be available for the Delta exports, thereby reducing stored water releases in some fall months and improving carryover storage and cold water pool in the following year. In modeling of the NAA, given the winter and spring export restrictions under the BiOps, higher releases continue for Delta exports through the fall months unlike the PP. Thus typically model results show lower river flows in the fall months (primarily in September and November) under the PP compared to the NAA. The September flow reductions modeled under PP result in slightly higher water temperatures in the rivers compared to the NAA. These modeling outcomes do not reflect the totality of the annual, seasonal, and real-time considerations that would be used to determine how to make reservoir releases.

CalSim II, used to represent the operations of the NAA and PP, is a long-term planning model that allows for quantitative simulation of the CVP and SWP operations on a monthly time-step across a wide range of hydrologic, regulatory and operations instances. The CalSim II model uses a set of pre-defined generalized rules that represent the assumed regulations and to specify the operations of the CVP/SWP systems. These inputted rules are often specified as a function of year type or a prior month’s simulated storage or flow condition. As described above, the model has no capability of adjusting these rules to respond to specific events that may have occurred historically, e.g., fish presence, levee failures, fluctuations in barometric pressure that may have affected delta tides and salinities, facility outages, etc. These generalized rules have been developed based on historical operational trends and on limited CVP/SWP operator input and only provide a coarse representation of the project operations over the inputted hydrologic conditions. Thus, results do not exactly match what operators might do in a specific month or year within the simulation period since the latter would be informed by numerous real-time considerations that cannot be inputted into the CalSim II model. Rather, results are intended to be a reasonable representation of long-term operational trends of CVP and SWP, providing the ability to compare and contrast the effect of current and assumed future operational conditions.

Day-to-day decision-making by the CVP–SWP operators considers the recommendations from many of the decision-making/advisory teams, such as the Sacramento River Temperature Technical Group (SRTTG), Water Operations Management Team (WOMT), b2 interagency team (B2IT) and American River Operations Group. CalSim II cannot consider all of these factors. Instead, CalSim II simulates a generalized representation of likely long-term operations under each scenario. ICF International (2016, Appendix 5.A *CALSIM Methods and Results*), provides a detailed description of the CalSim II model, assumptions used to model the NAA and the PP scenarios, and the many limitations of the tool, including limitations with respect to application of model outputs to analyses such as those used in this effects analysis. These analyses cannot consider the research and monitoring results that will be obtained during the Collaborative Science and Adaptive Management Program.

Most of the teams listed above include representatives from the three fishery agencies (NMFS, USFWS, and CDFW), operators, other regulatory agencies, and stakeholders. These teams provide forums for real-time information exchange between biologists and reservoir operators, leading to recommendations on the reservoir operations and compliance with existing water temperature requirements per SWRCB WRO 90-05, and to 2009 NMFS BiOp Action I.2. For example, the SRTTG provides recommendations on short-term operational aspects of reservoir management including coordinating real-time operations and reporting on the temperature requirements specified by SWRCB WRO 90-05 and the 2009 NMFS BiOp RPAs, based on the factors such as run timing, location of redds, air and surface water temperature modeling, and projected versus actual extent of the cold water pool. The current decision-making processes and the advisory groups will continue and will be improved under the PP (see Chapter 3, Section 3.1.5, *Real-Time Operations Upstream of the Delta*, and Section 3.3, *Operations and Maintenance for the New and Existing Facilities*), which will allow for minimization of modeled effects identified above to listed species under future operations of the PP.

4.4.5 Effects of Construction and Maintenance of Mitigation

4.4.5.1 Tidal, Channel Margin, and Riparian Habitat Protection and Restoration

4.4.5.1.1 Overview

As summarized in Table 5.4-1, tidal wetland restoration would be undertaken to mitigate permanent and temporary impacts from construction of the NDD, the HOR gate, and barge landings. Typical activities to be undertaken at tidal wetland restoration sites are discussed in Section 5.4.1 *Delta Smelt*. The main activities include excavating channels; modifying ditches, cuts, and levees; removal/breaching and/or setting back of existing levees/embankments; and altering land surface elevations by scalping higher elevation land or importing fill. Channel margin habitat would also be restored as discussed in Section 5.4.3 *Sacramento River Winter-Run Chinook Salmon.* Typical activities would include riprap removal; bench creation through grading; installation of large woody material; and planting of riparian/emergent wetland vegetation on created benches.

4.4.5.1.2 Assess Species Exposure

Construction at habitat restoration sites will be undertaken during the in-water work window and therefore most spring-run Chinook salmon are unlikely to be exposed. Once constructed, Chinook salmon would have access to the restoration sites during their periods of occurrence within the Delta.

4.4.5.1.3 Assess Fish Species Response

As previously noted, restoration construction effects are expected to be limited given the proposed timing of in-water work. For any Chinook salmon individuals that are present, the types of construction effects at restoration sites are likely to be similar to those described in Section 4.3.2 *Effects of Water Facility Construction* for construction of the NDD, although the magnitude of these effects will be substantially less given the reduced amount of in-water work necessary. These effects may include turbidity, exposure to contaminants, and direct physical injury; effects from pile driving and stranding are not expected. Construction of restoration sites will require very little in-water work and will be temporary, and will be performed in accordance with take minimization measures described in Section 5.3 *Take Minimization Measures* (Section 5.3.4 *Central Valley Spring-Run Chinook Salmon*).

To the extent that individual migrating Chinook salmon encounter restoration sites, the restoration may enhance habitat value in these areas, relative to the unrestored state of the habitat where the restoration is undertaken, e.g., by increasing production of prey, and providing new resting areas and cover. These newly restored areas will be designed in coordination with NMFS and DFW to maximize the potential for these new habitat areas to provide habitat values to salmon, while minimizing potential adverse effects. The restoration is intended to offset adverse effects from loss of habitat from water facility construction and operations, e.g., loss of physical habitat because of the NDD construction and less frequent inundation of riparian benches because of NDD operations. The extent to which this offsetting occurs is based on the acreage and linear extent of habitat that is affected, with typical restoration ratios applied (Table 5.4-1 in Chapter 5 *Take Minimization and Mitigation Measures*). Potential adverse effects to Chinook salmon from restored habitat include degraded water quality (e.g., liberation of contaminants such as mercury from soils, if such contaminants have not been removed by soil grading activities) and increased predation risk depending on site characteristics, although the latter can be avoided by careful design of restoration sites to limit potential for colonization by invasive aquatic vegetation. Such potential effects are expected to be limited in scale, given the limited size of the areas to be restored.

4.4.5.2 Georgiana Slough Nonphysical Fish Barrier

4.4.5.2.1 Overview

As described in Section 5.3.3.2.2 *Nonphysical Fish Barrier at Georgiana Slough*, the Georgiana Slough Nonphysical Fish Barrier (NPB) will consist of a permanent NPB to reduce the likelihood of Sacramento River-origin juvenile salmonids entering the interior Delta through Georgiana Slough. Several pilot studies have been implemented to test this concept, but no final design has been selected. Additional pilot studies will be implemented to further improve understanding and the efficacy of the future permanent barrier. The construction effects of a NPB have been outlined in previous consultations on the pilot projects that have been implemented to date. The final design of the NPB may differ from those that have been tested to date, but the general types and magnitudes of construction and operational effects would not exceed those described in the previous BiOps. Based on a recent evaluation of different technology to achieve the goal of minimizing entrance of juvenile salmon into the interior Delta via Georgiana Slough, a bioacoustic fish fence (BAFF) appears to offer more potential than a floating fish guidance structure (FFGS) for this location (California Department of Water Resources 2015b), although these and other options are possibilities. The analysis presented herein focuses on the potential effects of these types of NPB, as there is precedent for their installation at this location: a BAFF was tested in 2011 and 2012, and a FFGS was tested in 2014. Both technologies block the upper portion of the water column because the focus for protection is surface-oriented juvenile salmonids. The BAFF consists of acoustic deterrence stimuli broadcast from loudspeakers and contained within a bubble curtain that is illuminated with strobe lights (to allow the fish to orient away from the sound stimulus better), whereas the FFGS is a floating series of metal plates that deters fish based on them seeing the barrier and sensing the change in flow. Whereas the pilot studies of these technologies and their construction occurred in winter/spring, for the PP, construction will occur prior to the main period of juvenile salmonid (November/December–June) occurrence, and removal will occur after this period (e.g., July).

4.4.5.2.2 Assess Species Exposure

Juvenile salmonids emigrating from the Sacramento River will be exposed to NPB operations, but will be unlikely to be exposed to construction/removal effects. Adult spring-run Chinook salmon migrating upstream to natal tributaries in the Sacramento River basin will be exposed to NPB operations, but will be unlikely to overlap the construction or removal period.

4.4.5.2.3 Assess Fish Species Response

Any pile driving for NPB construction will be done with a vibratory hammer during times when presence of listed salmonids will not overlap construction. In-water work will be conducted using appropriate measures to minimize effects, as was done during the pilot implementations of the BAFF (National Marine Fisheries Service 2011) and FFGS (National Marine Fisheries Service 2014a).

The potential effectiveness of the NPB for deterring juvenile salmonids from entry into Georgiana Slough was discussed in the context of operations in Section 4.4.4.1.2.2.1.4

Nonphysical Fish Barrier at Georgiana Slough. Operational effects also could include enhanced risk of predation near the NPB, as NPBs include in-water structures that predatory fish may use as ambush habitat, and there may be increased susceptibility to predation if migrating juvenile salmonids are startled by the NPB (particularly the BAFF, with its acoustic deterrence) and swim rapidly away. However, there was no evidence from acoustic tracking that juvenile salmonids were being preyed upon at higher rates near the BAFF compared to farther away in 2011 and 2012, and little evidence from acoustic tracking of predators that they occupied areas near the BAFF more frequently than other areas (California Department of Water Resources 2012, 2015a). Indeed, the 2011 and 2012 BAFF pilot studies provided evidence that predatory fish were deterred by the BAFF being turned on,[58] with general evidence for increasing avoidance over time, although some species may have become conditioned to the BAFF over time and therefore will not have been deterred. Studies of the 2014 FFGS have not been completed to address these topics.

Migrating adult salmonids encountering the NPB could have upstream passage blocked or disrupted by the NPB, particularly if attempting to move upstream from Georgiana Slough to the Sacramento River, although based on the configurations used during the pilot studies[59], passage will be available under/around the FFGS, or under the BAFF. An FFGS would be unlikely to pose much of a delay (assuming the whole channel mouth is not blocked), whereas a BAFF could result in passage delay or some risk of near-field predation, as discussed previously. The potential to swim under a BAFF would be good at Georgiana Slough, based on pilot studies wherein the sound stimulus and bubble-generating apparatus were in the middle of the water column in order to maintain the integrity of the bubble curtain. Alternatively, juvenile salmonids could migrate back downstream, which would lower the prospects for survival because this migration route generally results in greater mortality than the mainstem Sacramento River (Singer et al. 2013).

4.4.6 Effects of Monitoring Activities

As described in Section 6 *Monitoring Plan*, effectiveness monitoring for fish would consist of a combination of continuation of existing monitoring authorized under the 2008/2009 BiOps and the 2009 Incidental Take Permit (i.e., principally salvage and larval smelt monitoring at the south Delta export facilities), as well as additional monitoring of the NDD (principally entrainment and impingement monitoring). Entrainment monitoring at the NDD would consist of sampling entrained fish behind the fish screens with a fyke net (see Table 3.4-5 in Chapter 3); impingement monitoring methods are not specified at this time, but on the basis of existing monitoring (e.g., Freeport Regional Water Authority intake's fish screen), would be likely to consist of visual observation by diver survey or acoustic imaging camera. Other monitoring activities that are part of the PP would be unlikely to affect spring-run Chinook salmon and are not discussed here. Existing monitoring activities that would inform operations of the PP (e.g., trawl and seines surveys by DFW and USFWS) are not part of the PP. Although monitoring

---

[58] The BAFF was switched on and off every ~25 hours in order to test its effectiveness in deterring migrating juvenile salmonids.

[59] The BAFF pilot studies in 2011 and 2012 blocked the entire entrance to Georgiana Slough (allowing several feet of passage below the barrier), whereas the FFGS pilot study in 2014 had the FFGS slightly upstream of the entrance to Georgiana Slough to deter juvenile salmonids away from the left bank.

activities at restoration sites have not been determined, they are not expected to include in-water work with any potential to harm salmonids.

As discussed in Section 4.3.4.1.3.1.1.1, *Entrainment*, for the NDD, the NDD fish screens would exclude juvenile salmonids from entrainment, so there would be no effect from entrainment monitoring at the NDD. If impingement monitoring were to consist of visual observation by diver survey, there would be minor potential for migrating salmonids occurring immediately adjacent to the fish screens to be startled and leave the immediate area if encountering the divers; there would be no effect if conducting observations with an acoustic imaging camera. At the south Delta export facilities, salvage of juvenile salmonids would occur the same way under NAA and PP. Some juvenile salmonids collected during sampling of salvaged fish would die; however, as shown in Section 4.4.4.1.2.1.1.2, *Impingement, Screen Contact, and Screen Passage Time*, entrainment at the south Delta export facilities is expected to be lower under the PP than NAA, therefore any effects to juvenile salmonids from salvage monitoring would be lower under the PP than NAA. Given that monitoring informs adjustments to operations to protect migrating juvenile salmonids, the ultimate net effect of monitoring would be expected to be positive from a population-level perspective.

4.4.7 Take Analysis

Take estimation for the purposes of the direct effects, cumulative effects, and climate change assessments is based upon the likelihood of physical injury or mortality to individuals of spring-run Chinook salmon. It is not possible to predict the number of individuals that would be subject to such take; in general, that would be a density-dependent phenomenon, e.g., with more fish subject to take in years when a relatively large run passed through the project area. Instead, the risk of take is assessed through proxies such as the area of habitat affected, the duration of impact pile driving, or the probability of a contaminant release. Each foregoing section of the take analysis has identified the mechanisms by which take could occur and the probability that take would occur. If that probability is substantial, so that some individuals are likely to suffer mortality, then factors influencing the magnitude of take have been detailed, including take minimization measures (more fully described in Chapter 5 *Mitigation*), as well as the take proxies mentioned above. Mitigation is described (in Chapter 5 *Mitigation*) that is proportionate to the take, so as to show full mitigation for the take. The following take analysis considers mechanisms of take for which authorization is needed (such as, conveyance facility construction and operations), as well as mechanisms of take for which authorization is not here requested (such as, maintenance activities or construction of mitigation sites) or is not needed (such as, CVP operations, cumulative effects, or climate change), because all such mechanisms are considered in determining whether the PP is likely to jeopardize spring-run Chinook salmon.

Upstream Take

Potential take of spring-run Chinook salmon by the PP that occurs upstream of the Delta is not evaluated in this Take Analysis because all such take is attributable to the operation of facilities that: 1) are federally owned and operated or 2) in the case of the Oroville Complex, is evaluated in a separate and ongoing NMFS consultation related to FERC licensing. Effects of the operations of Shasta Dam, which is under USBR jurisdiction, on spring-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento River are analyzed in the Effects Analysis in Section 4.3.4.2, *Upstream*

Hydrologic Changes. Effects of Folsom Dam, which is also under USBR jurisdiction, are not evaluated in this application because spring-run Chinook salmon do not occur in the American River. All construction related activities of the PP will occur in the Delta.

4.4.7.1 Delta Take

A full analysis of potential take of spring-run Chinook salmon by the PP that occurs in the Delta is included in following sections of the Effects Analysis: Section 4.4.2 *Effects of Water Facility Construction,* Section 4.4.3, *Effects of Water Facility Maintenance* and Section 4.4.4, *Effects of Water Facility Operations.* A summary of the results of those analyses is provided below.

4.4.7.1.1 Effects of Water Facility Construction

The PP facilities where construction has the greatest potential to result in take of Chinook salmon include the NDDs, the temporary barge landings, the Head of Old River gate, and the Clifton Court Forebay modifications. Spring-run Chinook salmon from the Sacramento River basin are rarely present in the vicinity of the HOR gate, so construction of this facility would mostly be expected to have potential to result in take of spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin. Construction activities will include cofferdam installation, levee clearing and grading[60], riprap placement, dredging, and barge operations and may cause turbidity and sedimentation, contaminant spills, underwater noise, fish stranding, direct contact with construction equipment, and loss or alteration of habitat. A detailed discussion of underwater noise effects and mitigation measures is given in Section 4.4.2.2.4 *Underwater Noise*.

Take associated with construction activities will be minimized by restricting construction to in-water work windows when few spring-run Chinook salmon are present in the Delta. The work windows differ somewhat for the different facilities, with a window of August 1 to October 31 for the NDDs and the barge landings, a window of July 1 to November 30 for the CCF modifications, and a window of August 1 to November 30 for the HOR gate. All life stages of spring-run Chinook salmon are largely absent from the Delta during these periods; the exception would be yearling spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin (assuming that the same life history is expressed and has similar to the Sacramento River basin), which could occur near the HOR gate towards the end of the construction period.

In addition to restricting construction to periods when spring-run Chinook salmon are largely absent from the Delta, take associated with the construction activities will be minimized by using the take minimization measures specified in Section 4.3.2 *Effects of Water Facility Construction*: AMM1 *Worker Awareness Training;* AMM2 *Construction Best Management Practices and Monitoring;* AMM3 *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP);* AMM4 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;* AMM5 *Spill Prevention, Containment, and Countermeasure Plan;* AMM6 *Disposal and Reuse of Spoils, Reusable Tunnel Material, and Dredged Material;* AMM7 *Barge Operations Plan;* and AMM14 *Hazardous Material Management* (Appendix 3.F *General Avoidance and Minimization Measures*).

---

[60] See Permit Resolution Log item #32 for further information on this point.

Expected effects on spring-run Chinook salmon habitat include both temporary and permanent effects. Construction of the NDDs, for instance, is expected to impact 26.7 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat and 1.02 and 0.42 miles of channel margin habitat lost to construction and operations, respectively. Of this 6.6 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat will be permanently lost (Table 5.4-1 in Chapter 5 *Take Minimization and Mitigation Measures*). Much of the habitat affected, especially at the barge landing, HOR gate, and CCF locations, is currently in a degraded condition, so alteration and loss of this habitat is expected to have little effect on the habitat's potential for food production, as related to growth of the fish. However, the creation of new predator habitat at the facilities is expected to lead to an increase in predation mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon juveniles.

Take resulting from construction activities and from habitat loss and alteration will be mitigated by tidal wetland and channel margin habitat restoration at a 3:1 mitigation ratio as described in Section 5.4.0.3 *Spatial Extent, Location, and Design of Restoration for Fish Species.*

Overall, the impact of take on spring-run Chinook salmon resulting from the construction activities will not be substantial because of the work windows used to avoid periods of spring-run presence in the Delta, the many take minimization measures that will be implemented, and habitat restoration to offset losses of suitable habitat. This low level of take would be mitigated fully by habitat restoration in the form of tidal wetland and channel margin habitat restoration, performed at a mitigation ratio of 3:1.

4.4.7.1.2 Effects of Water Facility Maintenance

Regular and unscheduled maintenance will be needed for each of the four principal PP facilities. The maintenance activities with the most potential to result in take of spring-run Chinook salmon are dredging and levee maintenance. These activities will be scheduled for the same work windows as those used for construction. Potential adverse effects will be further minimized by implementing a number of construction and maintenance take minimization measures to limit the extent and duration of activities. With implementation of the work windows and take minimization measures, take resulting from water facility maintenance activities is expected to be negligible.

4.4.7.1.3 Effects of Water Facility Operations in the Delta

Potential take of spring-run Chinook salmon resulting from effects of the PP is discussed in this section, with effects divided into near-field and far-field effects. Near-field effects are those occurring close to an operations facility, e.g., predation at the NDD intake screens or CCF. Far-field effects are those occurring over a broader area, e.g., effects on through-Delta survival caused by reduced river flow downstream of the NDD.

4.4.7.1.3.1 Near-field Effects

North Delta Diversions. The fish screens on the NDDs are expected to excude most salmonids, resulting in neglible take by entrainment. The potential for impingement is uncertain and will be addressed with monitoring and targeted studies following construction of the intakes. There is potential for predation of juvenile salmonids along the NDDs, which would constitute take. Implementation of localized reduction of predatory fishes near the intakes as part of adaptive management could reduce the potential for predation, although the effectiveness of this measure is uncertain. Operational effects of the PP will be monitored for North Delta intake reach salmonid survivorship (see Table 6.2 in Chapter 6 *Monitoring Plan*) to assess compliance with the performance standard (i.e., to maintain listed juvenile salmonid survival rates through the reach containing the NDD [0.25 mile upstream of the upstream-most intake to 0.25 mile downstream of the downstream-most intake] of 95% or more of the existing survival rate in this reach).

South Delta Exports. Entrainment loss at the south Delta export facilities will be reduced under PP operations in all water year types for spring-run Chinook salmon. The reduction will be substantial in wet years, as a result of much lower south Delta export pumping facilitated by operation of the NDD, and will be smaller in critical water years. Lower south Delta exports will also result in less impingement injury and mortality and lower predation mortality in CCF and other parts of the pumping facilities.

Head of Old River Gate. As described in Section 4.4.4.1.1.5 *Exposure to Head of Old River Gate Operations*, spring-run Chinook salmon from the San Joaquin River basin would be expected to be exposed to near-field effects of HOR gate operations. As discussed in Section 4.4.4.1.2.1.3 *Head of Old River Gate*, take could occur in the form of near-field predation and effects on upstream passage. For juveniles, the far-field benefits of less entry into the interior Delta (i.e., into Old River) and greater flow remaining in the main stem San Joaquin River could offset near-field predation effects (although this is uncertain; see Section 4.4.4.1.2.1.3 *Head of Old River Gate*). Provision of a fish passage structure in the HOR gate would minimize the potential for take of upstream migrating adults by passage delay.

Delta Cross Channel. DCC gate operations have the potential to delay upstream migration to the Sacramento River of adult salmonids from the Mokelumne River system. However, the PP is expected to result in little to no difference in the number of days that the DCC gates are closed, and adult salmonids that are migrating to the Sacramento River have the ability to drop back and swim around the DCC gates, so DCC operations under the PP are expected to result in no change in the level of take of spring-run Chinook salmon. Juvenile migrants entering the Delta at this time would also be more susceptible to entry into the low-survival interior Delta; such effects are captured in the analysis based on the DPM.

Suisun Marsh Facilities. Operations of the Suisun March Salinity Control Gates will change little with the PP, so no change in take level of spring-run Chinook salmon is expected.

Other Facilities and Programs. The Clifton Court Forebay Aquatic Weed Control Program uses copper-based herbicides in CCF, which could result in injury and mortality of spring-run Chinook salmon if they were exposed. However, the herbicide is used during July and August, when spring-run Chinook salmon are rarely present in CCF. Mechanical removal of aquatic weeds may overlap with the occurrence of these fish in CCF, potentially resulting in injury, but any take resulting from mechanical weed removal will be offset by a reduction in abundance of predatory fishes that inhabit the weed mats. The removal of weeds also reduces mortality resulting from smothering of the fish during salvage operations, thereby further offsetting the take.

4.4.7.1.3.2 Far-field Effects

Channel Velocity Effects. Exports by the NDD will result in reduced flow velocities in the Sacramento River and other north Delta channels downstream of the NDD, particularly during wetter water years. Potentially adverse effects on spring-run Chinook salmon from reduced flow velocity include delayed migration of emigrating juveniles, leading to greater risk of predation and other sources of mortality and injury, and greater risk of entry into migration routes with greater mortality, such as Georgiana Slough. Interior Delta channel velocity (e.g., i.e., channels off the mainstem San Joaquin River such as Old River downstream of the south Delta export facilities) is expected to increase with the PP, resulting in somewhat more positive and less frequently negative flow (see Table 4.4-11, for example). This will reduce mortality of emigrating spring-run juveniles diverted into the central and south Delta. Because spring-run juveniles migrate primarily through the north Delta, the reduction in flow velocities downstream of the NDD is expected to have a greater impact on the species than the increase of flow velocities in the central and south Delta, resulting on balance in some incidental take. This assessment of the potential for take, as well as the assessments for other far-field effects, does not account for the results of the coordinated monitoring and research under the Collaborative Science and Adaptive Management Program, including real-time operations that will be performed to limit potential operational effects while maximizing water supplies, by assessing flow conditions in the context of fish presence, e.g., by using monitoring data from at or upstream of the Delta periphery.

Entry into Interior Delta. The channel junctions with the most potential to affect entry of spring-run juveniles into the interior Delta are the Georgiana Slough and DCC junctions and the junctions of Sutter and Steamboat Sloughs with the Sacramento River. The proportion of flow entering a junction generally is a reasonable proxy for the proportion of fish entering the junction (Cavallo et al. 2015). Risk of entry into the interior Delta, where mortality rates of juvenile salmonids are relatively high, is expected to increase with the PP because reduced net flow downstream of the NDD would result in greater tidal influence and, therefore, more reversing flood flow entering the Sacramento River junction with the DCC and Georgiana Slough. Installation of the proposed nonphysical barrier at the Georgiana Slough junction is expected to reduce the take level, although results of nonphysical barrier trials, while promising, are uncertain because of factors such as being based on larger late fall-run Chinook salmon smolts (see Section 4.4.4.1.2.2.1.4 *Nonphysical Fish Barrier at Georgiana Slough*). Entry of juveniles from the Sacramento River to Sutter and Steamboat Sloughs is expected to reduce take because survival in the sloughs is generally relatively high and the sloughs allow the juveniles to bypass the junction with Georgiana Slough (Perry et al. 2010; 2012). The PP is expected to resulted little change in flow entering these sloughs, except during winter and early spring months when the DCC gates would be closed, therby eliminating any risk of juveniles entering the interior Delta through the DCC channel.

Through Delta Survival. Several different analytical tools were used to estimate through-Delta survival of emigrating spring-run Chinook salmon juveniles (Section 4.4.4.1.2.2.1.6 *Delta Passage Mode*l, Section 4.4.4.1.2.2.1.7 *Analysis Based on Newman (2003)*, Section 4.4.4.1.3.2.1.8 *Analysis Based on Perry (2010)*). For the PP, the Delta Passage Model predicted 1% to 4% lower survival of spring-run Chinook salmon smolts (the model does not include effects on Chinook salmon fry, for which an analysis of effects on rearing habitat as channel margin benches; see further discussion below). The model predicted the largest reduction for dry water year types. The analysis based on Newman (2003) predicted that the PP would have little effect on total through-Delta survival. The analysis based on Perry (2010) predicted slightly greater reduction of total survival with the PP (1% to 3% lower, relative scale). As with the Passage Model, the greatest reduction in survival was for dry water year types. Overall, the analyses of through-Delta survival predicted that the PP would result in little change or a small reduction in survival of spring-run Chinook salmon.

Channel Margin Habitat Suitability. Channel margins in the Sacramento River and in Sutter and Steamboat Sloughs provide critical rearing and downstream migration holding habitat for spring-run juveniles. This habitat has been restored in recent years with the installation of wetland and riparian benches (Sections 4.4.4.1.2.2.2, *Habitat Suitability*). The habitat value of wetland and riparian benches along channel margins in the Delta is strongly affected by water level, which in turn depends on levels of flow and, depending on location, tidal influences. An analysis using an inundation index (see ICF International [2016], Appendix 5.D *Quantitative Methods and Detailed Results for Effects Analysis of Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Steelhead, Green Sturgeon, and Killer Whale,* Section 5.D.1.3.1, *Bench Inundation* for details) showed that the wetland benches, which are at lower elevations than the riparian benches, would be little affected by flow changes resulting from the PP. For riparian benches, however, there were important reductions in inundation index values with the PP in the spring of wetter years (Table 4.4-18 *Mean Bench Inundation Index by Location, Bench Type, Water Year Type, and Season, for NAA and PP*). Large reductions in the riparian bench inundation index also occurred in drier years, but this effect was discounted because the riparian benches would have little habitat value in such years under either PP or baseline conditions. Channel margin enhancement would be implemented as mitigation to offset the reduced habitat value of riparian benches, so take of spring-run Chinook salmon associated with this reduction would be fully mitigated (Section 4.4.4.1.2.2.2.3, *Channel Margin Enhancement*).

Water Temperature. DSM2-QUAL modeling indicates that implementation of the PP will cause slight increases in water temperatures in the Delta; the magnitude of the change, however, is too small or at the wrong time of year to affect spring-run Chinook salmon.

Selenium. Reductions in south Delta exports under the PP will result in higher proportions of San Joaquin River water in the Delta and increased concentrations of selenium. However, analyses indicate that these increases would have no effect on selenium uptake by spring-run Chinook salmon.

Olfactory Cues for Upstream Migration. The proportion of water at Collinsville (the Sacramento - San Joaquin River confluence) that originates from the Sacramento River, as estimated using DSM2-QUAL fingerprinting analysis, would be consistently lower under the PP than under baseline conditions (Table 4.4-19 *Mean Percentage of Water at Collinsville Originating in the Sacramento River, from DSM2-QUAL Fingerprinting*), potentially reducing olfactory cues needed for successful upstream migration of spring-run Chinook salmon. This reduction results from the reduced flow downstream of the NDD (due to NDD exports) and increased flow in the lower San Joaquin River (due to reduced south Delta exports). However, during the months when spring-run Chinook salmon adults migrate through the Delta (November through June; Table 4.4-6 *Temporal Distribution of Spring-Run Chinook Salmon within the Delta*), Sacramento River water would form the major portion of the water in the confluence area. In any case, the reductions in percentage of Sacramento River water resulting from the PP were consistently less than 20% (absolute value), which, in experiments with adult sockeye salmon, was the lowest level of dilution of homestream water with water from a different stream that the sockeye salmon first detected and behaviorally responded to (Fretwell 1989). Therefore, it is concluded that there would be little effect from changes in olfactory cues for upstream migrating adult spring-run Chinook salmon, resulting in no take.

Microcystis. *Microcystis* is a toxic blue-green alga known to have negative effects on the aquatic foodweb of the Delta (Brooks et al. 2012). Streamflow, which determines residence time, is probably important in determining which Delta channels experience *Microcystis* blooms because the algal cells require time to grow into blooms. It is uncertain if the PP would, on balance, change residence time in channels used by spring-run Chinook salmon. In any case, however, *Microcystic* blooms primarily occur from June to October, when spring-run Chinook salmon are largely absent from the Delta, so the blooms are not expected to affect these fish.

4.4.8 Analysis of Potential for Jeopardy

The capability of spring-run Chinook salmon to survive and reproduce is based on the availability of suitable aquatic habitat and supportable levels mortality from natural and human-induced sources. Information on population trends and known threats to the species are presented by ICF International (2016, Appendix 4.A *Status of the Species and Critical Habitat Accounts*, Section 4.A.2 *Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Spring-Run (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*)*). This was used to develop the cumulative effects and jeopardy analyses provided below.

4.4.8.1 Cumulative Effects

The projects and programs that have been considered as part of the cumulative analysis have been drawn primarily from BDCP Draft EIR/EIS Appendix 3D *Defining Existing Conditions, No Action Alternative, No Project Alternative, and Cumulative Impact Conditions* (California Department of Water Resources, U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and National Marine Fisheries Service 2013). Those projects and programs that could impact listed fishes in the project area are presented in Appendix 4.C *Information to Support Cumulative Effects Analysis*. The list of past, present and reasonably foreseeable future projects and programs has been evaluated to determine which of these activities may affect spring-run Chinook salmon. Most of the local, state and federal land use and land management programs that are affecting or will affect the project area are designed to manage the resources of the area for multiple uses, including agriculture, recreation, fish and wildlife habitat, flood protection and water management.

4.4.8.1.1 Habitat Restoration and Enhancement

Many of these projects and programs have a conservation or restoration component and thus could ultimately be beneficial to spring-run Chinook salmon. Principal among these is California EcoRestore, which was launched by CDFW in 2015 and includes advancing (i.e., completing, or breaking ground on) 30,000 acres of fish and wildlife habitat projects by 2020; of this, 25,000 acres is associated with existing mandates for habitat restoration, pursuant to federal biological opinions, and 5,000 acres is habitat enhancements funded by Proposition 1 grants to local governments, non-profit organizations, and other entities. California EcoRestore has the potential to increase available habitat for occupancy by spring-run Chinook salmon, as well as enhancing the lower levels of the food web by restoring tidal natural community functioning.

The California Water Action Plan 2016 Update describes other state and federal programs in the early stages of implementation that are likely to benefit spring-run Chinook salmon, including the San Joaquin River Restoration Program to restore spring-run Chinook salmon to the San Joaquin River Basin; a program to repair and install fish screens at diversions along the migration routes of juvenile Chinook salmon and steelhead in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River Basins, including the Delta; and a plan to investigate the feasibility of providing salmon and steelhead access to their historical spawning and rearing habitat upstream of major reservoirs, including Lake Shasta. The upstream habitat access plan, as well as a number of other actions that are expected to benefit listed anadromous fish in the Central Valley, are mandated by the RPA in the NMFS (2009) Biological Opinion for Long-term Operations of the Central Valley Project and State Water Project, and listed in the NMFS (2014) *Recovery Plan for Sacramento River winter-run Chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run Chinook salmon, and California Central Valley steelhead*. Many of the RPA actions in the NMFS Biological Opinion that target spring-run Chinook salmon have already been implemented or implementation has begun and a number of the actions are incorporated into the PP, as shown in Table 3.1-1.

4.4.8.1.2 Water Diversions

Water diversions for irrigated agriculture, municipal and industrial use, and managed wetlands are found throughout the Central Valley. Thousands of small and medium-size water diversions exist along the Sacramento River, San Joaquin River, their tributaries, and the Delta, and many of them remain unscreened. For example, as of 1997, 98.5% of the 3,356 diversions included in a Central Valley database were either unscreened or screened insufficiently to prevent fish entrainment (Herren and Kawasaki 2001). Most of the 370 water diversions operating in Suisun Marsh are unscreened (Herren and Kawasaki 2001).

Depending on the size, location, and season of operation, these unscreened diversions may entrain and kill many life stages of aquatic species, including juvenile winter-run and spring-run Chinook salmon.

4.4.8.1.3 Agricultural Practices

Agricultural practices occur throughout the Central Valley adjacent to waterways used by Chinook salmon. These activities, including burning or removal of vegetation on levees and livestock grazing, may negatively affect riparian and wetland habitats through upland modifications that lead to increased siltation or reductions in water flow in stream channels flowing into the project area, including the Sacramento River and Delta. Agricultural practices may also introduce nitrogen, ammonia, and other nutrients into the watershed, which then flow into receiving waters. Stormwater and irrigation discharges related to both agricultural and urban activities contain numerous pesticides and herbicides that may negatively affect salmonid reproductive success and survival rates (Dubrovsky et al. 1998; Kuivila and Moon 2004; Scholz et al.2012). Discharges occurring outside the Project Area but that flow downstream into the Project Area also contribute to cumulative effects.

4.4.8.1.4 Increased Urbanization

The Delta Protection Commission's Economic Sustainability Plan for the Delta reported a growth rate of about 54% within the statutory Delta between 1990 and 2010, as compared with a 25% growth rate statewide during the same period (Delta Protection Commission 2012). The report also indicated that population growth had occurred in the Secondary Zone of the Delta but not in the Primary Zone and that population in the central and south Delta areas had decreased since 2000. Growth projections through 2050 indicate that all counties overlapping the Delta are projected to grow at a faster rate than the state as a whole. Total population in the Delta counties is projected to grow at an average annual rate of 1.2% through 2030 (California Department of Finance 2012). Table 4.4-37 illustrates past, current, and projected population trends for the five counties in the Delta. As of 2010, the combined population of the Delta counties was approximately 3.8 million. Sacramento County contributed 37.7% of the population of the Delta counties, and Contra Costa County contributed 27.8%. Yolo County had the smallest population (200,849 or 5.3%) of all the Delta counties.

Table 4.4-37. Delta Counties and California Population, 2000–2050

Area	2000 Population (millions)	2010 Population (millions)	2020 Projected Population (millions)	2025 Projected Population (millions)	2050 Projected Population (millions)
Contra Costa County	0.95	1.05	1.16	1.21	1.50
Sacramento County	1.23	1.42	1.56	1.64	2.09
San Joaquin County	0.57	0.69	0.80	0.86	1.29
Solano County	0.40	0.41	0.45	0.47	0.57
Yolo County	0.17	0.20	0.22	0.24	0.30
Delta Counties	3.32	3.77	4.18	4.42	5.75
California	34.00	37.31	40.82	42.72	51.01
Source: California Department of Finance 2012.					

Table 4.4-38 presents more detailed information on populations of individual communities in the Delta. Growth rates from 2000 to 2010 were generally higher in the smaller communities than in larger cities such as Antioch and Sacramento. This is likely a result of these communities having lower property and housing prices, and their growth being less constrained by geography and adjacent communities.

Table 4.4-38. Delta Communities Population, 2000 and 2010

Community	2000	2010	Average Annual Growth Rate 2000–2010
Contra Costa County			
Incorporated Cities and Towns			
Antioch	90,532	102,372	1.3%
Brentwood	23,302	51,481	12.1%
Oakley	25,619	35,432	3.8%
Pittsburg	56,769	63,264	1.1%
Small or Unincorporated Communities			
Bay Point	21,415	21,349	-0.0%
Bethel Island	2,252	2,137	-0.5%
Byron	884	1,277	4.5%
Discovery Bay	8,847	13,352	5.1%
Knightsen	861	1,568	8.2%
Sacramento County			
Incorporated Cities and Towns			
Isleton	828	804	-0.3%
Sacramento	407,018	466,488	1.5%
Small or Unincorporated Communities			
Courtland	632	355	-4.4%
Freeport and Hood	467	309[a]	-3.4%
Locke	1,003	Not available	—
Walnut Grove	646	1,542	13.9%
San Joaquin County			
Incorporated Cities and Towns			
Lathrop	10,445	18,023	7.3%
Stockton	243,771	291,707	2.0%
Tracy	56,929	82,922	4.6%
Small or Unincorporated Communities			
Terminous	1,576	381	-7.6%
Solano County			
Incorporated Cities and Towns			
Rio Vista	4,571	7,360	6.1%
Yolo County			
Incorporated Cities and Towns			
West Sacramento	31,615	48,744	5.4%
Small or Unincorporated Communities			
Clarksburg	681	418	-3.9%

Sources: U.S. Census Bureau 2000; U.S. Census Bureau 2011.

[a] Freeport had a population of 38; Hood had a population of 271.

Increases in urbanization and housing developments can impact habitat by altering watershed characteristics, and changing both water use and stormwater runoff patterns. Increased growth will place additional burdens on resource allocations, including natural gas, electricity, and water, as well as on infrastructure such as wastewater sanitation plants, roads and highways, and public utilities.

Adverse effects on Chinook and their habitat may result from urbanization-induced point and non-point source chemical contaminant discharges within the project area. These contaminants include, but are not limited to ammonia and free ammonium ion, numerous pesticides and herbicides, and oil and gasoline product discharges. Increased urbanization also is expected to result in increased recreational activities in the region. Among the activities expected to increase in volume and frequency are recreational boating and fishing. Boating activities may result in increased wave action and propeller wash in waterways. This potentially could degrade riparian and wetland habitat by eroding channel banks and mid-channel islands. In shallow water, wakes and propeller wash can also churn up benthic sediments thereby potentially resuspending contaminated sediments and degrading areas of submerged vegetation. This, in turn, can reduce habitat quality for the invertebrate forage base required for the survival of juvenile salmonids moving through the system. Increased recreational boat operation in the Delta may also result in more contamination from the operation of gasoline and diesel powered engines on watercraft entering the water bodies of the Delta.

4.4.8.1.5 Wastewater Treatment Plants

Two wastewater treatment plants (one located on the Sacramento River near Freeport and the other on the San Joaquin River near Stockton) have received special attention because of their discharge of ammonia. The Sacramento Regional Wastewater Treatment Plan (SRWTP), in order to comply with Order no. R5-2013-0124, has begun implementing compliance measures to reduce ammonia discharges. Construction of treatment facilities for three of the major projects required for ammonia and nitrate reduction was initiated in March 2015 (Sacramento Regional County Sanitation District 2015) Order no. R5-2013-0124, which was modified on October 4, 2013, by the Central Valley Regional Water Quality Control Board–imposed new interim and final effluent limitations, which must be met by May 11, 2021 (Central Valley Regional Water Quality Control Board 2013). By May 11, 2021, the SRWTP must reach a final effluent limit of 2.0 milligrams per liter (mg/L) per day from April to October, and 3.3 mg/L per day from November to March (Central Valley Regional Water Quality Control Board 2013). However, the treatment plant is currently releasing several tons of ammonia in the Sacramento River each day.

EPA published revised national recommended ambient water quality criteria for the protection of aquatic life from the toxic effects of ammonia in 2013.

Few studies have been conducted to assess the effects of ammonia on Chinook salmon. However, studies of ammonia effects on various fish species have shown numerous effects including membrane transport deficiencies, increases in energy consumption, immune system impairments, gill lamellae fusions deformities, liver hydropic degenerations, glomerular nephritis, and nervous and muscular system effects leading to mortality (Connon et al. 2011). Additionally, a study of coho salmon and rainbow trout exposed to ammonia showed a decrease in swimming performance due to metabolic challenges and depolarization of white muscle (Wicks et al. 2002).

4.4.8.1.6 Activities within the Nearshore Pacific Ocean

Future tribal, state and local government actions will likely take the form of legislation, administrative rules, or policy initiatives and fishing permits. Activities are primarily those conducted under state, tribal or Federal government management. These actions may include changes in ocean management policy and increases and decreases in the types of activities that currently occur, including changes in the types of fishing activities, resource extraction, or designation of marine protected areas, any of which could impact spring-run Chinook salmon or their habitat. Government actions are subject to political, legislative and fiscal uncertainties. These realities, added to the geographic scope, which encompasses several government entities exercising various authorities, and the changing economies of the region, make analysis of cumulative effects speculative.

4.4.8.1.7 Other Activities

Other future actions within the project area that are likely to occur and may adversely affect Chinook salmon and their habitat include: the dumping of domestic and industrial garbage that decreases water quality; oil and gas development and production that may affect aquatic habitat and may introduce pollutants into the water; and state or local levee maintenance that may also adversely affect habitat and interfere with natural, long term habitat-maintaining processes.

Power plant cooling system operations can also affect aquatic habitat. Contra Costa Power Plant, which was owned and operated by NRG Delta, LLC, was retired in 2013 and replaced with the new natural gas power plant, Marsh Landing Generating Station. The Pittsburg Generating Station (PGS) remains in operation and consisted of seven once-through cooling systems, four of which have been retired, one of which is in the process of being retired, and two of which remain in operation. The once-through cooling system intake process can cause impingement and entrainment of marine animals, kill organisms from all levels of the food chain, and disrupt the normal processes of the ecosystem. Additionally, the plant can discharge heated water at temperatures as high as 100°F into the project area. This influx of hot water can adversely affect the ecosystem and the animals living in it (San Francisco Baykeeper 2010).

On May 4, 2010, the SWRCB adopted a Statewide Policy on the Use of Coastal and Estuarine Water for Power Plant Cooling under Resolution No. 2010–0020, which required existing cooling water intake structures to reflect the best technology available for minimizing adverse environmental impacts (State Water Resources Control Board 2010). The PGS was required to submit an implementation plan to comply with this policy by December 31, 2017. The PGS chose to comply by retrofitting two of the existing units and retiring one unit. The retrofit and retirement of these units is underway (GenOn 2011).

4.4.8.2 Climate Change

Climate change and associated water temperature and streamflow effects have potential to negatively affect spring-run Chinook salmon. These runs are vulnerable because their egg and alevin life stages coincide with the warmest months of the year.

Some global climate models (GCMs) predict that summer water temperatures in the Sacramento River and its tributaries may increase by 3°C to 6°C by the end of this century, which would result in a greater frequency in exceedance of lethal water temperature thresholds (Dimacali 2013; Thompson et al. 2012; Cloern et al. 2011; PRBO Conservation Science 2011; Yates et al. 2008). The GCMs also predict potential reductions in streamflow by the end of the century (Thompson et al. 2012; Cloern et al. 2011), although are subject to moderation by reservoir releases (PRBO Conservation Science 2011; Yates et al. 2008). Predicted reductions in reservoir cold water pool storage volume would diminish the capacity of managers to counter water temperature increases (Dimacali 2013; Cloern et al. 2011; Yates et al. 2008).

GCMs consistently predict much smaller effects on water temperature and streamflow over the first several decades of this century, which include the time period of the PP starting operations (i.e., up to the completion of construction in 2029). Predictions for water temperature increases and streamflow reduction by about 2030 are generally small (<1.5°C and <1%, respectively) (Brown et al. 2016; Dimacali 2013; Cloern et al. 2011). Cloern et al. (2011), using 16°C as the lethal water temperature threshold for winter-run Chinook salmon spawning, egg incubation, and alevin life stage in the upper Sacramento River, predicted an increase of up to 22 percent in the frequency of months with exceedances of the threshold for the end of the century, but about a one percent increase for the decade from 2025 to 2035. Similarly, Thompson et al. (2012), in a study of climate change effects on spring-run Chinook salmon in Butte Creek, predicted large reductions in survival of adults during the summer holding period during the second half of this century, but little change in reduction before about 2030. However, modeling undertaken for the BDCP/CWF EIR/S does suggests potential effects of climate change in relation to existing climate; see Impact AQUA-58. These impacts would occur regardless of the PP, for the effects are not evident when compared to the NAA.

4.4.8.3 Potential to Jeopardize Continued Existence of the Species

The following discussion considers the potential for the PP, when considered in conjunction with cumulative effects and the effects of climate change, to jeopardize the continued existence of Central Valley spring-run Chinook salmon.

Level of Take – Incidental take of Central Valley spring-run Chinook salmon will occur as a result of implementing the PP, as described in Section 4.4.7, *Take Analysis* of this application. Due to the inherent biological characteristics of spring-run Chinook salmon, the large size and variability of the river systems, and the complex interactions of many of the effects of the PP facilities and their operations, it is generally not possible to quantify numbers of individuals that may be taken incidental to the many components of the proposed project. However, the overall potential for take is low. The covered activities, facilities, and changes in operations associated with the new facilities have a low likelihood of resulting in persistent changes in mortality of individuals. Habitat losses would be relatively small—~50 acres as a result of construction and 0.42 acres as a result of operational effects on channel margin benches (Table 5.4-1 in Chapter 5 *Take Minimization and Mitigation Measures*)—and are not expected to have a population-level effect.

Take Minimization Measures – The proposed take minimization measures described in Section 5.3.3 *Central Valley Spring-Run Chinook Salmon* of Chapter 5 *Take Minimization and*

Mitigation Measures greatly reduce the potential for mortality of individuals, which makes it unlikely that activities will affect reproductive rates of the population or survivorship of individuals.

As described in Section 4.2.7.2.2 *Effect of Take Minimization Measures* for longfin smelt, DWR and DFW have collaborated to propose spring Delta outflow criteria to fully mitigate potential adverse effects to longfin smelt (see also Section 5.3.2 *Longfin Smelt* in Chapter 5 *Take Minimization and Mitigation Measures*). This has been achieved through curtailment of exports at certain times. As such there would be essentially no difference in upstream operations between PP with longfin smelt spring outflow criteria and PP without such criteria for which the detailed analysis of upstream effects was presented in Section 4.3.4.2 *Upstream Hydrologic Changes*. This is reflected in little difference in May and September Shasta and Oroville reservoir storage between these scenarios (Tables 4.D-1 and 4.D-2 in Appendix 4.D *Comparison of Key Hydrological Variables for Proposed Project with Longfin Smelt Spring Outflow Criteria to No Action Alternative and Proposed Project Scenarios*). As described for winter-run Chinook salmon in Section 4.3.8.3 *Potential to Jeopardize Continued Existence of the Species*, within the Delta, reduction in south Delta exports to achieve longfin smelt spring outflow criteria would result in more positive Old and Middle River flows in March of below normal and dry water years in particular (Table 4.D-5 in Appendix 4.D), possibly providing a benefit to spring-run Chinook salmon in terms of improved south Delta hydrodynamics. Generally, however, the effects would be expected to be similar to those described in Section 4.3.4.1 *Proposed Delta Exports and Related Hydrodynamics*. The upper limit of the longfin smelt spring outflow criteria at 44,500 cfs resulted in CalSim modeling giving somewhat greater north Delta exports in wet years for the PP with longfin smelt spring outflow criteria compared to PP, with the result that mean April flows in wet years below the NDD were around 1,600 cfs (5%) less under PP with longfin smelt spring outflow criteria compared to PP and therefore 12% less than NAA (Table 4.D-4 in Appendix 4.D). Given the very high flows at which the longfin smelt outflow criteria would level off, the leveling-off in through-Delta survival observed at high flows, and the previously described take minimization measures of operational constraints, real-time operations, and Georgiana Slough nonphysical fish barrier, no additional effects are expected.

Mitigation – Mitigation is expected to fully offset habitat loss and any loss of individuals because high-quality, larger-scale, intact habitat will be acquired, enhanced, and managed in perpetuity; see Section 5.3.3 *Central Valley Spring-Run Chinook Salmon* of Chapter 5 *Take Minimization and Mitigation Measures*. Thus the PP fully mitigates for the potential incidental take of spring-run Chinook salmon.

While spring-run Chinook salmon populations are in decline (ICF International 2016, Appendix 4.A *Status of the Species and Critical Habitat Accounts*, Section 4.A.2 *Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Spring-Run (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*))*, the PP's activities will not exacerbate this decline and are not expected to result in significant losses of individuals of the species or its habitat. The applicant's take minimization measures will ensure impacts on habitat and individuals are minimized, and the mitigation will ensure an appropriate extent of habitat is protected.

The primary long-term threat to spring-run Chinook salmon is increased water temperature associated with global climate change. Other major threats include elevated water temperatures in spawning, rearing, and migration habitats, persistent reductions in streamflow, degraded habitat in the Sacramento River and the Delta, exposure to toxins, predation and competition from exotic species, overfishing, reduced genetic diversity and integrity, and entrainment in large and small diversions (see discussion in ICF International 2016, Appendix 4.A *Status of the Species and Critical Habitat Accounts*, Section 4.A.2 *Chinook Salmon, Central Valley Spring-Run (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*)*).

The PP will not threaten the survival of spring-run Chinook salmon because the covered activities will not result in significant losses of individuals of the species or habitat. For both ESUs, fitness of individuals, including reproductive success during spawning, survival during embryo incubation, survival and growth during fry and juvenile rearing, survival and growth during immigration and emigration, and expression of life history as a result of spawning, rearing, and migration habitat availability, would be largely similar between the PP and baseline conditions. There are a few instances in which there would be small effects to individuals resulting from changes in reservoir operations under the PP, as summarized in the following paragraph.

Upstream of the Delta, spring-run Chinook salmon may experience small reductions in survival of egg, alevin, fry, and juvenile life stages due to increased water temperatures in the Sacramento River during August and September and increased risk of redd dewatering for June and August cohorts. Spring-run Chinook salmon may experience a reduced expression of life history diversity due to reductions in rearing Weighted Usable Area in June, if population numbers were high enough that habitat was limiting[61], reduced survival and growth of juveniles and adults due to reduced instream flows during juvenile emigration in November and adult immigration in September. If real-time cold water pool management efforts under the PP use similar decision-making tools and criteria as currently utilized (i.e., baseline conditions), then releases from Shasta Lake under the PP would actually be sustained at similar levels as the baseline during September. Thus, it is likely that the PP would not experience higher water temperatures relative to the baseline during September, as was modeled in this analysis.

In the Delta, the PP is expected to result in slightly reduced survival of spring-run Chinook salmon juveniles in the lower Sacramento River and Sutter and Steamboat Sloughs, and slightly reduced quality of channel margin habitat, as a result of reduced flow downstream of the NDD. However, these effects to some extent would be largely offset by reduced direct and indirect mortality resulting from lower exports at the south Delta export facilities and higher flows in south Delta channels; the remaining take would be avoided, minimized, or mitigated as described above.

Considering the low potential for take relative to these factors, the take minimization measures, and that the loss of habitat will be fully mitigated, the PP will not adversely affect the reproduction and survival of spring-run Chinook salmon, and the issuance of the ITP will not jeopardize the continued existence of the species.

---

[61] Habitat limitation has not been a concern in recent years due to low population size, but it could be in the future if population size was to increase or there was a strong year class. Awareness of the effects to be managed in the best interest of the species is necessary, regardless of variability in population size.

4.4.9 References

AD Consultants. 2014. SalSim. Salmon Simulator As Implemented for the San Joaquin River System. Developed for California Department of Fish and Wildlife. Available: salsim.com. Accessed: October 2, 2015.

Arkoosh, M.R., Casillas, E., Huffman, P., Clemons, E., Evered, J., Stein, J.E. and Varanasi, U., 1998. Increased susceptibility of juvenile Chinook salmon from a contaminated estuary to *Vibrio anguillarum*. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, *127*(3), pp.360-374.

Bell, M. C. 1986. *Fisheries Handbook of Engineering Requirements and Biological Criteria*. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, North Pacific Division, Fish Passage Development and Evaluation Program. Second edition. Portland, OR.

Bell, M. C. 1991. *Fisheries Handbook of Engineering Requirements and Biological Criteria*. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, North Pacific Division, Fish Passage Development and Evaluation Program. Third edition.

Bellas, J., Ekelund, R., Halldórsson, H.P., Berggren, M. and Granmo, Å., 2007. Monitoring of organic compounds and trace metals during a dredging episode in the Göta Älv Estuary (SW Sweden) using caged mussels. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*, *181*(1-4), pp.265-279.

Berg, L. 1982. The effect of exposure to short-term pulses of suspended sediment on the behavior of juvenile salmonids. Pages 177–196 in G. F. Hartman et al. (Eds.), *Proceedings of the Carnation Creek workshop: A Ten-Year Review*. Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo, Canada.

Berg, L., and T. G. Northcote. 1985. Changes in territorial, gill-flaring, and feeding behavior in juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) following short-term pulses of suspended sediment. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 42:1410–1417.

Bisson, P. A., and R. E. Bilby. 1982. Avoidance of Suspended sediment by juvenile coho salmon. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 2(4):371–374.

Bjornn, T. and Reiser, D.W., 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. American Fisheries Society Special Publication, 19:138.

Bocchetti, R., Fattorini, D., Pisanelli, B., Macchia, S., Oliviero, L., Pilato, F., Pellegrini, D. and Regoli, F., 2008. Contaminant accumulation and biomarker responses in caged mussels, *Mytilus galloprovincialis*, to evaluate bioavailability and toxicological effects of remobilized chemicals during dredging and disposal operations in harbour areas. *Aquatic Toxicology*, *89*(4):257-266.

Brandes, P. L., and J. S. McLain. 2001. Juvenile Chinook Salmon abundance, distribution, and survival in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Estuary. Pages 39-138 in R. L. Brown (ed.), *California Department of Fish and Game Fish Bulletin* 179, *Vol. 2. Contributions to the Biology of Central Valley Salmonids*. California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, CA.

Brooks, M., E. Fleishman, L. Brown, P. Lehman, I. Werner, N. Scholz, C. Mitchelmore, J. Lovvorn, M. Johnson, D. Schlenk, S. van Drunick, J. Drever, D. Stoms, A. Parker, and R. Dugdale. 2012. Life histories, salinity zones, and sublethal contributions of contaminants to pelagic fish declines illustrated with a case study of San Francisco Estuary, California, USA. *Estuaries and Coasts* 35(2):603–621.

Brown L. R., L. M. Komoroske, R. W. Wagner, T. Morgan-King, J. T. May, R. E. Connon, and N. A. Fangue. 2016. Ecophysiological metrics forecast habitat compression for an endangered estuarine fish. *PLoS ONE* 11(1): e0146724. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0146724.

Brown, R., S. Greene, P. Coulston, and S. Barrow. 1996. An evaluation of the effectiveness of fish salvage operations at the intake to the California Aqueduct, 1979–1993. Pages 497–518 in J. T. Hollibaugh (ed.), *San Francisco Bay The Ecosystem. Further Investigations into the Natural History of San Francisco Bay and Delta With Reference to the Influence of Man*. Pacific Division of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, San Francisco, CA.

Buchanan, R. A., J. R. Skalski, P. L. Brandes, and A. Fuller. 2013. Route use and survival of juvenile Chinook salmon through the San Joaquin River Delta. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 33(1):216–229.

Buchanan, R., P. Brandes, J. S. Foott, J. Ingram, D. LaPlante, and J. Israel. 2012. *South Delta Chinook Salmon Survival Study*. Compiled and edited by P. Brandes, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Lodi, CA.

Burau, J., A. Blake, and R. Perry. 2007. Sacramento/San Joaquin River Delta regional salmon outmigration study plan: Developing understanding for management and restoration. Available: http://www.science.calwater.ca.gov/pdf/workshops/workshop_outmigration_reg_study_plan_011608.pdf. Accessed: March 27, 2012.

Bureau of Reclamation. 2008. *Biological Assessment on the Continued Long-term Operations of the Central Valley Project and the State Water Project*. Mid-Pacific Region, Sacramento, CA.

California Department of Finance. 2012. *Interim Population Projections for California: State and Counties 2015–2050—July 1, 2015 to 2050 (in 5-year increments)* Sacramento, CA. Available: http://www.dof.ca.gov/research/demographic/reports/projections/p-1/. Accessed: September 27, 2015.

California Department of Fish and Game. 2001. Evaluation of the Effects of Flow Fluctuations on Anadromous Fish Populations in the Lower American River. Stream Evaluation Program Technical Report No. 01-2. Prepared for U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. November 2001.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2013. 1981–2012 Daily Salvage Data for the CVP and SWP pumping facilities. Available: ftp://ftp.delta.dfg.ca.gov/salvage/. Accessed: June 13, 2013.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2014. Salvage Monitoring, Salvage/Export Data. Available at: http://www.dfg.ca.gov/delta/apps/salvage/SalvageExportCalendar.aspx. Accessed: June 16, 2014.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. unpublished data. Spatial Distribution of Spawning Redds in the Sacramento River Based on Aerial Redd Surveys, Winter-Run Chinook Salmon, 2003–2014

California Department of Water Resources (DWR). 2012. *2011 Georgiana Slough Non-Physical Barrier Performance Evaluation Project Report*. California Department of Water Resources, Sacramento, CA.

California Department of Water Resources (DWR). 2013. *Bay Delta Conservation Plan*. Public Draft. November. Sacramento, CA. Prepared by ICF International (ICF 00343.12), Sacramento, CA.

California Department of Water Resources (DWR). 2015a. *An Evaluation of Juvenile Salmonid Routing and Barrier Effectiveness, Predation, and Predatory Fishes at the Head of Old River, 2009–2012*. Prepared by AECOM, ICF International, and Turnpenny Horsfield Associates. April. California Department of Water Resources, Sacramento, CA.

California Department of Water Resources (DWR). 2015b. *Engineering Solutions to Further Reduce Diversion of Emigrating Juvenile Salmonids to the Interior and Southern Delta and Reduce Exposure to CVP and SWP Export Facilities. Phase II — Recommended Solutions Report*. Prepared in Response to the National Marine Fisheries Service 2009 Biological Opinion and Conference Opinion on the Long-Term Operations of the Central Valley Project and State Water Project, Reasonable and Prudent Alternative Action IV.1.3. March. California Department of Water Resources, Sacramento, CA.

California Department of Water Resources, U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and National Marine Fisheries Service. 2013. *Draft Environmental Impact Report/Environmental Impact Statement for the Bay Delta Conservation Plan*. November. (ICF 00674.12.) Prepared by ICF International, Sacramento, CA.

California State Water Resources Control Board. 2010. *Implementation Plans and Immediate and Interim Requirements for the Once-through Cooling Water Policy*. Available: http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/ocean/cwa316/powerplants/pittsburg/docs/pitt_sec13383_2010nov.pdf. Accessed: September 15, 2015.

Cavallo, B., P. Gaskill, J. Melgo, and S. C. Zeug. 2015. Predicting juvenile Chinook Salmon routing in riverine and tidal channels of a freshwater estuary. *Environmental Biology of Fishes*.

Central Valley Regional Water Quality Control Board. 2013. *Amending Waste Discharge Requirements Order R5-2010-0114-01 (NPDES Permit No. Ca0077682) and Time Schedule Order R5-2010-0115-01.* Sacramento Regional County Sanitation District, Sacramento Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant, Sacramento County. Sacramento, Ca. Available:

http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/centralvalley/board_decisions/adopted_orders/sacramento/r5-2013-0124.pdf.

Central Valley Water Board. 1998. Amendments to the 1994 Water Quality Control Plan for the Sacramento River and San Joaquin River Basins. Available: http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/centralvalley/water_issues/basin_plans/new_pages_201604.pdf. Accessed July 6, 2016.

Clark, K. W., M. D. Bowen, R. B. Mayfield, K. P. Zehfuss, J. D. Taplin, and C. H. Hanson. 2009. *Quantification of Pre-Screen Loss of Juvenile Steelhead in Clifton Court Forebay*. California Department of Water Resources, Sacramento, CA.

Cloern J. E., N. Knowles, L. R. Brown, D. Cayan, M. D. Dettinger, T. L. Morgan, D. H. Schoellhamer, M. T. Stacey, M. van der Wegen, R. W. Wagner, A. D. Jassby. 2011. Projected evolution of California's San Francisco Bay-Delta-River System in a century of climate change. PLoS ONE 6(9): e24465. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0024465

Connon, R. E., J. Geist, J. Pfeiff, A. V. Loguinov, L. S. D'Abronzo, H. Wintz, C. D. Vulpe, and I. Werner. 2009. Linking mechanistic and behavioral responses to sublethal esfenvalerate exposure in the endangered delta smelt; *Hypomesus transpacificus* (Fam. Osmeridae). *BMC Genomics* 10(1):1–18.

Connon, R. E., L. A. Deanovic, E. B. Fritsch, L. S. D'Abronzo, and I. Werner. 2011. Sublethal responses to ammonia exposure in the endangered delta smelt; *Hypomesus transpacificus* (Fam. Osmeridae). *Aquatic Toxicology* 105:369–377. Available: http://caestuaries.opennrm.org/assets/2c73c74b4458a9e004ed5d2c7aca001e/application/pdf/Connon_et_al_2011b.pdf. Accessed: September 21, 2015.

Cordone, A. J., and D. W. Kelley. 1961. The influences of inorganic sediment on the aquatic life of streams. *California Fish and Game* 47(2):189–228.

Cramer Fish Sciences. 2014. Assessment of Lower American River Chinook salmon redd during a stepped flow reduction 6-10 January 2014. A report to the Sacramento Water Forum. January 20, 2014. West Sacramento, California.

De Magalthaes, V. F., R. M. Soares & S. M. F. O. Azevedo. 2001. Microcystin contamination from fish in the Jacarepaqua Lagoon (Rio de Janeiro Brazil): ecological implication and human risk. *Toxicon* 39:1077–1085.

del Rosario, R. B., Y. J. Redler, K. Newman, P. L. Brandes, T. Sommer, K. Reece, and R. Vincik. 2013. Migration patterns of juvenile winter-run-sized Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) through the Sacramento–San Joaquin Delta. *San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science* 11(1).

Delta Protection Commission. 2012. *Economic Sustainability Plan for the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta.* Available: http://www.delta.ca.gov/Final_ESP_Jan_2012.htm. Accessed: September 21, 2015.

Dimacali, R. L. 2013. *A Modelling Study of Changes in the Sacramento River Winter-run Chinook Salmon Population due to Climate Change*. Master of Science Thesis, Department of Civil Engineering, California State University, Sacramento. Available: http://csus-dspace.calstate.edu/handle/10211.9/2261.

Dubrovsky, N. M., C. R. Kratzer, L. R. Brown, J. M. Gronberg, and K. R. Burow. 1998. *Water Quality in the San Joaquin-Tulare Basins, California, 1992–95*. US Geological Survey, Sacramento, CA. Available: http://pubs.usgs.gov/fs/2004/3012/. Accessed: September 21, 2015.

Edwards, G. W., K. A. F. Urquhart, and T. L. Tillman. 1996. *Adult Salmon Migration Monitoring, Suisun Marsh Salinity Control Gates, September–November 1994*. Technical Report 50. Interagency Ecological Program for the San Francisco Bay/Delta Estuary, 27 pages.

Engwall, M., Näf, C., Broman, D. and Brunström, B., 1998. Biological and chemical determination of contaminant levels in settling particulate matter and sediments: A Swedish river system before, during, and after dredging of PCB-contaminated lake sediments. *Ambio*, pp. 403-410.

Feist, B. E., J. J. Anderson, and R. Miyamoto. 1996. *Potential Impacts of Pile Driving on Juvenile Pink (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*) and Chum (*O. keta*) Salmon Behavior and Distribution*. Report No. FRI-UW-9603. Fisheries Research Institute, School of Fisheries, University of Washington, Seattle, WA.

Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group. 2008. *Agreement in Principal for Interim Criteria for Injury to Fish from Pile Driving Activities.* National Marine Fisheries Service Northwest and Southwest Regions, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Regions 1 and 8, California/Washington/Oregon Departments of Transportation, California Department of Fish and Game, and U.S. Federal Highway Administration. Memorandum to Applicable Agency Staff. June 12.

Fretwell, M. R. 1989. Homing behavior of adult sockeye salmon in response to a hydroelectric diversion of home streamwaters at Seton Creek. *International Pacific Salmon Fisheries Commission Bulletin* 25.

G. Fred Lee & Associates. 2004. *Overview of Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta Water Quality Issues*. El Macero, CA.

Gaines, P. D., and C. D. Martin. 2002. *Abundance and Seasonal, Spatial and Diel Distribution Patterns of Juvenile Salmonid Passing the Red Bluff Diversion Dam, Sacramento River*. Red Bluff Research Pumping Plant Report Series, Volume 14. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Red Bluff, California.

GenOn Delta, LLC. 2011. *Pittsburg Generating Station Implementation Plan for the Statewide Water Quality Control Policy on the Use of Coastal and Estuarine Waters for Power Plant Cooling*. Available: http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/ocean/cwa316/powerplants/pittsburg/docs/pitt_ip2011.pdf. Accessed: September 21, 2015.

Gingras, M. 1997. *Mark/Recapture Experiments at Clifton Court Forebay to Estimate Pre-Screening Loss to Juvenile Fishes: 1976–1993*. Technical Report 55. Interagency Ecological Program for the San Francisco Bay/Delta Estuary, Sacramento, CA.

Goyer, R.A. and Clarkson, T.W., 1996. Toxic effects of metals. *Casarett & Doull's Toxicology. The Basic Science of Poisons, Fifth Edition, Klaassen, CD [Ed]. McGraw-Hill Health Professions Division, ISBN, 71054766.*

Gutreuter, S., J. M. Dettmers, and D. H. Wahl. 2003. Estimating mortality rates of adult fish from entrainment through the propellers of river towboats.*Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 132(4): 646-661.

H. T. Harvey & Associates with PRBO Conservation Science. 2011. *Critical Erosion Levee Repair Sites, Fish and Habitat Monitoring, Year-3 (2010) Monitoring Report.* Prepared for the State of California Department of Water Resources, Sacramento, California. 29 December 2010.

Hallock, R. J., and F. W. Fisher. 1985. *Status of Winter-Run Chinook Salmon,* Oncorhynchus tshawytscha, *in the Sacramento River*. Report to the California Department of Fish and Game, Anadromous Fisheries Branch, Sacramento, California

Hankin, D., D. Dauble, J. Pizzimenti, and P. Smith. 2010. *The Vernalis Adaptive Management Program (VAMP): Report of the 2010 Review Panel*. Prepared for the Delta Science Program. May 11.

Harvey, B. N., D. P. Jacobson, and M. A. Banks. 2014. Quantifying the uncertainty of a juvenile Chinook salmon race identification method for a mixed-race stock. North American *Journal of Fisheries Management* 34(6):1177–1186.

Hastings, M. C., and A. N. Popper. 2005. *Effects of Sound on Fish*. Prepared for Jones & Stokes. January 28.

Hayes, D. F., T. R. Crockett, T. J. Ward, and D. Averett. 2000. Sediment resuspension during cutterhead dredging operations. *Journal of Waterway, Port, Coastal, and Ocean Engineering* 126:153–161.

Herren, J. R., and S. S. Kawaski. 2001. Inventory of water diversions in four geographic areas in California's Central Valley. *Fish Bulletin* 179(2): 343–355. Available: http://citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/download?doi=10.1.1.517.3348&rep=rep1&type=pdf Accessed: September 21, 2015.

Holland, L. E. 1986. Effects of barge traffic on distribution and survival of ichthyoplankton and small fishes in the Upper Mississippi River. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 115(1):162-165.

ICF International. 2016. *Biological Assessment for the California WaterFix*. July, 2016.

Ingersoll, C.G., Brunson, E.L., Dwyer, F.J., Ankley, G.T., Benoit, D.A., Norberg-King, T.J., Burton, G.A., Hoke, R.A., Landrum, P.F. and Winger, P.V., 1995. Toxicity and bioaccumulation of sediment-associated contaminants using freshwater invertebrates: A review of methods and applications. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* 14(11):1885-1894.

Jarrett, D., and D. Killam. 2014. Redd Dewatering and Juvenile Stranding in the Upper Sacramento River, Year 2013-2014. RBFO Technical Report No. 01-2014. California Department of Fish and Wildlife. Sacramento, California.

Jarrett, D., and D. Killam. 2015. Redd Dewatering and Juvenile Stranding in the Upper Sacramento River, Year 2014-2015. RBFO Technical Report No. 02-2015. California Department of Fish and Wildlife. Sacramento, California.

Kelsch, S.W. and B. Shields. 1996. Care and handling of sampled organisms. *Fisheries Techniques*, 2nd edition. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland, pp.121-155

Killgore, K.J., S. T. Maynord, M. D. Chan, and R. P. Morgan. 2001. Evaluation of propeller-induced mortality on early life stages of selected fish species. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 21(4):947-955

Kimmerer, W. J. 2004. Open water processes of the San Francisco Estuary: from physical forcing to biological responses. *San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science* 2(1).

Kozlowski, Jeff. 2012. Fish biologist. ICF International. Sacramento, CA. October 5—Freeport Regional Water Project entrainment monitoring data provided to Marin Greenwood, aquatic ecologist, ICF International, Sacramento, CA.

Kuivila, K. M., and G. E. Moon. 2004. Potential exposure of larval and juvenile delta smelt to dissolved pesticides in the Sacramento–San Joaquin Delta, California. *American Fisheries Society Symposium* 39:229–241. Available: http://www.fishsciences.net/reports/2004/AFS_Symposium_39_229-241_Potential_exposure_of_larval.pdf. Accessed: April 21, 2015.

Lehman, P. W., K. Marr, G. L. Boyer, S. Acuna, and S. J. Teh. 2013. Long-term trends and causal factors associated with *Microcystis* abundance and toxicity in San Francisco Estuary and implications for climate change impacts. *Hydrobiologia* 718:141–158.

Lehman, P. W., S. J. Teh, G. L. Boyer, M. L. Nobriga, E. Bass, and C. Hogle. 2010. Initial impacts of *Microcystis aeruginosa* blooms on the aquatic food web in the San Francisco Estuary. *Hydrobiologia* 637:229–248.

Lloyd, D. S. 1987. Turbidity as a water quality standard for salmonid habitats in Alaska. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 7:34–45.

MacWilliams, M. L., and E. S. Gross. 2013. Hydrodynamic simulation of circulation and residence time in Clifton Court Forebay. *San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science* 11(2).

Marcinkevage, Cathy. Biomodeler, Bay Delta Conservation Planning Branch, California Central Valley Office, NOAA Fisheries, Sacramento, CA. June 27, 2016—Email containing salvage data (CVP_SWP CWT_WY16.xlsx) for 2016 experimental releases of SJR spring-run Chinook salmon sent to Brooke Miller-Levy (US Bureau of Reclamation), Jennifer Pierre (ICF International), Gwen Buchholz (CH2M HILL), and Ryan Wulff (NMFS). June 27, 2016.

Marston, D., C. Mesick, A. Hubbard, D. Stanton, S. Fortmann-Roe, S. Tsao, and T. Heyne. 2012. Delta flow factors influencing stray rate of escaping adult San Joaquin River fall-run Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). *San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science* 10(4).

McCauley, R.D., Fewtrell, J. and Popper, A.N., 2003. High intensity anthropogenic sound damages fish ears. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America* 113(1):638-642.

McEwan, D. 2001. Central Valley steelhead. Pages 1–43 in R. L. Brown (ed.), *Contributions to the Biology of Central Valley Salmonids*. California Department of Fish and Game.

McLain, J. S., and C. G. Castillo. 2009. Nearshore areas used by Chinook salmon fry, *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*, in the Northwestern Sacramento–San Joaquin Delta, California. *San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science* 7(2):1–12. Available: http://escholarship.org/us/item/4f4582tb. Accessed: December 15, 2011.

Michel, C. J., A. J. Ammann, S. T. Lindley, P. T. Sandstrom, E. D. Chapman, M. J. Thomas, G. P. Singer, A. P. Klimley, and R. B. MacFarlane. 2015. Chinook salmon outmigration survival in wet and dry years in California's Sacramento River. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*s 72(11):1749–1759.

Milner, N. J. D. J. Solomon, G. W. Smith. 2012. The role of river flow in the migration of adult Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar*, through estuaries and rivers. *Fisheries Management and Ecology* 19:537–547.

Morgan, R. P., R. E. Ulanowicz, V. J. Rasin Jr., L. A. Noe, and G. B. Gray. 1976. Effects of shear on eggs and larvae of striped bass, *Morone saxatilis*, and white perch, *Morone americana*. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 105(1): 149-154.

Moyle, P. B. 2002. *Inland Fishes of California*. University of California Press.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 1997. *Fish Screening Criteria for Anadromous Salmonids*. January. National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Region. Available: http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/hcd/fishscrn.pdf.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2008a. *Biological Opinion on 24,000 Linear Feet of Sacramento River Bank Protection Project, Phase II*. 2007/07158. July 2, 2008. Long Beach, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2009. *Biological Opinion on the Long-Term Central Valley Project and State Water Project Operations Criteria and Plan*. NOAA (National

Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration), National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Service Center, Long Beach, California.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2011. *Biological Opinion on the 2011 Georgiana Slough Non-physical Barrier Study*. February 22. National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Region, Sacramento, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2013. *Informal Consultation Letter on Water Hyacinth Control Program 2013-2017.* February 27. National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Region, Long Beach, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2014. *Recovery Plan for the Evolutionarily Significant Units of Sacramento River Winter-run Chinook Salmon and Central Valley Spring-run Chinook Salmon and the Distinct Population Segment of California Central Valley steelhead*. California Central Valley Area Office. July 2014.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2014. *Biological Opinion on the 2014 Georgiana Slough Floating Fish Guidance Structure Study*. February 14. National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Region, Sacramento, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2015. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Concurrence Letter, and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Response for Testing and Modifications of the Rock Slough Fish Screen. February 20. National Marine Fisheries Service, West Coast Region, Sacramento, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2015a. *Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Concurrence Letter, and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Response for Testing and Modifications of the Rock Slough Fish Screen.* February 20. National Marine Fisheries Service, West Coast Region, Sacramento, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2015b. *Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Concurrence Letter, and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Response for the 2015 Rock Slough Mechanical Harvesting Project*. September 30. National Marine Fisheries Service, West Coast Region, Sacramento, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2016a. *San Joaquin River Spring-run Chinook Salmon Reintroduction*. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/central_valley/san_joaquin/san_joaquin_reint.html, accessed July 28, 2016.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2016b. *California Central Valley Recovery Domain. 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation of Central Valley Spring-run Chinook Salmon Evolutionarily Significant Unit*. April. National Marine Fisheries Service, West Coast Region, Sacramento, CA.

Newcombe, C. P., and J. O. T. Jensen. 1996. Channel suspended sediment and fisheries: a synthesis for quantitative assessment of risk and impact. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 16:693–727.

Newman, K. B. 2003. Modelling paired release-recovery data in the presence of survival and capture heterogeneity with application to marked juvenile salmon. *Statistical Modelling* 3:157–177.

Perry, R. W. 2010. *Survival and Migration Dynamics of Juvenile Chinook Salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) in the Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta*. Ph.D. Dissertation. University of Washington, Seattle, WA.

Perry, R. W., J. G. Romine, N. S. Adams, A. R. Blake, J. R. Burau, S. V. Johnston, and T. L. Liedtke. 2014. Using a non-physical behavioural barrier to alter migration routing of juvenile Chinook salmon in the Sacramento–San Joaquin River Delta. *River Research and Applications* 30(2):192-203.Perry, R. W., P. L. Brandes, J. R. Burau, P. T. Sandstrom, and J. R. Skalski. 2015. Effect of tides, river flow, and gate operations on entrainment of juvenile salmon into the interior Sacramento–San Joaquin River Delta. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 144(3):445–455.

Perry, R. W., J. G. Romine, S. J. Brewer, P. E. LaCivita, W. N. Brostoff, and E. D. Chapman. 2012. Survival and migration route probabilities of juvenile Chinook salmon in the Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta during the winter of 2009–10. *U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report* 2012-1200. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, VA.

Perry, R. W., J. R. Skalski, P. L. Brandes, P. T. Sandstrom, A. P. Klimley, A. Ammann, and B. MacFarlane. 2010. Estimating survival and migration route probabilities of juvenile Chinook salmon in the Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 30(1):142-156.

Perry, R. W., P. L. Brandes, J. R. Burau, A. P. Klimley, B. MacFarlane, C. Michel, and J. R. Skalski. 2013. Sensitivity of survival to migration routes used by juvenile Chinook salmon to negotiate the Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta. *Environmental Biology of Fishes* 96(2–3):381–392.

Perry, R. W., P. L. Brandes, J. R. Burau, P. T. Sandstrom, and J. R. Skalski. 2015. Effect of tides, river flow, and gate operations on entrainment of juvenile salmon into the interior Sacramento–San Joaquin River Delta. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 144(3):445–455.

Popper, A. N. and M. C. Hastings. 2009. The effects of anthropogenic sources of sound on fishes. *Journal of Fish Biology* 75(3):455-489.

Popper, A. N., T. J. Carlson, A. D. Hawkins, B. L. Southall, and R. L. Gentry. 2006. *Interim Criteria for Injury of Fish Exposed to Pile Driving Operations: A White Paper*. Department of Biology, University of Maryland. College Park, Maryland. May 15, 2006. 15 pages. Available: http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/files/ piledrivinginterimcriteria_13may06.pdf.

Poytress, W. R., J. J. Gruber, F. D. Carrillo, S. D. Voss. 2014. *Compendium Report of Red Bluff Diversion Dam Rotary Trap Juvenile Anadromous Fish Production Indices for Years 2002–2012*. Prepared for California Department of Fish and Wildlife Ecosystem Restoration Program and the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. Red Bluff, CA. July 2014.

PRBO Conservation Science. 2011. *Projected Effects of Climate Change in California: Ecoregional Summaries Emphasizing Consequences for Wildlife*. Version 1.0 http://data.prbo.org/apps/bssc/climatechange. Accessed: September 12, 2016.

Quinn T. 1997. Homing, straying, and colonization. In W. S. Grant (ed.), *Genetic Effects of Straying of Non-native Fish Hatchery Fish into Natural Populations: Proceedings of the Workshop*. U.S. Dep. Commerce, NOAA Tech Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-30.

Quinn, T. P. 2005. *The Behavior and Ecology of Pacific Salmon and Trout*. University of Washington Press, Seattle, Washington.

Rand, G. M., Wells, P. G. & McCarthy, L. S. 1995, Introduction to aquatic toxicology. *In*: G. M. Rand (ed.), *Fundamentals of aquatic toxicology: effects, environmental fate and risk assessment*. 2nd ed, pp. 3-66. Taylor & Francis, Washington, DC.

Reynolds, J. B. 1996. Electrofishing. Pp. 221-253 in Murphy, B. R. and Willis, D. W. (eds.), *Fisheries Techniques*, 2nd ed. Bethesda, Maryland: American Fisheries Society.

Roberts, J., J. Israel, and K. Acierto. 2013. *An Empirical Approach to Estimate Juvenile Salmon Entrainment over Fremont Weir*. Fisheries Branch Administrative Report 2013-01. California Department of Fish and Wildlife, Sacramento.

Romine, J.G., R.W. Perry, A.C. Pope, P. Stumpner, T.L. Liedtke, K.K. Kumagai, and R.L. Reeves. 2016. Evaluation of a Floating Fish Guidance Structure at a hydrodynamically complex river junction in the Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta, California, U.S. *Marine and Freshwater Research.* DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.1071/MF15285

Rosen, R. A., and D. C. Hales. 1980. Occurrence of scarred paddlefish in the Missouri River, South Dakota-Nebraska. *The Progressive Fish-Culturist* 42(2): 82-85.

Sacramento Regional County Sanitation District. 2015. *Progress Report: Method of Compliance Work Plan and Schedule for Ammonia Effluent Limitations and Title 22 or Equivalent Disinfection Requirements.* Available: http://www.regionalsan.com/sites/main/files/file-attachments/compliance_work_plan_ammonia_and_title_22_update_report_7-09-15_final.pdf. Accessed: September 21, 2015.

San Francisco Baykeeper. 2010. *Protecting Marine Life at California Power Plants*. Available: https://baykeeper.org/articles/protecting-marine-life-california-power-plants. Accessed: September 15, 2015.

Scholz, N., L. E. Fleishman, L. Brown, I. Werner, M. L. Johnson, M. L. Brooks, C. L. Mitchelmore, and D. Schlenk. 2012. A perspective on modern pesticides, pelagic fish declines, and unknown ecological resilience in highly managed ecosystems. *BioScience*

62(4):428–434. Available: http://bioscience.oxfordjournals.org/content/62/4/428.full.pdf+html. Accessed: September 21, 2015.

Seedall, M. A. 2015. *Rock Slough Fish Screen Log Boom Relocation. Notice of Exemption to Contra Costa County from Contra Costa Water District*. July 10.

Servizi, J. A., and D. W. Martens. 1992. Sublethal responses of coho salmon (*Ocnorhynchus kisutch*) to suspended sediments. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 49:1389–1395.

Sigler, J. W., T. C. Bjornn, and F. H. Everest. 1984. Effects of chronic turbidity on density and growth of steelheads and coho salmon. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 113:142–150.

Singer, G. P., A. R. Hearn, E. D. Chapman, M. L. Peterson, P. E. LaCivita, W. N. Brostoff, A. Bremner, and A. Klimley. 2013. Interannual variation of reach specific migratory success for Sacramento River hatchery yearling late-fall run Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) and steelhead trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). *Environmental Biology of Fishes* 96(2–3):363–379.

Snider, B., and R. G. Titus. 2000. *Timing, Composition, and Abundance of Juvenile Anadromous Salmonid Emigration in the Sacramento River near Knights Landing, October 1998–September1999.* California Department of Fish and Wildlife, Habitat Conservation Division, Stream Evaluation Program Technical Report No. 00-06.

State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB). 1995. *Water Quality Control Plan for the San Francisco Bay/Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Estuary*. Available: http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/bay_delta/wq_control_plans/1995wqcp/docs/1995wqcpb.pdf. Accessed: 6/1/2015.

State Water Resources Control Board. 1995. *Water Quality Control Plan for the San Francisco Bay/Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Estuary*. Available: http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/bay_delta/wq_control_plans/1995wqcp/docs/1995wqcpb.pdf. Accessed: 6/1/2015.

State Water Resources Control Board. 2010. *Implementation Plans and Immediate and Interim Requirements for the Once-through Cooling Water Policy*. Available: http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/ocean/cwa316/powerplants/pittsburg/docs/pitt_sec13383_2010nov.pdf. Accessed: September 15, 2015.

Stein, D. M., and J. Cuetara. 2004. *Movements of Adult Chinook Salmon in Response to Flow in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta*. Presentation at 3rd Biennial CALFED Bay-Delta Program Science Conference. October 4-6, 2004.

Sturve, J., Berglund, Å., Balk, L., Broeg, K., Böhmert, B., Massey, S., Savva, D., Parkkonen, J., Stephensen, E., Koehler, A. and Förlin, L., 2005. Effects of dredging in Göteborg Harbor, Sweden, assessed by biomarkers in eelpout (*Zoarces viviparus*). *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 24*(8):1951-1961.

Sundberg, H., Hanson, M., Liewenborg, B., Zebühr, Y., Broman, D. and Balk, L. 2007. Dredging associated effects: maternally transferred pollutants and DNA adducts in feral fish. *Environmental Science & Technology* 41(8):2972-2977.

Swank, D. pers. comm. Email communication, July 24, 2015, to Rick Wilder from David Swank, Fisheries Biologist, NOAA Fisheries, West Coast Region. Sacramento, CA.

Swanson, C., P. S. Young, and J. J. Cech. 2004a. Swimming in Two-Vector Flows: Performance and Behavior of Juvenile Chinook Salmon near a Simulated Screened Water Diversion. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 133(2):265–278.

Swanson, C., P. S. Young, J. J. Cech Jr., M. L. Kavvas, and G. A. Aasen. 2004b. *Fish Treadmill-Developed Fish Screen Criteria for Native Sacramento-San Joaquin Watershed Fishes*. Final Report prepared for the Anadromous Fish Screen Program Cooperative Agreement No. 114201J075.

Tencalla, F. G., D. R. Dietrich, and C. Schlatter. 1994. Toxicity of *Microcystis aeruginosa* peptide toxin to yearling rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). *Aquatic Toxicology* 30(3):215–224.

Thompson, L. C., M. I. Escobar, C. M. Mosser, D. R. Purkey, D. Yates, and P. B. Moyle. 2012. Water management adaptations to prevent loss of spring-run Chinook salmon in California under climate change. *Journal of Water Resoursec Planning and Management* 138:465-478.

Tillman, T. L., G. W. Edwards, and K. A. F. Urquhart. 1996. *Adult Salmon Migration during the Various Operational Phases of Suisun Marsh Salinity Control Gates in Montezuma Slough: August–October 1993.* Agreement to California Department of Water Resources, Ecological Services Office by California Department of Fish and Game, Bay-Delta and Special Water Projects Division, 25 pages.

U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. 2008. *Biological Assessment on the Continued Long-term Operations of the Central Valley Project and the State Water Project. Appendix P, SALMOD Model.* Available: http://www.usbr.gov/mp/cvo/ocap_page.html**.** Accessed: October 17, 2015.

U.S. Census Bureau. 2000. *2000 Decennial Census of Population – Summary File 1 (SF1) and Summary File 3 (SF3) Datasets*. Available: http://www.census.gov/main/www/cen2000.html. Accessed: March 2, 2012.

U.S. Census Bureau. 2011. *2010 Decennial Census of Population – Summary File 1 (SF1) Datasets*. Available: http://2010.census.gov/2010census/data/. Accessed: September 27, 2015.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 2003. *EPA Region 10 Guidance for Pacific Northwest State and Tribal Temperature Water Quality Standards*. EPA 910-B-03-002. Region 10 Office of Water, Seattle, WA. 49 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2001. *Abundance and seasonal, Spatial, and Diel Distribution Patterns of Juvenile Salmonids Passing the Red Bluff Diversion Dam, Sacramento River*. Vol.14. Prepared by Philip Gaines and Craig Martin for the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. Red Bluff, California.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2003a. Flow-Habitat Relationships for steelhead and fall, late-fall, and winter-run Chinook salmon spawning in the Sacramento River between Keswick Dam and Battle Creek. February 4, 2003. Sacramento, CA. Available: http://www.fws.gov/sacramento/fisheries/Instream-Flow/Documents/Sacramento%20River%20Spawning%20Final%20Report%20Feb%204,%202003.pdf. Accessed: 6/1/2015.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2003b. *Flow-Habitat Relationships for Steelhead and Fall, Late-fall, and Winter-run Chinook Salmon Spawning in the Sacramento River between Keswick Dam and Battle Creek. February 4, 2003*. Sacramento, CA. Available: http://www.fws.gov/sacramento/fisheries/Instream-Flow/Documents/Sacramento%20River%20Spawning%20Final%20Report%20Feb%204,%202003.pdf. Accessed: 6/1/2015.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2005a. *Flow-Habitat Relationships for fall-run Chinook salmon spawning in the Sacramento River between Battle Creek and Deer Creek.* August 10, 2005. Sacramento, CA. Available: http://www.fws.gov/sacramento/fisheries/Instream-Flow/Documents/Sacramento%20River%20Battle%20to%20Deer%20Cr%20Fall-Run%20Chinook%20Salmon%2012-5-06.pdf. Accessed: June 1, 2015.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2005b. *Flow-Habitat Relationships for Chinook Salmon Rearing in the Sacramento River between Keswick Dam and Battle Creek.* August 2, 2005. Sacramento, CA. Available: http://www.fws.gov/sacramento/fisheries/Instream-Flow/Documents/Sacramento%20River%20Keswick%20Dam%20to%20Battle%20Creek%20Rearing%20Final%20Report.pdf. Accessed: June 1, 2015.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2006. *Relationships Between Flow Fluctuations and Redd Dewatering and Juvenile Stranding for Chinook Salmon and Steelhead in the Sacramento River Between Keswick Dam and Battle Creek.* June 22, 2006. Sacramento, CA. Available: http://www.fws.gov/sacramento/Fisheries/Instream-Flow/Documents/Sacramento%20River%20Keswick%20Dam%20to%20Battle%20Creek%20-%20redd%20dewatering%20and%20juvenle%20stranding%20Final%20Report%20.pdf. Accessed: June 1, 2015.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2008. *Formal Endangered Species Act Consultation on the Proposed Coordinated Operations of the Central Valley Project (CVP) and State Water Project (SWP).* United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Sacramento, CA.

Varanasi, U., Casillas, E., Arkoosh, M.R., Hom, T., Misitano, D.A., Brown, D.W., Chan, S-L., Collier, T.K., McCain, B.B., and Stein, J.E. 1993. Contaminant exposure and associated biological effects in juvenile chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) from urban and nonurban estuaries of Puget Sound. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS NWFSC-8. https://www.nwfsc.noaa.gov/publications/scipubs/techmemos/tm8/tm8.html (Accessed: July 16, 2016).

Vincik, R. F. 2013. Multi-year monitoring to facilitate adult salmon passage through a temperate tidal marsh. *Environmental Biology of Fishes* 96(2–3):203–214.

Vogel, D. 2008b. *Biological Evaluations of the Fish Screens at the Glenn–Colusa Irrigation District's Sacramento River Pump Station: 2002–2007*. Natural Resource Scientists, Inc., Red Bluff, CA.

Vogel, D. A., and K. R. Marine. 1991. *Guide to Upper Sacramento River Chinook Salmon Life History*. Prepared for the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, Central Valley Project. 55 pages.

Wagner, W., M. Stacey, L. Brown, and M. Dettinger. 2011. Statistical Models of Temperature in the Sacramento–San Joaquin Delta under Climate Change Scenarios and Ecological Implications. *Estuaries and Coasts* 34(3):544–556. doi:10. 1007/s12237-010-9369-z.

Water Forum. 2005. Initial Fisheries and In-Stream Habitat Management and Restoration Plan for the Lower American River (Fish Plan), Status Report. September 2005.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams: Sources, biological effects, and control. *American Fisheries Society, Monograph No. 7.* Bethesda, MD.

Wicks, B. J., R. Joensen, Q. Tang, and D. J. Randall. 2002. Swimming and ammonia toxicity in salmonids: The effect of sub lethal ammonia exposure on the swimming performance of coho salmon and the acute toxicity of ammonia in swimming and resting rainbow trout. *Aquatic Toxicology* 59(1–2):55–69.

Williams, J. G. 2006. Central Valley salmon: A perspective on Chinook and steelhead in the Central Valley of California. *San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science* 4(3):Article 2. Available: http://repositories.cdlib.org/jmie/sfews/vol4/iss3/art2.

Williams, J. G. 2009. *Sacramento–San Joaquin Delta Regional Ecosystem Restoration Implementation Plan Life History Conceptual Model for Chinook Salmon and Steelhead*.

Wolter, C., and R. Arlinghaus. 2003. Navigation impacts on freshwater fish assemblages: the ecological relevance of swimming performance. *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries* 13:63-89.

Yates, D., H. Galbraith, D. Purkey, A. Huber-Lee, J. Sieber, J. West, S. Herrod-Julius, and B. Joyce. 2008. Climate warming, water storage, and Chinook salmon in California's Sacramento Valley. *Climatic Change* 91:335–350

Yeager, K.M., Brinkmeyer, R., Rakocinski, C.F., Schindler, K.J. and Santschi, P.H. 2010. Impacts of dredging activities on the accumulation of dioxins in surface sediments of the Houston Ship Channel, Texas. *Journal of Coastal Research*, pp.743-752.

Yoshiyama, R. M., E. W. Fisher, and P. B. Moyle. 1998. Historical abundance and decline of Chinook salmon in the Central Valley region of California. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 18:487–521.

Young, P. S., J. J. Cech, S. Griffin, P. Raquel, and D. Odenweller. 1997. Calculations of required screen mesh size and vertical bar interval based on delta smelt morphometrics. *Interagency Ecological Program Newsletter* 10(1):19–20.

Zajanc, D., S. H. Kramer, N. Nur, and P. A. Nelson. 2013. Holding behavior of Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) and steelhead (*O. mykiss*) smolts, as influenced by habitat features of levee banks, in the highly modified Lower Sacramento River, California. *Environmental Biology of Fishes* 96(2–3):245–256. DOI: 10.1007/s10641-012-0060-z.

Zeug, S. C., and B. J. Cavallo. 2013. Influence of estuary conditions on the recovery rate of coded-wire-tagged Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) in an ocean fishery. *Ecology of Freshwater Fish* 22(1):157–168.

Zeug, S. C., and B. J. Cavallo. 2014. Controls on the entrainment of juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) into large water diversions and estimates of population-level loss. *PLoS One* 9(7):e101479.

This page intentionally left blank.